

## Greek to GCSE: Part 2



# Greek to GCSE

PART 2

Second edition

John Taylor



Bristol Classical Press

Second edition 2008  
First published in 2003 by  
Bristol Classical Press  
an imprint of  
Gerald Duckworth & Co. Ltd.  
90-93 Cowcross Street, London EC1M 6BF  
Tel: 020 7490 7300  
Fax: 020 7490 0080  
info@duckworth-publishers.co.uk  
www.ducknet.co.uk

© 2003, 2008 by John Taylor

All rights reserved. No part of this publication  
may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or  
transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic,  
mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise,  
without the prior permission of the publisher.

A catalogue record for this book is available  
from the British Library

ISBN 978 1 85399 703 7

Typeset by John Taylor  
Printed and bound in Great Britain by  
Biddles Ltd, King's Lynn, Norfolk



# Contents

List of abbreviations	ix
Vocabulary and glossing	ix
Map	x

## Chapter 7

Passive voice	1
Agent and Instrument	1
<i>Thales and the Well</i>	3
Present passive participle	3
Passive infinitive	4
<i>Socrates and the Philosophers</i> (1)	5
Background: <i>Socrates</i> (1)	6
<i>Socrates and the Philosophers</i> (2)	6
<i>This and That</i>	7
<i>Socrates and the Philosophers</i> (3)	10
Background: <i>Socrates</i> (2)	11
<i>Socrates in Comedy</i> (1)	12
Imperfect passive	13
<i>Socrates in Comedy</i> (2)	15
<i>Socrates in Comedy</i> (3)	16
Comparison of adjectives	17
<i>The Wisdom of Socrates</i>	18
Comparison of adverbs	20
Relative clauses	22
Background: <i>Protagoras</i>	25
<i>Protagoras comes to town</i>	26
Irregular third declension nouns (1)	27
Root aorists	28
Result clauses	29
<i>Protagoras and his Teaching</i>	31
Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 7	33

## Chapter 8

Middle voice and deponent verbs	35
<i>Plato's Parable of the Cave</i> (1)	38
<i>Plato's Parable of the Cave</i> (2)	39
Aorist middle	40
<i>The Magic Ring</i>	42
Aorist passive	44
Future middle and passive	46
<i>Antigone</i>	48
Overview of participles	49
Genitive absolute	51
Future tense of <i>to be</i>	53

Active verbs with middle-form futures	53
Deponent verbs with passive-form aorists	54
<i>Socrates refuses to join in an illegal trial</i>	54
The 'other' εἶμι ( <i>I shall go</i> )	56
Reflexive pronouns	57
Third person possessives	58
Background: <i>Socrates</i> (3)	60
<i>Socrates on Trial</i>	60
Future infinitives	62
Compound negatives (1)	63
<i>Socrates' Final Day</i>	63
<i>The Death of Socrates</i>	65
Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 8	67
 Chapter 9	
Irregular third declension nouns (2)	69
Third declension (3-1-3) adjectives	69
Mixed declension adjectives	71
Verbs with epsilon contraction	72
The augment and verbs beginning with a vowel	73
Background: <i>Greek Myth</i> (1)	74
<i>Theseus and the Minotaur</i> (1)	75
Article marking change of subject	76
Adjectives with epsilon contraction	77
Compound adjectives and privative alpha	77
Nouns with epsilon contraction	78
<i>Theseus and the Minotaur</i> (2)	79
Irregular epsilon verbs	81
Futures with epsilon contraction	82
Background: <i>Greek Myth</i> (2)	82
<i>Meleager</i>	83
Irregular third declension nouns (3)	85
<i>Perseus</i> (1)	86
Tense and aspect (1): Aorist imperative	88
More imperatives	88
Summary table of imperatives	89
Use of μή: Compound negatives (2)	89
<i>Perseus</i> (2)	90
Tense and aspect (2): Aorist infinitive	93
Indirect command	93
More infinitives	94
Table showing indicative/imperative/infinitive/participle	95
Impersonal verbs	96
Infinitive after verbs	97
<i>Perseus</i> (3)	98
Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 9	101

## Chapter 10

Indirect statement: Introduction	103
Indirect statement (1): with 'that' clause	103
Indirect statement (2): with infinitive	105
Indirect statement (3): with participle	108
Indirect statement: summary	110
<i>Helen in Egypt</i>	110
Background: <i>Herodotus</i> (1)	111
The verb <i>to give</i>	112
<i>Psammetichus</i>	113
<i>Polycrates and the Ring</i>	114
Result clauses with infinitive	116
<i>Amasis and the Statue</i>	117
Verbs with alpha contraction	118
<i>Arion and the Dolphin</i>	120
Irregular comparatives and superlatives	122
<i>Periander and Thrasybulus</i>	124
Prepositions	125
Compound verbs	126
Direct and indirect questions	127
<i>Hippocleides dances away his marriage</i>	129
Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 10	131

## Chapter 11

Present and aorist subjunctive	133
Use of the subjunctive (1): Prohibition	134
Use of the subjunctive (2): Purpose clauses	135
<i>Rhampsinitus and the Thieves</i> (1)	136
Conditional sentences: Introduction	138
Conditional sentences (1): Future open	138
Conditional sentences (2): Past closed	139
Summary table of conditionals	140
<i>Rhampsinitus and the Thieves</i> (2)	140
Present, aorist and future optative	143
Use of the optative (1): Sequence of tenses and moods in purpose clauses	145
Use of the optative (2): Indirect statement and question	146
Tense and aspect in the aorist: a summary	148
Background: <i>Herodotus</i> (2)	149
<i>Human Prosperity</i>	149
<i>Gyges and Candaules</i>	150
<i>Solon and Croesus</i>	153
<i>Croesus and Adrastus</i>	157
<i>Croesus and Cyrus</i>	162
<i>The Power of Custom</i>	165

## Chapter 12

(i): Practice passages	
<i>Darius and Intaphrenes' Wife</i>	166
<i>Darius and Democedes</i>	167
<i>Miltiades becomes ruler of the Dolonci</i>	169
<i>Athens appeals for help</i>	170
<i>Athenian generals at Marathon divided</i>	171
<i>The Athenian Charge</i>	172
<i>The Athenian Victory</i>	173
<i>The Advice of Mardonius to Xerxes</i>	174
<i>An Ingenious Message</i>	176
<i>Xerxes whips the sea</i>	177
<i>The Sons of Pythius</i>	179
<i>Xerxes weeps</i>	180
<i>Spartan behaviour at Thermopylae</i>	181
<i>Xerxes loses patience</i>	182
<i>The Mountain Path</i>	183
<i>The Last Stand</i>	184
<i>Leonidas and Dieneces</i>	186
<i>Artemisia at Salamis</i>	187
<i>A confused end to the battle</i>	188
<i>Persian and Spartan Banquets</i>	189
(ii) Revision sentences	191

## Reference Grammar and Revision Guide

The definite article	199
Nouns: First declension, Second declension	199
Nouns: Third declension	200
Adjectives	201
Comparison of adjectives	203
Quick revision: Top seven irregular comparatives and superlatives	203
Participles	204
Pronouns	206
Numerals	208
Prepositions	209
Verbs (1): ending in -ω	209
Verbs (2): contracted (ending in -αω, -εω)	213
Verbs (3): irregular	215
Verbs (4): 30 important irregular aorists	217
Quick revision: Top 10 irregular aorists	217
Verbs (5): reference list of tenses	218
Appendix 1: Uses of the definite article	220
Appendix 2: Uses of αὐτός	221
Appendix 3: Words identifying constructions	221
Appendix 4: Words easily confused	222

## Vocabulary

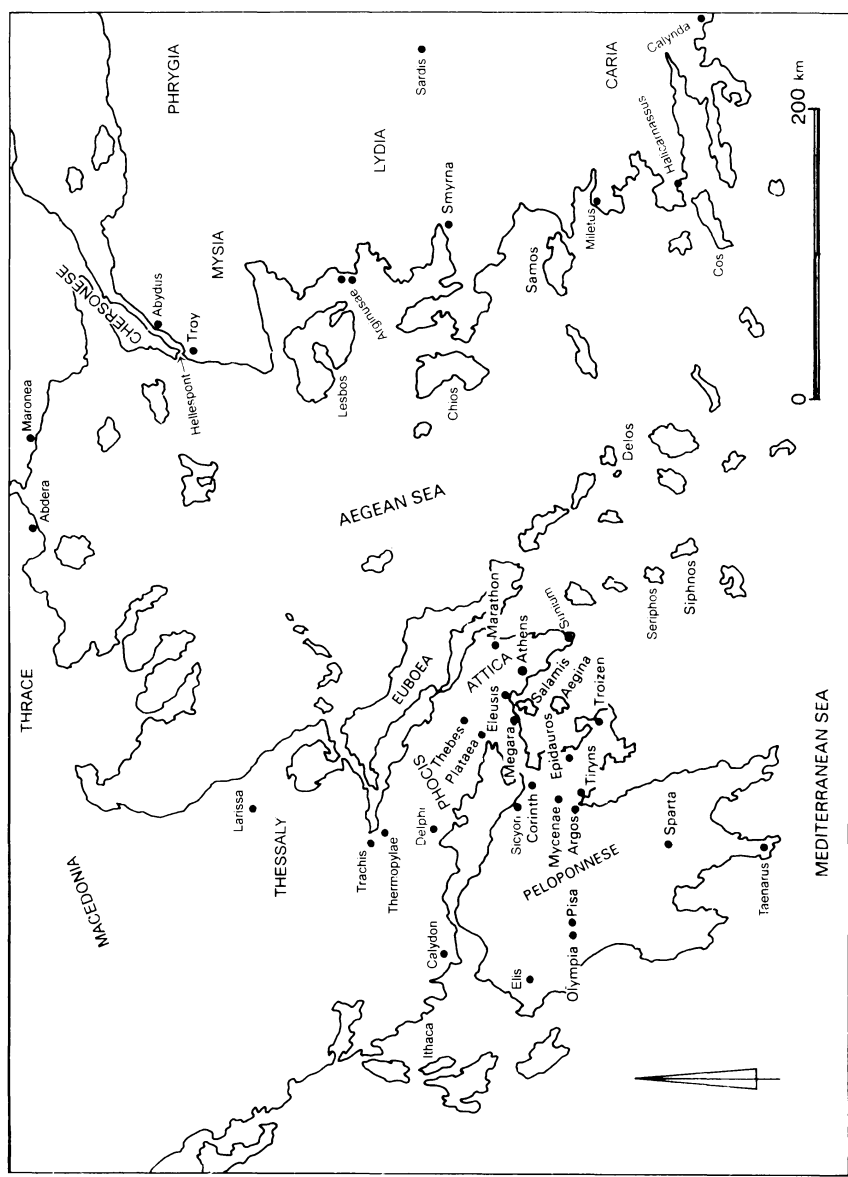
English to Greek	223
Greek to English	234

## Abbreviations

<i>acc</i>	accusative
<i>adj</i>	adjective
<i>adv</i>	adverb
<i>aor</i>	aorist
<i>dat</i>	dative
<i>decl</i>	declension
<i>f</i>	feminine
<i>foll</i>	following
<i>fut</i>	future
<i>gen</i>	genitive
<i>imperf</i>	imperfect
<i>indic</i>	indicative
<i>inf</i>	infinitive
<i>irreg</i>	irregular
<i>lit</i>	literally
<i>m</i>	masculine
<i>n</i>	neuter
<i>nom</i>	nominative
<i>opt</i>	optative
<i>pass</i>	passive
<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>prep</i>	preposition
<i>pres</i>	present
<i>sg</i>	singular
<i>subj</i>	subjunctive
<i>usu</i>	usually
<i>voc</i>	vocative

## Vocabulary and glossing

As in Part 1, the vocabulary checklists at the end of each chapter should be learned thoroughly. The sum of these throughout the course equates to the vocabulary at the back of the book: it incorporates, and goes a bit beyond, the GCSE prescription. Additional words required for translation passages are glossed as they occur. Underlining is not repeated within a passage when a word occurs again on the same page. Where a passage extends to a new page, glossing (except of proper names, and words already used several times) is usually repeated. This inevitably means that words are sometimes glossed twice in quick succession. In Chapter 12, glossing of the Practice Passages assumes only the GCSE vocabulary list, and the Revision Sentences are confined to it.



Map: Greece and the Aegean

## Chapter 7

### Passive voice

Consider the following sentences:

The soldiers guard the village.

The village is guarded by the soldiers.

Both describe the same process, but in the second one the grammatical subject is having the action done to it (rather than doing it) and has a *passive verb*:

• This distinction in the use of the verb is referred to as *voice*. The Greek verbs you have met so far have all been in the *active* voice (the subject doing the action). The *passive* voice gets its name from the Latin stem *pass-* = *suffer* (compare the related Greek verb *πάσχω*: both refer not necessarily to suffering something bad or painful, but simply experiencing or being on the receiving end of an action done by someone else).

*present passive:*

<i>sg</i>	1	παύ-ομαι	I am stopped
	2	παύ-η*	you ( <i>sg</i> ) are stopped
	3	παύ-εται	he/she/it is stopped
<i>pl</i>	1	παυ-όμεθα	we are stopped
	2	παύ-εσθε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) are stopped
	3	παύ-ονται	they are stopped

\* the spelling παύ-ει is also possible, but in this book παύ-η is used to avoid confusion with the third person singular of the active (where the ambiguous form is used, the context usually tells you which it is)

• The translation *I am being stopped* (suggesting *at this moment*) is also possible for the present passive.

#### Exercise 7.1

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 We are being chased.
- 2 They are sent.
- 3 You (*sg*) are being guarded.
- 4 He is found.
- 5 I am being persuaded.

### Agent and Instrument

• As we saw, in a sentence with a passive verb the person or thing having the action done to them is the grammatical subject and therefore of course is nominative.

• The *person by whom* the action is done is called the *agent*. This is usually expressed in Greek by the preposition *ὑπό* with the *genitive*\*:

ἡ κώμη ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν φυλάσσεται.  
The village is (being) guarded by the soldiers.

Note that, compared with the original active sentence - *The soldiers guard the village* - what was in the active version the object has become the subject, and what was the subject has become the agent.

(\*In Chapter 6 we met *ὑπό* with the *dative*, meaning *under*).

• It is also possible (as well or instead) to state *the thing with which* the action is done. This is called the *instrument*, and is expressed by the *dative* without a preposition:

ἡ κώμη τοῖς ὅπλοις φυλάσσεται.

The village is (being) guarded with the weapons.

ἡ κώμη ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν τοῖς ὅπλοις φυλάσσεται.

The village is (being) guarded by the soldiers with the weapons.

• Contrast this with Latin: there too the agent has a preposition (*a* or *ab* = *by*) and the instrument does not, but *both* are expressed by the ablative. As elsewhere, Greek divides the ablative jobs between genitive and dative (often in the process making more or clearer distinctions).

• Not every sentence with a passive verb will necessarily have either agent or instrument: we may just be being told the action is done, by person and means unspecified.

• Especially when a sentence has both agent and instrument, the translation *with* is often clearer for the instrument (keeping *by* for the agent). But *by* is also possible for the instrument in English, and sometimes sounds better.

## Exercise 7.2

*Translate into English:*

- 1 οἱ λόγοι ὑπὸ τῶν παίδων μαρθάνονται.
- 2 τὸ πλοῖον ἐν τῷ λιμένι λείπεται.
- 3 αἱ βοαὶ ὑπὸ τῆς παιδὸς ἀκούονται.
- 4 ἀγόμεθα ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ τοῦ ἀνδρείου.
- 5 ἡ μάχη τῇ νυκτὶ παύεται.
- 6 ἄρα διώκεσθε, ὦ σύμμαχοι;
- 7 ὁ στρατὸς τῷ ποταμῷ κωλύεται.
- 8 οἱ ἵπποι ὑπὸ τοῦ δούλου λύονται.
- 9 ὑπὸ τοῦ τῆς νήσου ἄρχοντος πέμπομαι.
- 10 διδάσκη ὑπὸ τοῦ γέροντος.

## Exercise 7.3

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The slaves are being chased by the young man.
- 2 The army is being led by the general.
- 3 The horse is left in the road.
- 4 The old man's voice is heard by the girl.
- 5 The victory is announced in the agora by the messenger with a shout.



## Exercise 7.4

### Thales and the Well

*Thales (about 600 BC) was the first Greek philosopher. His wide interests included astronomy. He is said to have predicted accurately an eclipse of the sun in 585 BC. This story (recorded 200 years later by Plato, the most famous Greek philosopher) shows him as an absent-minded eccentric.*

ὁ Πλάτων λέγει ὅτι Θαλῆς ὁ φιλόσοφος ἀστρονομῶν καὶ ἄνω βλέπων εἰς  
φρέαρ ἔπεσεν. θεράπεινα δέ τις εἶδεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἔσκωψεν· "σὺ ὑπὸ  
πάντων θαυμάζη ὡς φιλόσοφος κλεινὸς ὢν. ἀληθῶς μέντοι μωρὸς εἶ. τὰ  
μὲν γὰρ ἐν οὐρανῷ ἐθέλεις γινώσκειν, τὰ δὲ πρὸ τῶν ποδῶν οὐ  
5 γινώσκεις". λέγει δὲ καὶ ὁ Πλάτων ὅτι πάντες οἱ φιλόσοφοι πάσχουσι τὸ  
αὐτό, ὥσπερ ὁ Θαλῆς. περὶ γὰρ τῶν ἀπόντων σπεύδουσι, τῶν δὲ  
παρόντων ἀμελοῦσιν. πολλάκις οὖν ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν σκώπτονται.

	Πλάτων -ωνος ὁ	Plato
	ὅτι	that
	Θαλῆς ὁ	Thales
	φιλόσοφος -ου ὁ	philosopher
1	ἀστρονομέω	I study astronomy
	ἄνω	upwards
	βλέπω	I look
	φρέαρ -ατος τό	well
	θεράπεινα -ης ἡ	maidservant
2	σκώπτω ἔσκωψα	I mock, I make fun of
	κλεινός -ῆ -όν	famous
	ἀληθῶς	truly, really
	πρὸ	in front of (+ gen)
	καί	(here) also
6	ὥσπερ	just as, like
	σπεύδω	I am enthusiastic
	ἀμελέω	I do not care about, I ignore (+ gen)

### Present passive participle

- This is simple in form: the verb stem has -ομεν- added, then 2-1-2 endings like σοφός:

		masculine	feminine	neuter	
sg	nom	παυόμενος	παυομένη	παυόμενον	being stopped
	acc	παυόμενον	παυομένην	παυόμενον	
	gen	παυομένου	παυομένης	παυομένου	
	dat	παυομένῳ	παυομένη	παυομένῳ	
pl	nom	παυόμενοι	παυόμεναι	παυόμενα	
	acc	παυομένους	παυομένας	παυόμενα	
	gen	παυομένων	παυομένων	παυομένων	
	dat	παυομένοις	παυομέναις	παυομένοις	

- The passive participle behaves like a passive verb in being able to have an agent and/or instrument, and like any other participle in its usage (i.e. circumstantial or attributive; with or without the article; having its tense in relation to that of the main verb, etc).

### Exercise 7.5

Give the Greek for:

- 1 Being admired (*masculine nominative singular*)
- 2 Being heard (*masculine accusative plural*)
- 3 Being led (*feminine genitive singular*)
- 4 Being stolen (*neuter nominative plural*)
- 5 Being written (*masculine dative singular*)

### Exercise 7.6

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ στρατιῶται, ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων διωκόμενοι, παντες ἔφυγον.
- 2 οἱ λόγοι οἱ νῦν μανθανόμενοι οὐκ εἰσι χαλεποί.
- 3 τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ τῷ ποταμῷ κωλύόμενοι;
- 4 ἐθέλω ἀκούειν τὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ ξένου ἀγγελλόμενα.
- 5 ὁ δοῦλος ὁ ὑπὸ τοῦ γίγαντος διωκόμενος οὐκ ἔφυγεν.
- 6 ἄρα αἱ εἰς τὴν κώμην ἀγόμεναι τὴν μάχην εἶδον;
- 7 οἱ ὑπὸ τοῦ ποιητοῦ πειθόμενοι μῶροί εἰσιν.
- 8 τίνος ἐστὶν ἡ βίβλος ἡ εἰς τὸ πῦρ βαλλομένη;
- 9 οἱ στρατιῶται, ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἀγόμενοι, οὐδένα φόβον εἶχον.
- 10 τὸ δεῖπνον τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν παίδων νῦν ἐσθιόμενον κακὸν ἐστίν.

### Exercise 7.7

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The girl, while being chased by the boys, fell into the river.
- 2 The horse that is being released by the slave is mine.
- 3 The enemy captured the harbour which was being guarded by our soldiers.
- 4 I am learning the words now being written.
- 5 Who is the stranger who is being sent out of the country?

### Passive infinitive

- This is formed by adding -εσθαι to the present stem (instead of the -ειν of the active infinitive). The meaning is *to be ~ed*, e.g. παύεσθαι = *to be stopped*. (Distinguish the infinitive ending carefully from the second person plural ending -εσθε.)
- The passive infinitive, like the passive participle, can have an agent and/or instrument.

### Exercise 7.8

Give the Greek for:

- 1 To be announced
- 2 To be carried
- 3 To be harmed
- 4 To be guarded
- 5 To be heard

## Exercise 7.9

Translate into English:

- 1 ἡ θεὰ ἐθέλει θαυμάζεσθαι.
- 2 ὁ δοῦλος οἶός τ' ἐστὶν ἀκούεσθαι.
- 3 ἐκέλευσα τὸν ἄγγελον ἀποπέμπεσθαι.
- 4 οὐκ ἐθέλομεν ὑπὸ τῶν παιδῶν διώκεσθαι.
- 5 ὁ ἵππος οὐχ οἶός τ' ἐστὶν ἐσθίεσθαι.

## Exercise 7.10

### Socrates and the Philosophers (1)

A visiting foreigner and an Athenian discuss the famous Athenian philosopher who was Plato's teacher and inspiration.

- Ξένος ἀλλὰ ποῖος ἄνθρωπός ἐστιν ὁ φιλόσοφος;  
 Ἀθηναῖος δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι φίλος ἐστὶ τῆς σοφίας. οἱ γὰρ φιλόσοφοι ἐθέλουσι εὐρίσκειν τε καὶ γινώσκειν τὴν σοφίαν.  
 Ξένος καὶ διδάσκειν;  
 5 Ἀθ ἐθέλουσι καὶ διδάσκειν.  
 Ξένος καὶ θαυμάζεσθαι;  
 Ἀθ δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐθέλουσι καὶ θαυμάζεσθαι ...  
 Ξένος ἀλλὰ τί ἐστὶν ἡ σοφία ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φιλοσόφων διδασκομένη;  
 Ἀθ πολλοὶ φιλόσοφοί εἰσι, καὶ πολλὰ γινώμαι. οἱ μὲν γὰρ λέγουσιν  
 10 ὅτι πάντα ἐστὶ γῆ, οἱ δὲ ὅτι ἐστὶν ἀήρ, ἢ πῦρ, ἢ ὕδωρ ...  
 Ξένος καὶ ἄλλοι ὅτι ἡ σελήνη οὐκ ἐστὶ θεὰ, ἀλλὰ βῶλός τις γῆς ...  
 Ἀθ Σωκράτης μέντοι οὐ περὶ τῆς τε γῆς καὶ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ λέγει, ἀλλὰ περὶ τοῦ τῶν ἀνθρώπων βίου. λέγει γὰρ ὅτι ἡ φιλοσοφία πρὸς τὴν ἀμαθίαν ἐστὶν ὥσπερ ὁ βίος πρὸς τὸν θάνατον. πάντα  
 15 γὰρ ὑπὸ τοῦ φιλοσόφου ἐξετάζεται· ὁ γὰρ ἀνεξέταστος βίος οὐ βιωτὸς ἀνθρώπῳ.

	ποῖος -α -ον	what sort of ... ? what ... like?
	φιλόσοφος -ου ὁ	philosopher
	δῆλος -η -ον	clear
	ὅτι	that
5	καί	(here) also
	γνώμη -ης ἡ	idea
	ἀήρ ἄερος ὁ	air
	ἢ	or
	σελήνη -ης ἡ	moon
11	βῶλος -ου ἡ	clod
	Σωκράτης ὁ	Socrates
	πρὸς (+ acc)	(here) in relation to, compared to
	ἀμαθία -ας ἡ	ignorance
	ὥσπερ	just as, like
15	ἐξετάζω	I examine
	ἀνεξέταστος -ον	unexamined
	βιωτός -όν	worth living

## Background: Socrates (1)

Socrates (469-399 BC) was Plato's teacher and hero, but himself wrote nothing. In the works of Plato and of his other disciples, he is often the mouthpiece for the author's own views. This makes it difficult to get back to the real Socrates.

Socrates was of fairly humble origin, the son of a stonemason/sculptor and a midwife. He became a stonemason himself. He later drew metaphors from both skills: the idea of a finished statue having been somehow 'already there' in a block of stone illustrates the process of understanding; and by discussion ideas can be (as it were) helped to birth. Socrates lived and died in Athens, travelling elsewhere only on military service (where his courage and endurance but also his eccentricity attracted notice).

Earlier philosophers like Thales were interested mainly in natural science - how the world is made. Socrates in his youth shared these interests, but in maturity changed the focus of enquiry to *moral* philosophy (how we should live) and *epistemology* (how we know anything). The significance of this change is signalled by the fact that we call the earlier thinkers 'Pre-Socratics'. Socrates was especially interested in the meaning of abstract qualities such as courage, justice, equality: how we can recognise them, and whether they have an existence above and beyond particular acts and examples in which they are shown.

Socrates was not paid for teaching. He talked in public places in Athens to anyone who would listen. He thought truth would be arrived at by relentless questioning and shared discussion. His paradoxes were famous: *Virtue is knowledge, No-one errs willingly, It is better to suffer wrong than to do it* (the last more startling in a pre-Christian world). They express his central concerns (if we *truly* knew what was right, we would inevitably do it: our obvious and frequent failures are really failures of *knowledge*), but they also illustrate his delight in being provocative, in acting (as he put it) like a gadfly to the sluggish horse represented by his Athenian contemporaries.

### Exercise 7.11

#### Socrates and the Philosophers (2)

Ξεν	ἀλλὰ τίς βίος <u>ἄριστος</u> ἐστίν; ἄρα ὁ τοῦ ἀρχοντος, ἢ τοῦ ποιητοῦ, ἢ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ... ;
Ἀθ	ὁ Σωκράτης περὶ τῶν βίων καὶ τῆς ἐκάστου ἀρετῆς λέγει τε καὶ φροντίζει. ἐν γὰρ τῇ ἀγορᾷ καὶ ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῖς αἰεὶ λέγει, "τί ἐστὶν ἡ δικαιοσύνη;" καὶ, "τί ἐστὶν ἡ ἀνδρεία;" καὶ ἴσως λέγει τις τῶν παρόντων περὶ τῆς ἀνδρείας, "εἴ τις εἰς οἰκίαν <u>καιομένην</u> εἰστρέχει ὡς <u>παιδίον</u> τι <u>σώσων</u> ". ἀλλὰ ὁ Σωκράτης λέγει, "συ <u>παράδειγμα</u> τι μόνον τῆς ἀνδρείας παρέχεις. τί μέντοι ἐστὶν ἡ ἀνδρεία αὐτή;" καὶ οἱ παρόντες οὐχ οἱοί τ' εἰσὶ λέγειν. καὶ δι' ὀργὴν ἀποβαίνουσιν.

	ἄριστος -η -ον	best
	ἢ	or
	ἀρετή -ῆς ἢ	excellence, virtue
	φροντίζω	I think, I consider
5	ἀνδρεία -ας ἢ	courage
	ἴσως	perhaps
	εἴ	if
	καιόμενος -η -ον	burning, on fire
	παιδίον -ου τό	small child
7	σώζω <i>fui</i> σώσω	I save
	παράδειγμα -ατος τό	example

Ξεν	εἰκότως δὴ. πολυπράγμων γὰρ καὶ ὀχληρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ Σωκράτης.
Ἄθ	ἐκ προνοίας ἐστίν. λέγει γὰρ ὅτι οἰστρός ἐστιν. αἰὶ βομβεῖ ὁ οἰστρος· τοὺς ἵππους ταρασσει, καὶ κωλύει* καθεύδειν. ὁ οὖν Σωκράτης ὁμοίως τοὺς πολίτας ταρασσει, ὥστε ἀναγκάζονται πάντα ἐξετάζειν.

15

\* an infinitive after κωλύω needs to be translated (*prevent*) from (*doing X*)

	εἰκότως	reasonably
	δὴ	indeed
	πολυπράγμων	interfering
	ὀχληρὸς -ά -όν	troublesome
12	ἐκ προνοίας	deliberately
	ὅτι	that
	οἰστρος -ου ὁ	gadfly
	βομβέω	I buzz
	ταράσσω	I annoy
13	καθεύδω	I sleep
	ὁμοίως	similarly
	ὥστε	with the result that
	ἀναγκάζω	I force, I compel
	ἐξετάζω	I examine

## This and That

Words for *this* and *that* (and others we shall meet later such as *so many*) are called *demonstratives* because they point out or *demonstrate* (*this one here, that one there*, etc).

The normal Greek word for *this* is οὗτος. It has normal 2-1-2 endings (though, because it can be a pronoun, with -ο rather than -ον in the neuter nominative and accusative singular), and its stem undergoes some variation:

		masculine	feminine	neuter	
sg	nom	<u>οὗτ-ος</u>	<u>αὗτ-η</u>	τοῦτ-ο	this
	acc	τοῦτ-ον	ταύτ-ην	τοῦτ-ο	
	gen	τούτ-ου	ταύτ-ης	τούτ-ου	
	dat	τούτ-ω	ταύτ-η	τούτ-ω	
pl	nom	<u>οὗτ-οι</u>	<u>αὗτ-αι</u>	ταῦτ-α	these
	acc	τούτ-ους	ταύτ-ας	ταῦτ-α	
	gen	τούτ-ων	τούτ-ων	τούτ-ων	
	dat	τούτ-οις	ταύτ-αις	τούτ-οις	

• The basic stem is τουτ-. The tau is replaced by a rough breathing in the same places as it is in the definite article: masculine and feminine nominative, singular and plural (underlined). The -ου- in the stem is replaced by -αυ- in the feminine (except the genitive plural, which just follows the masculine and neuter), and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

• Despite looking similar, no part of this word is identical to any part of αὐτός (the feminine nominative forms, singular and plural, are close - but their breathings and accents are different).

- It can be used either as a *pronoun* (according to gender and number: *this woman, these things* etc), or as an *adjective*.
- When used as an adjective, it has *the article as well* (not translated), but is *not sandwiched*:  

οὗτος ὁ δοῦλος	this slave
ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα	these gifts
- As a pronoun *in the nominative*, it is commonly used just for *he* (as well as *this man*), because αὐτός cannot be used in this way in the nominative (it can in the other cases, for *him* etc).

#### Exercise 7.12

Give the Greek for:

- 1 These horses (*nominative*)
- 2 For this old man
- 3 Of these goddesses
- 4 This girl (*accusative*)
- 5 These soldiers (*nominative*)

#### Exercise 7.13

Translate into English:

- 1 οὗτοι οἱ ναῦται ἀνδρεῖοί εἰσιν.
- 2 τίς ἐστὶν αὕτη ἡ παῖς;
- 3 ὁ τῶν συμμάχων ἄγγελος ταῦτα ἠγγειλεν.
- 4 αὕτη ἡ θεὰ δῶρα κάλλιστα παρέχει.
- 5 οὗτοι τὰ αὐτὰ λέγουσιν.
- 6 ἡ κῶμη αὕτη\* ὑπὸ τῶν γερόντων φυλάσσεται.
- 7 τίς ἐστὶν οὗτος; ἄρα ὁ σὸς φίλος;
- 8 ταῦτα ἔπαυσε τὴν μάχην.
- 9 ἐγὼ ἵππον οὐκ ἔχω, ἀλλὰ οὗτος ἔχει.
- 10 οὗτοι οἱ δοῦλοι, οἱ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων διωκόμενοι, οὐκ ἤκουσαν τοὺς τοῦ ἀγγέλου λόγους.

\* this word order is also possible for the adjective use of οὗτος, though less common: the crucial point is that it does not sandwich

#### Exercise 7.14

Translate into Greek:

- 1 This girl has a fine horse.
- 2 Who announced these things?
- 3 This man is not a sailor.
- 4 These women admire the laws of the country.
- 5 Were you carrying these weapons, slave?

An alternative (but less common) word for *this* is ὃδε. It does not involve any new learning, as it is simply the definite article with -δε stuck on the end:

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὁ-δε	ἡ-δε	τό-δε	<i>this</i>
	<i>acc</i>	τόν-δε	τήν-δε	τό-δε	
	<i>gen</i>	τοῦ-δε	τῆς-δε	τοῦ-δε	
	<i>dat</i>	τῷ-δε	τῇ-δε	τῷ-δε	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	οἱ-δε	αἱ-δε	τά-δε	<i>these</i>
	<i>acc</i>	τούς-δε	τάς-δε	τά-δε	
	<i>gen</i>	τῶν-δε	τῶν-δε	τῶν-δε	
	<i>dat</i>	τοῖς-δε	ταῖς-δε	τοῖς-δε	

• The use of *ὁδε* both as a pronoun and as an adjective (with untranslated definite article, and not sandwiched) is similar to that of *οὗτος*. And often there is no difference of meaning. There is however a preference for *ὁδε* when the implication is *this one actually present*, to *point* to what is described.

• Often parts of *οὗτος* refer backwards to something already mentioned, parts of *ὁδε* forwards to something about to be mentioned. This is especially common in the neuter:

ἡγγειλε ταῦτα.

He announced these things (*already quoted*).

ἡγγειλε τάδε.

He announced these things (*about to be quoted*) or the following.

### Exercise 7.15

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁδε ὁ δοῦλος νῦν πάρεστιν.
- 2 ἄρα ἔγραψας τήνδε τὴν ἐπιστολήν;
- 3 τίνες εἰσὶν αἶδε αἱ ὑπὸ τοῦ παιδὸς διωκόμεναι;
- 4 τάδε τὰ ὀπλά οὐκ ἔστιν ἐμά.
- 5 ἐφυλάσσομεν τοὺς τε ἡμετέρους ἵππους καὶ τούσδε.

The word for *that* is *ἐκεῖνος* (compare *ἐκεῖ*: literally the *one over there*, further away than something referred to as *this*). It has normal 2-1-2 endings (though again, because it can be a pronoun, with -ο rather than -ον in the neuter nominative and accusative singular).

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ἐκεῖν-ος	ἐκεῖν-η	ἐκεῖν-ο	<i>that</i>
	<i>acc</i>	ἐκεῖν-ον	ἐκεῖν-ην	ἐκεῖν-ο	
	<i>gen</i>	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ης	ἐκεῖν-ου	
	<i>dat</i>	ἐκεῖν-ω	ἐκεῖν-ῃ	ἐκεῖν-ω	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	ἐκεῖν-οι	ἐκεῖν-αι	ἐκεῖν-α	<i>those</i>
	<i>acc</i>	ἐκεῖν-ους	ἐκεῖν-ας	ἐκεῖν-α	
	<i>gen</i>	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	ἐκεῖν-οις	ἐκεῖν-αις	ἐκεῖν-οις	

• The use of *ἐκεῖνος* both as a pronoun and as an adjective (with untranslated definite article, and not sandwiched) is again similar to that of *οὗτος*.

• As a pronoun, *ἐκεῖνος* can (like *οὗτος*) be used just for *he* (as well as *that man*).

### Exercise 7.16

Give the Greek for:

- 1 That boy (*accusative*)
- 2 Of those letters
- 3 For that old man
- 4 Those girls (*nominative*)
- 5 That road (*nominative*)

### Exercise 7.17

Translate into English:

- 1 ἐκεῖνοι οἱ στρατιῶται ξένοι εἰσίν.
- 2 αὐταὶ ἔμειναν, ἀλλὰ ἐκεῖναι ἔφυγον.
- 3 τίς ἐστὶν ἐκεῖνος, ὁ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ;
- 4 ἄρα ἀπέβαλες ἐκεῖνας τὰς βίβλους;
- 5 δεῖπνον παρέσχομεν ἐκείνοις.

### Exercise 7.18 (Assorted demonstratives)

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Is this slave here guarding the house?
- 2 These words are being spoken by a wise old man.
- 3 We were chasing those horses towards the sea.
- 4 This house has new gates.
- 5 Those weapons will not harm you, friends.

### Exercise 7.19

#### Socrates and the Philosophers (3)

- ἈΘ καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης θαυμάσια λέγει, ὅτι οὐδεὶς ἐκὼν ἀμαρτάνει.  
 εἰ γὰρ κακὰ πράσσομεν, δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι τὸ ἀγαθὸν οὐ  
 γινώσκουμεν. εἰ γὰρ τις κακὰ πράσσει, τὴν ψυχὴν βλάπτει· καὶ  
 5 Ξεν ἄμεινόν ἐστι κακὰ πάσχειν ἢ κακὰ πράσσειν ...  
 ἈΘ περὶ ἀνθρώπου τινὸς λέγεις, ἢ περὶ θεοῦ;  
 περὶ ἀνθρώπου δῆ. ὁ γὰρ Σωκράτης οἶός τ' ἐστὶν οἶνον πίνειν ὥς

	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	remarkable
	ὅτι	that
	ἐκὼν -οὔσα -όν (έκοντ-)	willing(ly)
	ἀμαρτάνω	I err, I make a mistake, I sin
2	εἰ	if
	πράσσω	I do
	δῆλος -η -ον	clear
	ψυχὴ -ῆς ἡ	soul
	ἄμεινον	better
4	ἢ	(line 4) than; (line 5) or
	δῆ	indeed



οὐδείς ἄλλος, καίπερ οὐδέποτε μεθύων. καὶ στρατιώτης ὢν τοὺς  
φίλους ἔσωσεν. καὶ εἶδομεν αὐτὸν ἐν χειμῶνι πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα  
στάντα καὶ φροντίζοντα, ἱμάτιον μόνον καὶ πέδιλα ἔχοντα.  
10 Ξεν ἄρα γενναῖός ἐστιν ὁ Σωκράτης;  
'Αθ οὐδαμῶς. ἡ μὲν γὰρ μήτηρ μαῖα ἦν, ὁ πατὴρ ἀγαλματοποιός.  
καὶ λέγει ὁ Σωκράτης ὅτι τὰ αὐτὰ πράσσει· μαῖα γάρ τίς ἐστι  
τῶν γυναικῶν· οἱ γὰρ μαθηταὶ αὐτοῦ γυνῶμας τίκτουσιν. καὶ ὥσπερ  
ὁ ἀγαλματοποιὸς τὸ ἄγαλμα ἐν τῷ λίθῳ ἐκκαλύπτων, ὁ Σωκράτης  
15 ὁμοίως τὰς γυνῶμας ἐκκαλύπτει.

	οὐδέποτε	never
	μεθύω	I am drunk
	σῶζω ἔσωσα	I save
	χειμῶν -ῶνος ὁ	winter
9	στάς στάσα στάν (stem σταντ-)	standing (irreg aor participle)
	φροντίζω	I think
	ἱμάτιον -ου τό	cloak
	πέδιλα -ων τά	sandals
	γενναῖος -α -ον	noble, of noble birth
11	οὐδαμῶς	not at all
	μαῖα -ας ἡ	midwife
	ἀγαλματοποιός -οῦ ὁ	sculptor
	γνώμη -ης ἡ	idea
	μαθητής -οῦ ὁ	student
13	τίκτω	I give birth to
	ὥσπερ	just as, just like
	ἄγαλμα -ατος τό	statue
	ἐκκαλύπτω	I uncover, I reveal
	ὁμοίως	in the same way

• Note that (as we have seen in this passage) καί is very commonly used when it is not needed in its normal sense as a connective *and*. In these contexts *also* or *even* is normally an appropriate translation. (In Latin *et* has a similar range of uses and meanings.)

## Background: Socrates (2)

The only surviving account of Socrates written during his lifetime is a send-up in a play by the comic writer Aristophanes. Comedy exaggerates and distorts to get laughs. Aristophanes makes Socrates into the typical eccentric philosopher or mad scientist (compare the story about Thales and the well). He is shown in the play doing experiments in physical science (such as astronomy), but this - as we saw - was an interest only of his youth (as it had been of earlier philosophers, such as Thales). He is also shown running a school (called a *Phrontisterion*, an invented word meaning *Think-tank*), though the real Socrates taught only by informal discussion in public places (the agora, the gymnasium) or private houses. His distinctive appearance (unheroic, pot-bellied, with bulging eyes, a broad nose and a bull-like expression) made him well-known in Athens, and explains why Aristophanes chose him as the object of satire. Socrates was a good target because he was local and familiar. The real Socrates is said to have been in the audience and to have stood up at the end (as if to say 'Look how unlike that ridiculous caricature I am!').

The true target of the play seems to have been a group called the *Sophists*. They were travelling teachers, drawn to Athens by the demand in the new democracy for skills in public speaking: young men hoped to make their way in the city by speaking impressively and persuasively in the assembly or lawcourt. Sophists ranged from charlatans out to make a quick profit to serious and original philosophers. Many of them (in

contrast to Socrates) charged high fees. Several were associated with a doctrine of *relativism*, implying that there are no fixed or divinely inspired values. Such ideas were widely seen as a recipe for social unrest. Similarly, the public-speaking exercise of learning to argue both sides of a case equally well was regarded as dangerous, in putting aside the question of right and wrong. Plato emphasises how far removed Socrates was from all this; but the fact that Aristophanes could choose him as a symbol of the new ideas suggests that many people would be more struck by similarities than differences. The truth no doubt lies somewhere in the middle.

Comedies (like other plays) were put on in Athens at two big public festivals during the early spring of each year. Aristophanes (about 445-385 BC) specialised in political and social satire, making fun of people and issues in the public eye. His play *Clouds* (named after its chorus, whom philosophers supposedly worship instead of the traditional gods) was first staged in 423 BC, though re-written some years later. At the time of the play Athens and her empire were engaged in a long war (the *Peloponnesian War*, 431-404 BC) with Sparta and her allies, who included Corinth (mentioned in the following passage).

## Exercise 7.20

### Socrates in Comedy (1)

*The main character of the play, Strepsiades (his name means Twister), is an elderly and dishonest Athenian farmer who has been financially ruined by his son's taste for the aristocratic hobby of horses and chariot-racing. He has heard that Socrates can 'make the worse cause appear the better' (arguing either side of a case), and sees this as a way of arguing the family out of debt. His son refuses to go to the Phrontisterion, so Strepsiades goes himself. In the first passage he has just seen some of the students and various pieces of scientific equipment in the school.*

Στρεψιάδης νῆ τοὺς θεοὺς, τίνα ταῦτα τὰ θηρία;  
 Μαθητῆς τίς ἡ βοή; διὰ τί θαυμάζεις· ἡμεῖς γὰρ μαθηταὶ ἐσμεν.  
 Στρ ἄλλὰ τί πράσσει ὁ εἰς τὴν γῆν βλέπων;  
 Μαθ τὰ ὑπὸ τῇ γῇ ἐθέλει εὐρίσκειν.  
 5 Στρ ἐθέλει οὖν βολβοὺς ἐσθίειν. μὴ φρόντιζε, ὦ φίλε μαθητά.  
 καλοὶ γὰρ βολβοὶ ἐν τοῖς ἐμοῖς ἀγροῖς εἰσιν. ἄλλα τίνες αὐταὶ αἱ  
 μηχαναί;  
 Μαθ αὐταὶ εἰς ἀστρονομίαν. πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν αὐταῖς βλέπομεν.  
 Στρ καὶ ἐκεῖναι;  
 10 Μαθ εἰς γεωμετρίαν. αὕτη δ' ἐστὶ γῆς περίοδος· καὶ ἐνθάδε αἱ Ἀθῆναι.

	Στρεψιάδης ὁ	Strepsiades
	νῆ	by ... ! (+ acc)
	θηρίον -ου τό	wild beast
	μαθητῆς -οῦ ὁ	student
3	πράσσω	I do
	βλέπω	I look
	βολβός -οῦ ὁ	truffle (edible fungus growing underground)
	μὴ	(with imperative) don't ... !
	φροντίζω	(here) I worry
7	μηχανή -ῆς ἡ	device, piece of equipment
	εἰς	(here) for (the purpose of)
	ἀστρονομία -ας ἡ	astronomy
	γεωμετρία -ας ἡ	earth-measuring
	περίοδος -ου ἡ	map (literally circuit)

- Στρ τί λέγεις; οὐ πιστεύω, διότι δικαστήριον οὐ πάρεστιν. ποῦ δ' ἐστὶν ἡ ἐμὴ οἰκία;
- Μαθ ἐνθάδε ἐστίν.
- Στρ ἀλλὰ ποῦ ἐστὶν ἡ Λακεδαίμων;
- 15 Μαθ αὕτη ἐστίν.
- Στρ οἴμοι. ὥς ἐγγὺς ἡμῶν ἡ Λακεδαίμων. ὥς ἐγγὺς τῆς ἐμῆς οἰκίας οἱ πολέμιοι. ἦ ἄπαγε αὐτοὺς ἀφ' ἡμῶν ἢ ἀπόβαλλε τὴν περίοδον.
- Μαθ οὐχ οἶός τ' εἰμί.
- (Socrates swings into view on the crane used in serious plays for the appearance of gods)
- Στρ ἀλλὰ λέγε μοι, τίς οὗτος ὁ ἐν τῇ κρεμάθρᾳ ὢν;
- 20 Μαθ αὐτός.
- Στρ τίς αὐτός;
- Μαθ ὁ Σωκράτης.

	δικαστήριον -ου τό	lawcourt (Athenians notoriously loved sitting on juries)
	Λακεδαίμων -ονος ἡ	Sparta, Spartan territory
	οἴμοι	oh no!
	ὥς	(here) how ... !
17	ἦ ... ἢ	either ... or
	κρεμάθρα -ας ἡ	hanging basket

## Imperfect passive

This has the augment like the active past tenses, and endings which are similar to (or recognisable variants of) those of the present passive.

*imperfect passive:*

<i>sg</i>	1	ἐ-παυ-όμην	I was being stopped
	2	ἐ-παύ-ου	you ( <i>sg</i> ) were being stopped
	3	ἐ-παύ-ετο	he/she/it was being stopped
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐ-παυ-όμεθα	we were being stopped
	2	ἐ-παύ-εσθε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) were being stopped
	3	ἐ-παύ-οντο	they were being stopped

• You have now met two sets of endings which are used for other jobs as well as the present and imperfect passive, so it is important to learn them thoroughly. (We have already seen in the active tenses the same endings used for present and future, and the same ones for imperfect and second [strong] aorist.) The endings used for the present passive are (like the -ω -εις -ει active ones) called *primary*, and the ones for the imperfect passive are (like the -ον -ες -ε active ones) called *historic*.

• Here are the primary and historic Greek endings, active and passive, side by side:

<i>active:</i>		<i>primary</i>	<i>historic</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	-ω	-ον
	2	-εις	-ες
	3	-ει	-ε(ν)
<i>pl</i>	1	-ομεν	-ομεν
	2	-ετε	-ετε
	3	-ουσι(ν)	-ον

<i>passive:</i>		<i>primary</i>	<i>historic</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	-ομαι	-ομην
	2	-η (or -ει)	-ου
	3	-εται	-ετο
<i>pl</i>	1	-ομεθα	-ομεθα
	2	-εσθε	-εσθε
	3	-ονται	-οντο

• Notice in both active and passive that the first and second persons plural for primary and historic are identical. Only the augment here indicates a past (historic) tense.

### Exercise 7.21

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 You (*pl*) were being sent.
- 2 I was being harmed.
- 3 We were being persuaded.
- 4 He was being carried.
- 5 They were being led.

### Exercise 7.22

*Translate into English:*

- 1 οἱ πολέμιοι ὑπὸ τῶν συμμάχων ἐδιώκοντο.
- 2 ἡ πύλη ὑπὸ τῶν παίδων ἐφυλάσσετο.
- 3 ἐκεῖνοι οἱ νεκροὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ξένων ἐθάπτοντο.
- 4 οἱ στρατιῶται τοῖς τῶν γιγάντων ὅπλοις ἐβάλλοντο\*.
- 5 τὸ ἱερὸν ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ θαυμάζεται.
- 6 ἐφερόμεθα ὑπὸ τούτων τῶν δούλων.
- 7 ἄρα ἐβλάπτου τῷ δένδρῳ, ὦ ἄγγελε;
- 8 ἡ βοή ὑπὸ τῆς κόρης ἠκούετο.
- 9 οἱ λόγοι ὑπὸ πάντων τῶν παίδων ἐμανθάνοντο.
- 10 ὁ δῆμος τοῖς τοῦ ἀγγέλου λόγοις ἐπείθετο.

\* note that the alternative meaning *I pelt, I hit* (rather than *I throw*) is appropriate for βάλλω here

### Exercise 7.23

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The letter was being carried by the slave.
- 2 Our plans were being stolen by the enemy.
- 3 We are being chased by the giant.
- 4 You (*pl*) were being persuaded by the words of the stranger.
- 5 The harbour was being guarded by the fleet.

## Revision checkpoint:

*Make sure you know:*

- present passive
- present passive participle
- passive infinitive
- the words for *this* (two different ones) and *that*, and their declensions
- imperfect passive
- primary and historic endings, active and passive

### Exercise 7.24

#### Socrates in Comedy (2)

Στρεψιάδης	ὦ Σώκρατες, ὦ Σωκρατίδιον, ἄρα ἀληθῶς πάρει;	
Σωκράτης	τίς ἡ βοή; τίς βία εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τὸ τῶν σοφῶν φροντιστήριον;	
Στρ	ἐγώ, ὦ Στρεψιάδης. ἀλλὰ οὐ βία εἰσῆλθον.	
Σωκ	διὰ τί πάρει, ὦ ἐφήμερε; διὰ τί εἰσῆλθες;	
5 Στρ	ἐθέλω παρὰ σοῦ μανθάνειν. ἤκουσα γὰρ περὶ σοῦ ὡς σοφοῦ ὄντος. καὶ ὁ μαθητὴς πολλὰ εἶπε περὶ τῆς ἀστρονομίας, τῆς γεωμετρίας, τῶν βολβῶν, τῆς ἐμῆς οἰκίας, τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων ἐγγὺς ὄντων ...	
Σωκ	μωρὸς εἶ σὺ καὶ ἄγροικος.	
10 Στρ	κάτεχε τὴν ὀργήν, ὦ Σώκρατες. ἀλλὰ τί πράσσεις ἐν τῇδε τῇ κρεμάθρᾳ ὦν;	
Σωκ	ἀεροβάτης ὦν περὶ τοῦ ἡλίου φροντίζω.	
Στρ	διὰ τί ἀπὸ κρεμάθρας, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς;	
Σωκ	οὐδὲν οἶός τ' εἰμὶ μανθάνειν ἢ εὐρίσκειν κάτω φροντίζων.	
15	καλύει γὰρ ἡ γῆ τὴν φροντίδα.	
	Σωκρατίδιον	dear little Socrates ( <i>diminutive, expressing affection</i> )
	ἀληθῶς	truly, really
	βία -ας ἢ	force
	εἰσῆλθον	I came in ( <i>irreg aor</i> )
2	φροντιστήριον -ου τό	Think-tank
	ἐφήμερος -ον	creature of a day, short-lived
	παρὰ	(+ <i>gen</i> ) from (a person)
	μαθητὴς -οῦ ὁ	student
	ἀστρονομία -ας ἢ	astronomy
7	γεωμετρία -ας ἢ	earth measuring
	βολβός -οῦ ὁ	truffle
	Λακεδαιμόνιοι -ων οἱ	Spartans
	ἄγροικος -ου ὁ	ignoramus, boor
	κατέχω	I restrain
11	κρεμάθρα -ας ἢ	hanging basket
	ἀεροβάτης -ου ὁ	walker on air
	ἥλιος -ου ὁ	sun
	φροντίζω	I think
	κάτω	down below
15	φροντίς -ιδος ἢ	thought process

## Socrates in Comedy (3)

- Στρ ἄλλ', ὦ Σώκρατες, διὰ τί οὐ καταβαίνεις; ἐγὼ γὰρ εἰς τὸ  
φροντιστήριον ἦλθον διότι ὑπὸ τῶν χρηστῶν ἐδιωκόμην, πολλὰ  
χρήματα ὀφείλων.
- Σωκ ἄλλα πῶς τοῦτο πάσχεις;
- 5 Στρ ὁ μὲν υἱὸς ἵππομανῆς ἐστίν. ἐγὼ οὖν χρήματα ὀφείλω. οἱ γὰρ  
ἵπποι τὰ χρήματα ἐσθίουσιν. ἄλλα δίδασκέ με ἐκείνῳ τὸν  
λόγον τὸν ἄδικον. τοῦτον γὰρ τὸν λόγον μαθὼν τοὺς χρήστας  
πεῖσω λέγων ὅτι οὐδὲν ὀφείλω.
- Σωκ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης καθίζων περὶ τοῦ βίου καὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ  
10 φροντίζε. (pause) ἄρα γνώμην τινὰ ἔχεις;
- Στρ τόδε μόνον, ὅτι οἱ ἐν τῇ κλίνῃ κόρεις ἐμὲ δεινῶς δάκνουσιν,  
ὥσπερ οἱ Κορίνθιοι τοὺς Ἀθηναίους.
- Σωκ οὐδὲν λέγεις, ὦ γέρον.
- Στρ ἄλλα γνώμην τινὰ νῦν ἔχω· τὴν σελήνην κλέψω.
- 15 Σωκ τί λέγεις; ἄρα τὴν σελήνην κλέψεις; πῶς τοῦτο χρήσιμον;
- Στρ ἄκουε. οἱ γὰρ χρήσται τὰ χρήματα συλλέγουσιν τῇ νουμηνίᾳ.  
ἐγὼ οὖν τὴν σελήνην κλέψω. ἔσται οὖν οὐδεμία νουμηνία, καὶ  
οἱ χρήσται τὰ χρήματα οὐ συλλέξουσιν. καὶ ἐγὼ καλῶς πράξω,  
οὐκέτι ὑπ' αὐτῶν διωκόμενος.
- 20 Σωκ εἰς κόρακας. μῶρος γὰρ εἶ. οὐκέτι οὖν διδάξω σε, οὕτω μῶρον  
ὄντα.

	καταβαίνω	I come down
	φροντιστήριον -ου τό	Think-tank
	χρήστης -ου ὁ	creditor (person owed money)
	ὀφείλω	I owe
5	υἱός -οῦ ὁ	son
	ἵππομανῆς	horse-mad
	λόγος -ου ὁ	(here) argument
	ἄδικος -ον	unjust
	ὅτι	that
9	ἐπὶ	(+ gen) on
	κλίνη -ης ἡ	couch
	καθίζω	I sit
	φροντίζω	I think
	γνώμη -ης ἡ	idea
11	κόρεις -εων οἱ	bugs
	δάκνω	I bite
	Κορίνθιοι -ων οἱ	Corinthians (enemies of the Athenians; the word also provides a pun on κόρεις)
	οὐδὲν λέγω	I talk rubbish
14	σελήνη -ης ἡ	moon
	νουμηνία -ας ἡ	(day of) new moon
	ἔσται	there will be
	πράσσω fut πράξω	I do, I fare
	εἰς κόρακας	to the crows! (i.e. go to hell!)
20	οὕτω	so

## Comparison of adjectives

An ordinary adjective (e.g. σοφός = *wise*) is called the *positive*: it simply states that the person or thing has that quality, without commenting on the extent. To make a comparison with others, we use the *comparative* (English *-er*, or *more ~*), often followed by *than*. To state that the quality exists in a very high degree, we use the *superlative* (English *very ~* or *[the] ~est*). As in English, the definite article with the superlative implies *the ~ est*, and is naturally followed by a genitive *of (the group)*.

- In Greek the basic *comparative* form for regular adjectives ends in -τερος.

- And the basic *superlative* form ends in -τατος.

- These are normally put onto the stem after either *omicron* or *omega*:

e.g.      δειν-ό-τερος      δειν-ό-τατος  
             σοφ-ώ-τερος      σοφ-ώ-τατος

- This works on a compensation principle. If the last or only syllable of the adjective stem is *long* (usually meaning it contains a long vowel or diphthong), it adds the *short* omicron. If the last or only syllable of the adjective stem is *short* (containing a short vowel, alone or followed by only one consonant) it adds the *long* omega: δειν- is long and so adds omicron, σοφ- is short and so adds omega.

- The comparative and superlative decline like ordinary adjectives. The comparative goes (in the nominative singular, across the genders) -ος -α -ον (like φίλιος), the superlative goes -ος -η -ον (like σοφός itself). This is because the comparative stem (i.e. after adding -τερ- or -ωτερ-, but before the ending itself) ends in rho (regarded as equivalent to a vowel, as in the noun χώρα) whilst the superlative stem ends in the consonant tau. Hence:

*comparatives*

δεινότερος -α -ον  
σοφώτερος -α -ον

*superlatives*

δεινότατος -η -ον  
σοφώτατος -η -ον

- To express *than* after a comparative, the usual method is to use ἤ (= *than*), with the noun after it in the same case as the noun with which it is being compared.

e.g.      ὁ παῖς σοφώτερός ἐστιν ἢ ὁ γέρων.

The boy is wiser than the old man.

(both nouns nominative, because the verb could be supplied again with the old man as subject: The boy is wiser than the old man is.)

οὐδένα φίλον ἔχομεν σοφώτερον ἢ τὸν κριτὴν.

We have no friend wiser than the judge.

(both nouns accusative, because the verb could be supplied again with the judge as object: We have no friend wiser than we have the judge [as a friend].)

- However it is also possible, in simple comparisons, to miss out the word for *than* and put

the second noun into the genitive. This is called the *genitive of comparison* (like the Latin ablative of comparison; whilst the use of ἢ corresponds to Latin *quam*).

e.g. ὁ παῖς σοφώτερός ἐστι τοῦ γέροντος.

The boy is wiser than (*literally* wiser [by the standard] of) the old man.

• Note that ἢ after a comparative means *than*, but in other contexts usually means *or*.

(The two meanings are not as different as they may seem: compare in English *Do you like X better than Y?* and *Do you prefer X or Y?*)

#### Exercise 7.26

*Give the comparative (masculine nominative singular) of:*

- 1 ἀνδρεῖος
- 2 μακρός\*
- 3 φίλιος
- 4 μῶρος
- 5 χαλεπός

\* even though the alpha is short, the two following consonants here make the one-syllable stem long

#### Exercise 7.27

*Give the superlative (masculine nominative singular) of:*

- 1 μῶρος
- 2 ἐλεύθερος
- 3 νέος
- 4 ἐτοιμός
- 5 ἀνδρεῖος

#### Exercise 7.28

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ στρατηγὸς μωρότερός ἐστιν ἢ ὁ δοῦλος.
- 2 οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος δεινότερός ἐστι τῆς θαλάσσης.
- 3 ἄρα ἡ κόρη σοφώτερα ἐστὶν ἢ ὁ παῖς;
- 4 οἱ πολῖται ἀνδρειότατοι ἦσαν.
- 5 αὕτη ἡ βίβλος νεωτάτη ἐστίν.
- 6 ὁ ἀνδρειότατος τῶν πολιτῶν ὑπὸ πάντων ἐθανμάζετο.
- 7 τὸ ναυτικὸν ἐτοιμότερον ἦν τοῦ στρατοῦ.
- 8 ὁ σοφώτατος κριτῆς πρὸς τὴν νῆσον ἐπέμπετο.
- 9 ἦδε ἢ θεὰ φιλιωτέρα ἢ ἐκείνη.
- 10 οὗτος ἀνδρειότατός ἐστι τῶν νῦν.

#### Exercise 7.29

### The Wisdom of Socrates

*In 399 BC, aged 70, Socrates was put on trial, accused of corrupting the young men of Athens with dangerous (mainly political) ideas, and of not believing in the gods of the city. We shall return to his trial and death in Chapter 8 (by then you may have a view about whether the charges were justified). Here, while defending himself in court, Socrates looks back to the early days when he began to ask philosophical*



questions. The oracle at Delphi in central Greece was the most famous in the ancient world, consulted by both states and individuals on important questions. The replies of the god Apollo were communicated through an old woman called the Pythia, whose ecstatic utterances were put into intelligible form by priests.

- ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης, καίπερ σοφώτατός τε καὶ δικαιότατος ὢν, ἠναγκάζετο ἀπολογίαν περὶ τοῦ βίου ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ λέγειν· καὶ ἤδη γέρων ἦν. ἐδικάζετο γὰρ ὡς τοὺς τε νεανίας διαφθείρων καὶ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐ νομίζων. "ὦ Ἀθηναῖοι," ἔφη, "τὸν θόρυβον κατέχετε. οὐ γὰρ μέγα λέγω. 5 περὶ δὲ τῆς ἐμῆς σοφίας, εἴ τινα ἔχω, μάρτυς ἐστὶν ὁ ἐν Δελφοῖς θεός. περὶ δὲ τοῦ Χαιρεφῶντος ἠκούσατε πάντες. οὗτος γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος ἐκ νέου ἦν. ὁ δὲ Χαιρεφῶν εἰς Δελφούς ποτε ἦλθεν. γινώσκειν γὰρ ἤθελε εἴ τίς ἐστι σοφώτερος ἢ ὁ Σωκράτης. ἡ δὲ Πυθία 'οὐδεὶς,' ἔφη, 'σοφώτερός ἐστιν'. ὁ δὲ Χαιρεφῶν ὕστερον ἀπέθανεν, ἀλλὰ ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφὸς μάρτυς 10 ἐστὶ τούτων. ἐγὼ δὲ τοὺς τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος λόγους ἀκούσας ἐθαύμασα· τί οὖν λέγει ὁ θεός; ἄρα αἰνιγμά ἐστιν; ἐγὼ γὰρ οὐδαμῶς σοφός εἰμι. διὰ τί λέγει ὁ Ἀπόλλων ὅτι σοφώτατός εἰμι; οὐ γὰρ ψευδομάρτυς ἐστὶν ὁ θεός. τέλος δὲ τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἔμαθον. πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ λέγουσιν ὅτι σοφοί εἰσιν, οὐκ ὄντες· ἐγὼ δὲ οἶδα ὅτι οὐδὲν οἶδα. τοῦτω οὖν σοφώτερός 15 εἰμι τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν."

	δικαίος -α -ον	just
	ἀναγκάζω	I force, I compel
	ἀπολογία -ας ἡ	defence, speech in defence
	δικαστήριον -ου τό	lawcourt
2	ἤδη	now, already
	δικάζω	I try ( <i>in court</i> ), I put on trial
	διαφθείρω	<i>lit</i> I destroy, ( <i>here</i> ) I corrupt
	νομίζω	( <i>here</i> ) I believe in
	ἔφη	he said ( <i>usually interrupting direct quote</i> )
4	θόρυβος -ου ὁ	commotion, noise
	κατέχω	I restrain
	μέγα λέγω	I boast ( <i>lit</i> talk big)
	εἰ	if
	μάρτυς -υρος ὁ	witness
5	Δελφοί -ων οἱ	Delphi
	Χαιρεφῶν -ωντος ὁ	Chaerephon
	ἐκ νέου	from youth
	ποτε	( <i>not in a question</i> ) once
	Πυθία -ας ἡ	Pythia ( <i>priestess of Apollo at Delphi</i> )
9	ὕστερον	later
	ἀδελφός -ου ὁ	brother
	Ἀπόλλων -ωνος ὁ	Apollo
	αἰνιγμα -ατος τό	riddle
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
	ὅτι	that
12	ψευδομάρτυς -υρος ὁ	false witness
	ἀλήθεια -ας ἡ	truth
	οἶδα	I know

NB: from this passage, note the important word ἔφη = *he/she said*, usually interrupting quotation of the speaker's words. In English it is often better moved to the beginning or end of the quoted words.

## Comparison of adverbs

As we saw in Chapter 3, most ordinary adjectives can be made into adverbs by changing the -ων of the genitive plural to -ως:

σοφός, <i>gen pl</i> σοφῶν	wise
σοφῶς	wisely

- The comparative adverb is the same as the *neuter singular* of the comparative adjective:  
σοφώτερον                      more wisely
- The superlative adverb is the same as the *neuter plural* of the superlative adjective:  
σοφώτατα                      very wisely, most wisely
- It is easy to see how these formations have come about:  
σοφώτατα εἶπεν.                      *literally* He said very wise things.  
*is of course equivalent to*                      He spoke very wisely.
- Adverbs do not change their endings. An adverb usually goes just in front of the verb.

### Exercise 7.30

Give the Greek for:

- 1 More strangely
- 2 Very dangerously
- 3 Most bravely
- 4 More stupidly
- 5 Very usefully

### Exercise 7.31

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ παῖς σοφώτερον εἶπεν ἢ ὁ γέρων.
- 2 οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ τὰς πύλας ἀνδρειότατα ἐφύλασσον.
- 3 ἐκεῖνος ὁ δοῦλος μαρότερός ἐστι τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ μαρότερον λέγει.
- 4 τίς τῶν λεόντων φιλιώτατα προσβαίνει;
- 5 ὁ τοῦ κριτοῦ δοῦλος σοφώτατα γράφει.
- 6 ὁ ἄγγελος χρησιμώτερον εἶπεν ἢ ὁ στρατηγός.
- 7 οἱ ἡμέτεροι σύμμαχοι ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ δεινότατα ἔπαθον.
- 8 τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν ἀνδρείως ἐκλέπτετο.
- 9 οὗτοι οἱ παῖδες μαρότερον ἔγραψαν ἢ ἐκεῖνοι.
- 10 οἱ στρατιῶται πρὸ τῶν πυλῶν ἀνδρειότατα ἔμειναν.

### Exercise 7.32

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The messenger spoke very wisely.
- 2 The sailors suffered more terribly than the soldiers.
- 3 This slave teaches in a very useful way.
- 4 The general very stupidly trusted the letter.
- 5 The gates are being more bravely guarded by us than by the allies.

Seven more adjectives:

1	ἄξιος -α -ον	worthy, deserving (of, + gen)
2	δίκαιος -α -ον	just, right
3	ιερός -ά -όν	holy, sacred
4	ἰσχυρός -ά -όν*	strong
5	πιστός -ή -όν†	trustworthy, faithful
6	πλούσιος -α -ον	rich, wealthy
7	ὕψηλός -ή -όν	high

\* Here it is not easy to tell whether the epsilon, and hence the last syllable of the stem, is long or short: in fact it is long, so the comparative and superlative are -οτερος, -οτατος (not -ωτερος, -ωτατος).

† Here, although the iota is short, the syllable is made long by the two following consonants, so the comparative and superlative are -οτερος, -οτατος. (We saw that the same is true of the alpha in μακρός.)

### Exercise 7.33

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ ξένος ἀξιώτερός ἐστι τῆς τιμῆς ἢ πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται.
- 2 ὁ τῶν συμμάχων ἄγγελος δίκαιος ὦν δικαίως λέγει.
- 3 πᾶσαι αἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ οὐκ ἄξια ἐπασχον.
- 4 αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ πιστοτάτη τῶν βίβλων.
- 5 οἱ παῖδες ὑπὸ τοῦ διδασκάλου δῆλως καὶ σοφῶς ἐδιδάσκοντο.
- 6 ἡ τῆς θεᾶς οἰκία ἱερωτάτη ἐστίν.
- 7 οἱ ἰσχυρότατα φυλασσόμενοι οὐδὲν ἤκουσαν.
- 8 ὁδε ὁ ἄγγελος πιστότερον εἶπεν ἢ ἐκεῖνος.
- 9 ὁ ἄρχων πλουσιώτερός ἐστι τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν.
- 10 αἱ τοῦ στρατοπέδου πύλαι ὑψηλόταταί εἰσιν.

### Exercise 7.34

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The faithful slave spoke very justly.
- 2 The giant is stronger than all the sailors.
- 3 The laws are worthy of honour.
- 4 The boy very foolishly ran away.
- 5 The village being guarded very bravely by the soldiers is wealthy.

## Relative clauses

Consider the following sentences:

- The slave who was running away fell into the river.
- Who are the strangers whom the soldiers are guarding?
- The girl whose book I have is not here.
- The old man for whom I provided dinner is very wise.

As we saw in Chapter 5, sentence (a) would naturally be translated with a participle for the *who ...* : ὁ δοῦλος ὁ φεύγων εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ἔπεσεν.

Sentence (b) could also be translated with a participle, but only by recasting in the passive:

Who are the strangers (who are) being guarded by the soldiers?

τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ ξένοι οἱ ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν φυλασσόμενοι;

Sentences (c) and (d) however cannot be translated with a participle. For them a *relative clause* must be used; for (a) and (b) a relative clause could be used as an alternative to the participle construction. A relative clause is introduced by the *relative pronoun* (equivalent to Latin *qui, quae, quod*). The form of this is very straightforward:

*relative pronoun:*

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	ὃς	ἥ	ὃ	who, which
	ὃν	ἥν	ὃ	
	οὗ	ἥς	οὗ	
	ὃ	ἥ	ὃ	
<i>pl</i>	οἱ	αἱ	ἅ	
	οὓς	ἄς	ἅ	
	ὧν	ῶν	ὧν	
	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς	

- This is essentially just the endings for a 2-1-2 adjective like σοφός (or the nouns λόγος, τιμή, δῶρον) with a rough breathing, except that (as usual for pronouns) the neuter nominative and accusative singular is -ο rather than -ον.
- The three bits underlined are spelled in the same way as the equivalent parts of the definite article, and the neuter nominative/accusative singular in the same way as a different part of the article, namely the masculine nominative singular. Ambiguity is avoided by context, and by the fact that the relative pronoun always has an accent (whilst corresponding parts of the article do not). Be careful too to distinguish the genitive plural ὧν (= *of whom, of which*) from ὧν (= *being*, the masculine nominative singular of the participle of εἰμί).
- A relative clause has a finite verb (i.e. a verb with a tense and a person ending). As in Latin, the relative pronoun agrees with the *antecedent* (the noun in the main clause it refers or *relates* to) in *number* and *gender*, but not necessarily in *case*. This is because the relative clause has its own grammar, equivalent to a separate sentence:  

	This is the slave whom I saw
<i>equates to</i>	This is the slave ( <i>nominative</i> )
<i>plus</i>	I saw him ( <i>accusative</i> )
<i>hence</i>	οὗτός ἐστιν ὁ δοῦλος ὃν εἶδον.

- Going back to our example sentences:

(a) The slave who was running away fell into the river.

This is straightforward because the slave is the subject both in the main clause and in the relative clause, hence:

ὁ δούλος ὃς ἔφευγεν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ἔπεσεν.

(b) Who are the strangers whom the soldiers are guarding?

This has the strangers as the subject in the main clause, but the object in the relative clause (the soldiers are guarding *them*), hence:

τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ ξένοι οὓς οἱ στρατιῶται φυλάσσουσιν;

(c) The girl whose book I have is not here.

This has the girl as the subject in the main clause, but in the genitive in the relative clause (I have *the girl's* book), hence:

ἡ κόρη ἥς τὴν βίβλον ἔχω οὐ πάρεστιν.

(d) The old man for whom I provided dinner is very wise.

This has the old man as subject in the main clause, but in the dative in the relative clause (I provided dinner *for him*), hence:

ὁ γέρων ᾧ δεῖπνον παρέσχον σοφώτατός ἐστιν.

- Although both the use of the relative pronoun and (for some bits) the form of it put it very close to the article + participle construction, it is important to understand how the grammar differs:

(a) οἱ δούλοι οἳ φεύγουσι μῶροι εἰσὶν. (*relative clause*)

(b) οἱ δούλοι οἱ φεύγοντες μῶροι εἰσὶν. (*article + participle*)

These seem very similar as translations of:

The slaves who are running away are stupid.

However the differences are more apparent if we translate by both methods the sentence:

We saw the slaves who were running away.

(i) εἶδομεν τοὺς δούλους οἳ ἔφευγον. (*relative clause*)

(ii) εἶδομεν τοὺς δούλους τοὺς φεύγοντας. (*article + participle*)

(i) Here the relative clause has followed the rule about agreement: number and gender the same as the antecedent δούλους (which is the object in the main clause), but with the relative pronoun in the nominative because it is the subject in its own clause, equivalent to *they*. The finite verb *were running away* is in the imperfect tense as the meaning requires.

(ii) Here the participle is still accusative, agreeing with its noun in number, gender and case: as usual with participles, it is behaving as an adjective (*the running-away slaves* is grammatically equivalent to e.g. *the foolish slaves*). And its tense is present because the tense of the participle is in relation to the tense of the main verb: it was present *at the time* when the main action (in the aorist) happened. (This explains why there is no imperfect participle: if a sentence seems to call for one, the *present* participle is required.)

- The relative pronoun *who, which* (ὃς ἢ ὃ) must of course be distinguished from the interrogative pronoun *who? which? what?* (τίς; τί; *gen* τίνος;).

- The use of *whom* in English for cases of *who* other than the nominative is one of the few surviving examples of inflection. But it is dropping out of use: in the sentence

The woman *whom I saw* is not here  
the relative clause would commonly be expressed by (the strictly ungrammatical)

The woman *who I saw* ...  
or The woman *that I saw* ...  
or just The woman *I saw* ... (leaving out the pronoun altogether)

• A relative clause (ὁ δοῦλος ὃς ἔφευγεν ἔπεσεν) is commonly equivalent to the *attributive* use of the participle (ὁ δοῦλος ὁ φεύγων ἔπεσεν = *The slave who was running away fell*, with repeated article, often implying e.g. *as opposed to others who were not running away*). But it can also replace the *circumstantial* use: ὁ δοῦλος φεύγων ἔπεσεν = *The slave, who was running away (at the time), fell* (equivalent to *when he was ...*); here only the commas in English make the distinction between the two slightly different uses of *who*.

• The version of the article + participle which has no noun (οἱ φεύγοντες = *the ones running away*) could in theory be expressed, using the relative construction, by e.g. οὗτοι οἱ φεύγουσιν. But the participle version (where the insertion of a demonstrative would be wrong) is much more common.

Ten more nouns

Seven like λόγος (all masculine):

1	αἰχμάλωτος	prisoner (of war)
2	βάρβαροι ( <i>pl</i> )	foreigners, non-Greeks, barbarians
3	ἐνοικος	inhabitant
4	ιατρός	doctor
5	σίτος	food
6	υἱός	son
7	χρυσός	gold

And three like τιμή (all feminine):

8	κεφαλή	head
9	σιγή	silence ( <i>dative</i> σιγῇ <i>used as adverb</i> silently, in silence)
10	ὕλη	wood, forest

Seven more verbs, all with first (weak) aorists:

		<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist stem</i>	
1	ἀναγκάζω	ἠνάγκασα	ἀναγκασ-	I force, I
2	διαφθείρω	διέφθειρα	διαφθειρ-	I destroy, I corrupt compel
3	καθίζω	ἐκάθισα*	καθισ-	I sit
4	κολάζω	ἐκόλασα	κολασ-	I punish
5	κρύπτω	ἔκρυψα	κρυψ-	I hide
6	πράσσω	ἔπραξα	πραξ-	I do, I fare (well/badly etc)
7	σώζω	ἔσωσα	σωσ-	I save

\* although this is strictly a *κατα-* compound (with the prefix elided), in practice this has been forgotten, so the augment comes before rather than after the prefix

Exercise 7.35

Translate into English:

- ὁ δοῦλος ἔκρυψε τὸν χρυσὸν ἐν τῇ ὕλῃ.
- οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι, βάρβαροι ὄντες, πάντες σιγῇ ἐκάθισον.
- ἄρα ὁ παῖς ὃν ἐκόλασαμεν υἱός ἐστι τοῦ ἱατροῦ;

- 4 ἡ τοῦ γίγαντος κεφαλὴ ὑψηλότερα ἦν ἢ ἐκεῖνο τὸ δένδρον.  
 5 ποῦ εὔρες τὸν λίθον ᾧ\* τὴν ἰσχυρὰν πύλην διέφθειρας;  
 6 ὁ σίτος ὃν ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐφάγετε κακὸς ἦν.  
 7 τοὺς ἐκεῖ κακῶς πράσσοντας τέλος ἐσώσαμεν.  
 8 οὗτός ἐστιν ὁ ἱατρὸς ὃς οἱ λόγοι ἀεὶ πιστοὶ εἰσιν.  
 9 ἀναγκάζομαι κολάζειν τὸν ταῦτα πράξαντα.  
 10 ἄρα ἡ νῆσος ἦν εἶδομεν ἔνοικους ἔχει;

\*note that the instrumental use of the dative is found not only with passive verbs

### Exercise 7.36

*Translate into Greek (using relative clauses):*

- 1 The prisoners who are in the prison are very miserable.  
 2 Did you (sg) see the doctor who sent the letter?  
 3 The slave whom you sent is very stupid.  
 4 The giant who eats men is not in the field now.  
 5 The stones which were being thrown by the boys were very big.

### Revision checkpoint

*Make sure you know:*

- comparison of adjectives, with rules about adding -οτερος, -οτατος or -ωτερος, -ωτατος
- comparison of adverbs
- relative pronoun
- relative clauses, with rules for agreement of relative pronoun with antecedent, and relation to article + participle construction

### Background: Protagoras

**Protagoras** (born about 485 BC) was the most famous of the Sophists. Born in Abdera (in the north of Greece) he came like many others to Athens, whose wealth, democratic government, and rich cultural life offered unrivalled scope. Protagoras professed to teach ἀρετή (*excellence*, but better translated in some contexts as *success* or *virtue*). He interpreted this as practical and material success in life, through the efficient management of public and private affairs. He appears as the opponent of Socrates in a famous dialogue by Plato named after him. Plato's dialogues, written like the text of a play, supposedly record conversations that often took place years earlier: they are literary works blending fact and fiction, the characters expressing views with which they were generally associated rather than their actual words on any one occasion.

**Protagoras** is especially associated with the sophistic doctrine of relativism, summed up by his slogan 'Man is the measure of all things'. According to this view, there is no absolute and universal truth, valid for all times and places: we must simply accept that something is true for an individual if he takes it to be so. The experience of travel and the observation of cultural diversity (some societies bury their dead, some burn them, some even eat them) made such an outlook seem compelling in this period. It was often accompanied, as in Protagoras' case, by an agnostic attitude towards the gods. Socrates had definite (if individual) religious views. He interpreted ἀρετή in a different, more strictly moral way, and did not think it was necessarily teachable. He (and even more strongly Plato, whose mouthpiece he is) believed in absolute values, seeing relativism as dangerous. Nonetheless Protagoras is treated with considerable respect for his personal and intellectual integrity.

## Protagoras comes to town

*Hippocrates has come to Socrates' house early in the morning to tell him Protagoras has arrived in Athens. Socrates makes a comparison with the young student's namesake Hippocrates of Cos, the most famous Greek doctor.*

- Ἴπποκράτης ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔτι καθεύδεις;  
 Σωκράτης ἄρα νέον τι ἀγγέλλεις, ὦ φίλε;  
 Ἴππ Πρωταγόρας ἐν Ἀθήναις πάρεστιν.  
 Σωκ τί σοι τοῦτο; ἄρα ὁ Πρωταγόρας ἐβλαψέ σε;  
 5 Ἴππ νῆ τοὺς θεοὺς, διότι ἐγὼ δὲ τῆς σοφίας αὐτοῦ οὐ μετέχω.  
 Σωκ ἀλλὰ εἰ τις πολλὰ χρήματα παρέχων πείθει αὐτόν, ὁ  
 Πρωταγόρας ἐθέλει διδάσκειν τε καὶ τῆς σοφίας μοῖραν παρέχειν.  
 Ἴππ παρέξω οὖν οὐ μόνον τὰ ἐμὰ χρήματα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ τῶν φίλων.  
 Σωκ ἀλλὰ διὰ τί ἐθέλεις μαθητὴς τοῦ Πρωταγόρου εἶναι; ὁ γὰρ ἄλλος  
 10 Ἴπποκράτης, ὃς τοῦ σοῦ ὀνόματος μετέχει, ἱατρὸς κλεινός ἐστιν  
 οἱ οὖν μαθηταὶ αὐτοῦ τὴν ἱατρικὴν μανθάνουσι. τὰ γὰρ  
 χρήματα παρέχουσιν αὐτῷ, καὶ δι' ὀλίγου οἱ μαθηταὶ αὐτοὶ  
 ἱατροὶ εἰσιν. ἀλλὰ τί περὶ τοῦ Πρωταγόρου λέξομεν; διὰ τί  
 ἐθέλεις αὐτῷ τὰ χρήματα παρέχειν;  
 15 Ἴππ σοφιστὴς ἐστιν.  
 Σωκ καὶ ἐθέλεις αὐτὸς σοφιστὴς εἶναι; (*Hippocrates is silent*) ἄρα οὖν  
 αἰσχροὺν ἐστὶ τοῦτο;  
 Ἴππ οὐκ ἐθέλω σοφιστὴς εἶναι.  
 Σωκ τί οὖν;  
 20 Ἴππ ἐθέλω τὴν σοφίαν μανθάνειν.  
 Σωκ ἀλλὰ περὶ τίνος; οἱ γὰρ τοῦ ἱατροῦ μαθηταὶ οἰοί τ' εἰσὶ περὶ τῆς  
 ἱατρικῆς σοφώτατα λέγειν. ἀλλὰ τί διδάσκει ὁ σοφιστὴς;  
 Ἴππ τοῦτο, ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐχ οἷός τ' εἰμὶ λέγειν.  
 Σωκ δῆλον οὖν ἐστὶν ὅτι εἰς κίνδυνον εἰσβαίνεις, οὐ γινώσκων τὰ  
 25 ὑπὸ τοῦ Πρωταγόρου διδάσκειν καὶ οὐχ οἷός τ' ὦν λέγειν  
 πότερον ἀγαθὸς ἐστὶν ὁ διδάσκαλος ἢ κακός.  
 Ἴππ ἀλλὰ τίς ταῦτα κρίνει;  
 Σωκ δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι ἤδη μαθητὴς τις εἰ ἄξιος τοῦ Πρωταγόρου.

	Ἴπποκράτης ὁ	Hippocrates
	καθεύδω	I sleep, I am asleep
	Πρωταγόρας -ου ὁ	Protagoras
	νῆ	yes, by ... ! (+ acc)
5	μετέχω	I share, I have a share of (+ gen)
	εἰ	if
	μοῖρα -ας ἢ	part, share
	οὐ μόνον ... ἀλλὰ καὶ	not only ... but also
	μαθητὴς -οῦ ὁ	student
10	κλεινός -ῆ -όν	famous
	ἱατρικὴ -ῆς ἢ	(the art of) medicine
	δι' ὀλίγου	soon
	σοφιστὴς -οῦ ὁ	Sophist



	αἰσχρὸς -ά -όν	shameful
	δῆλος -η -ον	clear
26	πότερον ... ἢ	whether ... or
	κρίνω	I judge
	ὅτι	that

## Irregular third declension nouns (1)

As we saw in Chapter 5, the endings for most third declension nouns can be worked out easily if you know the genitive stem. But a few common nouns have irregularities of various kinds:

(1) πατήρ (*father*), μήτηρ (*mother*) and θυγάτηρ (*daughter*) shorten the -ηρ of the nominative to -ερ- for the stem (compare the similar shortening in e.g. λιμήν, -ένος). But (no doubt reflecting pronunciation in practice) the epsilon of the stem is then dropped in the genitive and dative singular and the dative plural. Hence:

		father ( <i>m</i> )	mother ( <i>f</i> )	daughter ( <i>f</i> )
sg	nom	πατήρ*	μήτηρ*	θυγάτηρ*
	acc	πατέρα	μητέρα	θυγατέρα
	gen	πατρός	μητρός	θυγατρός
	dat	πατρί	μητρί	θυγατρί
pl	nom	πατέρες	μητέρες	θυγατέρες
	acc	πατέρας	μητέρας	θυγατέρας
	gen	πατέρων	μητέρων	θυγατέρων
	dat	πατράσι(ν)	μητράσι(ν)	θυγατράσι(ν)

\*vocatives πάτερ, μήτερ, θύγατερ (note the vowel shortening: compare γέρον)

(2) ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός (*man*) is mainly predictable but resembles the -ηρ words above in having vocative -ερ and dative plural -ασι (ἀνδρσι would be unpronounceable: here the dative plural is *expanded* to enable it to be pronounced, rather than telescoped like that of more typical third declension nouns). Also mainly predictable is γυνή, γυναικός (*woman*): the oddity is simply that the nominative singular looks like a first declension word of the τιμή type, and seems rather remote from the stem γυναικ- (for which a nominative such as γυναιξ might have been inferred).

		man ( <i>m</i> )	woman ( <i>f</i> )
sg	nom	ἀνὴρ*	γυνή*
	acc	ἄνδρα	γυναῖκα
	gen	ἀνδρός	γυναικός
	dat	ἀνδρί	γυναικί
pl	nom	ἄνδρες	γυναῖκες
	acc	ἄνδρας	γυναῖκας
	gen	ἀνδρῶν	γυναικῶν
	dat	ἀνδράσι(ν)	γυναιξί(ν)

\*vocatives ἄνερ, γύναι

ἀνὴρ is *man* = *male*, like Latin *vir*; ἀνθρωπος is *man* = *human being*, like Latin *homo*; ἀνὴρ is also used for *husband*, and similarly γυνή for *wife*

(3) Ζεῦς (Zeus, *m*) changes to a completely different stem (Δι-) after the nominative:

<i>nom</i>	Ζεῦς*
<i>acc</i>	Δία
<i>gen</i>	Διός
<i>dat</i>	Δί

\*vocative Ζεῦ

Zeus has of course no plural; for the change of stem, compare Latin *Juppiter*, genitive *Iovis*

## Root aorists

As well as the first (weak) and second (strong) aorists we have seen already (Chapter 4), there is a third type of aorist used for a handful of verbs: this is the *root aorist*, so called because person endings are just added to the *root* (basic stem) of the verb. Two important examples are βαίνω (root -βη-) and γιγνώσκω (root -γνώ-):

<i>sg</i>	1	ἔ-βη-ν	I went	(root aorist of βαίνω)
	2	ἔ-βη-ς	you ( <i>sg</i> ) went	
	3	ἔ-βη	he/she/it went	
<i>pl</i>	1	ἔ-βη-μεν	we went	
	2	ἔ-βη-τε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) went	
	3	ἔ-βη-σαν	they went	

*aorist participle* βάς, βάσα, βάν (βαντ-): i.e. 3-1-3 declensions, with stem βαντ- for masculine and neuter - this example is just like a first (weak) aorist participle such as παύσας

<i>sg</i>	1	ἔ-γνώ-ν	I got to know	(root aorist of γιγνώσκω)
	2	ἔ-γνώ-ς	you ( <i>sg</i> ) got to know	
	3	ἔ-γνώ	he/she/it got to know	
<i>pl</i>	1	ἔ-γνώ-μεν	we got to know	
	2	ἔ-γνώ-τε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) got to know	
	3	ἔ-γνώ-σαν	they got to know	

*aorist participle* γνούς, γνοῦσα, γνόν (γνοντ-): i.e. 3-1-3 declensions, with stem γνοντ- for masculine and neuter - this differs only in the masculine nominative singular from the endings of a normal present or second (strong) aorist active participle:

		<i>masculine</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	γνούς	having got to know
	<i>acc</i>	γνόντ-α	
	<i>gen</i>	γνόντ-ος	
	<i>dat</i>	γνόντ-ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	γνόντ-ες	
	<i>acc</i>	γνόντ-ας	
	<i>gen</i>	γνόντ-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	γνοῦσι(ν)*	

\*for γνοντσι(ν): notice yet again how the shortened dative plural resembles the nominative singular

• Note that βαίνω is far more commonly found in compounds than in its simple form: hence e.g. ἐκβαίνω = *I go out*, εἰσβαίνω = *I go in*.

### Exercise 7.38

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ τῆς παιδὸς πατὴρ πλουσιώτερός ἐστιν ἢ ὁ ἐμός.
- 2 οἱ δοῦλοι, ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατιώτου διωκόμενοι, πρὸς τοὺς ἀγροὺς προσέβησαν.
- 3 διὰ τὸν σκότον ἀναγκαζόμεθα παύειν τὴν μάχην.
- 4 ταύτῃ τῇ γυναικὶ δύο θυγατέρες εἰσίν.
- 5 οὐδεὶς τὸ τοῦ Διὸς ἱερὸν πιστότερον φυλάσσει ἢ ὁδε ὁ ἀνὴρ.
- 6 οὗτοι οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ὑπὸ τῶν παίδων λίθοις ἐτύποντο.
- 7 ἐκεῖνοι οἱ νεανῖαι, τὰς τε ὁδοὺς καὶ τὴν χώραν γνόντες, ἡμῖν χρησιμώτατοι ἦσαν.
- 8 οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι, τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν χαλεπώτατον διαβάντες, οὐκ ἀξιοὶ εἰσι κολάζεσθαι.
- 9 ἄρα ὁ σὸς ἀδελφός, ὃς ἀεὶ ἐπίστευες, ταῦτα τῇ μητρὶ εἶπεν;
- 10 ὁ ἱατρὸς τὸ τῆς νόσου ὄνομα ἔγνω.

### Exercise 7.39

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The inhabitants of the village are forced to run away.
- 2 We got to know those words.
- 3 Did you hide the gold in the field, boys?
- 4 The slave who was being chased by the soldier went into the temple.
- 5 The women\* to whom I reported these things were sitting in the marketplace.

\* note that as the antecedent of a relative pronoun, the noun *women* needs to be put in here (you cannot use just the feminine article, as in a participle construction or with a preposition phrase)

## Result clauses

He is so clever that he always learns everything.

The women guarded the village so bravely that the enemy ran away.

The danger was so great that we stayed in the camp.

• These sentences can usually be identified easily in English by a signpost word (*so* etc) in the first half, which is picked up by a word for *that* at the start of the second half which expresses the *result* or outcome. Because the clause expressing the result is then expected and follows on naturally, result clauses are also sometimes known as *consecutive* clauses.

• The normal word for *so* in the first half of the sentence is οὕτω (οὕτως before a vowel), usually followed by an adjective or adverb. The word for *that* at the start of the second half (the result clause proper) is ὥστε. Because Greek uses other words to translate uses of the English *that* in other contexts (e.g. ἐκεῖνος for *that one there*, ὅτι for *the fact that*), the occurrence of ὥστε is a cast-iron guarantee that you are dealing with a result clause.

• As in Latin, there are special words for *so great/so many/(of) such (a sort)*, which are used instead of οὕτω(ς) with an ordinary adjective:

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο	so great, so big; <i>pl</i> so many
τοιούτος, τοιαύτη, τοιούτο	such, of such a sort

As should be clear from the masculine, feminine, and neuter nominatives quoted here, these decline in the same way as οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο = *this*; but the words for *so great* and *such* have their distinctive prefix throughout: τοσ- indicating *size/quantity*, τοι- indicating *type/quality*.

- They correspond respectively to Latin *tantus* and *talis*. But whereas in Latin the plural of *tantus* means *such big (plural things)* and there is a separate word for *so many* (the indeclinable *tot*), in Greek the plural parts of τοσοῦτος normally mean *so many*.
- When result that actually occurs, the result clause has an ordinary indicative verb, in the same tense as the equivalent English. (We shall see later that there is an alternative construction for *potential* results: *He is foolish enough to do this*, using an infinitive as in English.)

The sentences given above would therefore be translated:

He is so clever that he always learns everything.  
οὕτω σοφός ἐστιν ὥστε ἀεὶ πάντα μανθάνει.

The women guarded the village so bravely that the enemy ran away.  
αἱ γυναῖκες οὕτως ἀνδρείως τὴν κώμην ἐφύλασσον ὥστε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔφυγον.

The danger was so great that we stayed in the camp.  
τοσοῦτος ἦν ὁ κίνδυνος ὥστε ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐμένομεν.

- Sometimes οὕτω(ς) is used as a signpost word on its own, without a following adjective or adverb. In this case οὕτω(ς) should be translated *in such a way*:

ὁ δοῦλος οὕτω λέγει ὥστε ὑπὸ πάντων θαυμάζεται.  
The slave speaks in such a way that he is admired by all.

οὕτω(ς) is the adverb formed from οὗτος (*literally* 'this-ly' or *thus* [the adverb from *this* in English], i.e. *so, in this way*). It is also used in many other contexts.

- Sometimes ὥστε starts a new sentence (or comes after a colon), when there is no signpost word in what has preceded. In this case ὥστε should be translated *as a result*:

σοφώτατός ἐστιν. ὥστε πάντες θαυμάζουσιν αὐτόν.  
He is very wise. As a result, everyone admires him.

The thought behind this is equivalent to: *He is so wise that everyone admires him.*

#### Exercise 7.40

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ γέρων οὕτω σοφός ἐστιν ὥστε πείθει τοὺς πολίτας.
- 2 οὗτος ὁ δοῦλος οὕτω μάρως πράσσει ὥστε ἀναγκάζομεθα κολάζειν αὐτόν.
- 3 ὁ τῆς παιδὸς πατήρ οὕτω πλούσιός ἐστιν ὥστε κάλλιστα δῶρα ἀεὶ παρέχει.
- 4 οὗτος ὁ ἵππος οὕτω καλός ἐστιν ὥστε τοῦ ἡμετέρου στρατηγοῦ ἀξιός ἐστιν.

- 5      ὁ σίτος τοιοῦτός ἐστιν ὥστε πάντες ἐθέλουσιν ἔχειν.  
 6      ἡ γυνή τὸν χρυσὸν οὕτω σοφῶς ἔκρυπεν ὥστε οὐδεὶς οἶός τ' ἦν  
          εὐρίσκειν αὐτόν.  
 7      τὴν βίβλον οὕτως ἔγραψα ὥστε πάντες οἱ παῖδες εὖ ἐμάνθανον.  
 8      ἐκείνοι οἱ ναῦται οὕτως ἀνδρεῖοί εἰσιν ὥστε ἐν πάσαις ταῖς  
          ναυμαχίαις τὴν νίκην ἔχουσιν.  
 9      ὁ ἱατρός οὕτω πιστὸς ἐστιν ὥστε πολλοὺς φίλους ἔχει.  
 10     ὁ δεσπότης νῦν ἄπεστιν. ὥστε οἱ δούλοι πάντα τὸν οἶνον πίνουσιν.  
          εὖ      well      δεσπότης -ου ὁ      master

#### Exercise 7.41

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1      These women are so wise that all the generals trust them.  
 2      The soldiers were so brave that they chased the enemy into the river.  
 3      The boy was so stupid that he learned nothing.  
 4      The enemy were so many that the citizens did not stay in the village.  
 5      Socrates always speaks very wisely. As a result, we admire him.

#### Revision checkpoint

*Make sure you know:*

- irregular third declension nouns πατήρ, μήτηρ, θυγάτηρ, ἀνὴρ, γυνή, Ζεὺς
- root aorists ἔβην, ἔγνων
- result clauses

#### Exercise 7.42

### Protagoras and his Teaching

*A young man and an old man discuss the famous Sophist.*

- |         |  |                      |
|---------|--|----------------------|
| Νεανίας | ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ τοῦ Πρωταγόρου δεινὰ ἀκούω.                        |                      |
| Γέρων   | τίνα ταῦτα;  |                      |
| Γε      | λέγει ὁ Πρωταγόρας ὅτι ἀνθρωπὸς ἐστιν μέτρον πάντων.           |                      |
| Νε      | δικαίως· οὐ γὰρ οἰοί τ' ἐσμὲν περὶ ὕδατος ἐν ἀγγεῖω λέγειν     |                      |
| 5       | πότερον θερμόν ἢ ψυχρόν ἐστι· τοῦτο ἕκαστος διακρίνει. εἴ τις  |                      |
|         | χειμῶνος εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν εἰσβαίνει καὶ τὴν χεῖρα εἰς τὸ ἀγγεῖον |                      |
|         | εἰσβάλλει, λέγει ὅτι τὸ ὕδωρ θερμόν ἐστιν. εἰ δέ τις ἐγγὺς τοῦ |                      |
|         | ὅτι  | that                 |
|         | μέτρον -ου τό  | measure              |
|         | ἀγγεῖον -ου τό   | bucket               |
|         | πότερον ... ἢ  | whether ... or       |
|         | θερμός -ῆ -όν  | warm, hot            |
| 5       | ψυχρός -ᾶ -όν  | cold                 |
|         | διακρίνω   | I determine, I judge |
|         | εἰ   | if                   |
|         | χειμῶν -ωνος ὁ   | winter               |
|         | χεῖρ χειρός ἡ  | hand                 |

- πυρὸς καθίζων τὰ αὐτὰ πράσσει, λέγει οὗτος ὅτι τὸ ὕδωρ  
 10 Γε ψυχρόν ἐστιν. καὶ ἀμφότεροι τὴν ἀλήθειαν λέγουσιν.  
 ταῦτα ἴσως καλὰ. οὐ μέντοι περὶ ὕδατος ἀλλὰ περὶ τοῦ τε  
 ἀγαθοῦ καὶ τοῦ κακοῦ λέγομεν.  
 Νε καὶ περὶ τούτων ἕκαστος διακρίνει.  
 Γε ἀλλὰ ταῦτα ἀνομίαν ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις παρέχει. καὶ περὶ τῶν  
 θεῶν τάδε τὰ δεινὰ λέγει ὁ Πρωταγόρας: "περὶ τῶν θεῶν οὐχ  
 15 οἷός τ' εἰμὶ γινώσκειν πότερόν εἰσιν ἢ μή, οὐδὲ ποιοί εἰσιν.  
 πολλὰ γὰρ κωλύει ἡμᾶς γινώσκειν· τὸ γὰρ πρᾶγμα χαλεπὸν  
 ἐστίν, καὶ ὁ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου βίος οὐ μακρός."  
 Νε καὶ περὶ τούτων τὴν ἀλήθειαν λέγει. ἡμεῖς μὲν τοὺς ἡμετέρους  
 θεοὺς ἔχομεν, οἱ δὲ ξένοι ἄλλους. καὶ οἱ μὲν τῶν ἀνθρώπων  
 20 τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτουσιν, οἱ δὲ καίουσιν ἢ ἐσθίουσιν.  
 Γε ἀλλὰ ταῦτα λέγοντες οἱ σοφισταὶ τὰ πάτρια διαφθείρουσιν. τοῖς  
 γὰρ νεανίαις οἱ ἄριστοι διδάσκαλοι οὐχ οἱ σοφισταὶ ἀλλὰ οἱ  
 ποιηταὶ εἰσιν.  
 Νε ἀλλὰ τί λέγουσιν οἱ ποιηταὶ περὶ τῶν θεῶν; οὐχ ὅτι ψεύδουσι  
 25 καὶ κλέπτουσι καὶ μοιχεύουσιν;  
 Γε οὐ πάντες οἱ ποιηταὶ ταῦτα λέγουσιν. οἱ γὰρ ποιηταὶ καὶ οἱ  
 πρόγονοι πολλὰ καὶ κάλλιστα παραδείγματα παρέχουσιν, ἀφ' ὧν\*  
 οἱ νεανῖαι οἱοί τ' εἰσὶ μανθάνειν. ταῦτα καὶ νῦν καὶ αἰεὶ λέξω.  
 Νε σὺ μὲν ταῦτα λέγεις, ἄλλοι ἄλλα. τοῦτο δὲ οὐπω γινώσκομεν,  
 30 τίς τὴν ἀλήθειαν λέγει.

	ἀμφότεροι -αι -α	both
	ἀλήθεια -ας ἢ	truth
	ἴσως	perhaps
	διακρίνω	I determine, I judge
13	ἀνομία -ας ἢ	lawlessness
	ἢ μή	or not
	οὐδέ	nor even
	ποῖος -α -ον	of what sort, what ... like
	πρᾶγμα -ατος τό	matter
20	καίω	I burn
	σοφιστής -ου ὁ	Sophist
	πάτρια -ων τά	ancestral customs, traditions
	ψεύδω	I tell lies
	μοιχεύω	I commit adultery
27	πρόγονος -ου ὁ	ancestor
	πaráδειγμα -ατος τό	example
	οὐπω	not yet

\* as noted in Chapter 5, if elision leaves pi before a rough breathing, it changes to phi, the aspiration spreading from vowel to preceding consonant (compare the use of οὐχ before a rough breathing)

## Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 7

αἰχμάλωτος -ου ὁ	prisoner (of war)
ἀναγκάζω ἠνάγκασα	I force, I compel
ἀνὴρ ἀνδρὸς ὁ	man, male, husband
ἄξιος -α -ον	worthy, deserving (of, + <i>gen</i> )
βάρβαροι -ων οἱ	foreigners, non-Greeks, barbarians
γυνή γυναικὸς ἡ	woman, wife
δακρύω ἐδάκρυσα	I cry, I weep
δεσπότης -ου ὁ	master
δῆ	indeed
διαφθείρω διέφθειρα	I destroy, I corrupt
δίκαιος -α -ον	just, right
εἰ	if
ἐκεῖνος -η -ο	that
ἐνοικος -ου ὁ	inhabitant
εὖ	well
εἶφη	he/she said
ἢ	or; than
θυγάτηρ -τρος ἡ	daughter
ἱατρός -οῦ ὁ	doctor
ἱερός -ά -όν	holy, sacred
ἰσχυρός -ά -όν	strong
καθίζω ἐκάθισα	I sit
καίω ἔκαυσα	I burn
κεφαλὴ -ῆς ἡ	head
κολάζω ἐκόλασα	I punish
κρύπτω ἔκρυψα	I hide
Λακεδαιμόνιοι -ων οἱ	Spartans
μᾶλλον	more, rather ( <i>adv</i> )
μήτηρ -τρός ἡ	mother
ὅδε ἦδε τόδε	this ( <i>implying</i> here, near me); the following
ὅς ἢ ὁ	who, which
οὗτος αὕτη τοῦτο	this
οὕτω(ς)	so, to such an extent, thus, in this way
πατήρ -τρός ὁ	father
πιστός -ή -όν	trustworthy, faithful
πλούσιος -α -ον	rich, wealthy
πράσσω ἔπραξα	I do, I fare (well/badly <i>etc</i> )
σιγή -ῆς ἡ	silence
σιγῇ	silently, in silence
σῖτος -ου ὁ	food
σῶζω ἔσωσα	I save
τοιούτος -αύτη -οὔτο	such, of such a kind
τοσοῦτος -αύτη -οὔτο	so great, so big
τοσοῦτοι -αὐταί -αὐτα	so many

υἱός -οῦ ὁ  
ὕλη -ης ἡ  
ὑπό  
ὑψηλός -ή -όν  
χείρ χειρός ἡ  
χρυσός -οῦ ὁ  
ὥστε

(50 words)

son  
wood, forest  
(+ *gen*) by (*agent with passive verb*)  
high  
hand  
gold  
(with the result) that



## Chapter 8

### Middle voice and deponent verbs

- In Chapter 7 we met the passive voice, and saw how active sentences are made passive:

The boy teaches the slave.

ὁ παῖς τὸν δούλον διδάσκει.

The slave is taught by the boy.

ὁ δούλος ὑπὸ τοῦ παιδὸς διδάσκεται.

- The *middle* voice is so called because it is midway between active and passive, though in practice it is easier to think of it as both active and passive at the same time. In the present and imperfect tenses, the middle and passive are identical in *form* but the context normally allows you to distinguish between them.

- The simplest and most common use of the middle is where a verb that would normally be active and transitive (i.e. have a direct object) is used *intransitively* (no object) or *reflexively* (object the same as subject). *I stopped the traffic* is transitive; *the traffic stopped* is intransitive. *I washed the floor* is transitive; *I washed before going to bed* is reflexive, implying *I washed myself*. These verbs would in Greek be middle. Hence:

The general stops the battle.                      *active*

ὁ στρατηγὸς τὴν μάχην παύει.

The battle stops (*or ceases*).                      *middle (intransitive)*

ἡ μάχη παύεται.

The girl hides the gold.                      *active*

ἡ παῖς τὸν χρυσὸν κρύπτει.

The girl hides in the forest.                      *middle (reflexive)*

ἡ παῖς ἐν τῇ ὄλῃ κρύπτεται.

- In the *reflexive* use of the middle, the sense of being simultaneously both active and passive is conveyed by the fact that the same person is both doing the action (active) and having it done to them (passive). In a sentence like this, Latin has to put in the reflexive pronoun in the accusative as the object: *puella in silva se celat* (literally *the girl hides herself in the forest*). The intransitive and reflexive uses shade into each other. With some verbs the insertion of a reflexive pronoun in English is natural (*he washes himself*), with others it is possible but less likely (*he hides himself*), and with an inanimate subject it is impossible (*the battle stops*, simply). But this does not matter, because in all these cases the verb would in Greek be middle.

- Another important use of the middle (less common, but illustrating particularly well its character as both active and passive) is where the subject (actively) gets something done (passively). Returning to our first examples on this page, consider now the sentence *The boy gets the slave taught*: here the boy (actively) *causes* the slave to *be taught* (passively, by someone else).

The boy gets the slave taught.

ὁ παῖς τὸν δούλον διδάσκεται.

The presence of a direct object (*the slave*, accusative) here shows that the verb is middle rather than passive.

• This is sometimes called the *causative* use of the middle, but words such as *cause* or *get* need not necessarily occur in the English. Consider the sentences:

Winston Churchill built garden walls.

and Cardinal Wolsey built Hampton Court.

The first tells us that the wartime prime minister literally engaged in bricklaying as a hobby, but the second hardly suggests the same about the Tudor prelate: it means he *had it built* (another possible translation), and in Greek the verb would be middle.

### Exercise 8.1

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἡ ναυμαχία αὐθις παύεται.
- 2 οἱ γέροντες τοὺς νεανίας ἐδιδάσκοντο.
- 3 ὁ ναύτης ἐν τῷ λιμένι κρύπτεται.
- 4 αἱ παῖδες τὰ χρήματα ἐν τῇ γῇ ἔκρυψαν.
- 5 ἡ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ νόσος οὐκ ἐπαύετο.

### Exercise 8.2

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The soldiers are hiding among the trees.
- 2 The boy hid the letter.
- 3 The terrible battle stops.
- 4 The judge was getting the boys taught.
- 5 The slave is being taught by the old man.

• Some verbs have a special meaning in the middle voice:

ἄρχω	I rule (+ <i>gen</i> )	ἄρχομαι	I begin
παύω	I stop (something)	παύομαι	I stop (myself), I cease
φαίνω	I show	φαίνομαι	I appear

ἄρχω and ἄρχομαι are linked by the idea *be first* (in either importance or order: similarly the related noun ἀρχή, met in this chapter, can mean *power/empire* or *beginning*); φαίνομαι is reflexive (I show myself).

• Note that παύομαι is often followed by a participle:

ὁ δούλος παύεται τρέχων.  
The slave stops running.

And φαίνομαι by an infinitive:

ὁ δούλος φαίνεται μῶρος εἶναι.  
The slave appears to be stupid.

• Some other examples (not strictly needed for GCSE) illustrate the same principles:

λύω	I release	λύομαι	I ransom
πείθω	I persuade	πείθομαι	I obey (+ <i>dat</i> )
φέρω	I carry	φέρομαι	I win (a prize)

λύομαι is causative - *I get someone released (by paying money)*; πείθομαι is reflexive - *I persuade myself (to do what someone else wants)*; φέρομαι is an extension of reflexive - *I carry off for myself*, illustrating yet another idea of the middle, of *doing something for your own advantage*. In the rest of this book, knowledge of πείθομαι will be assumed, but not of the other two.

Exercise 8.3 (numbers 6-10 include some of the non-GCSE special meanings discussed above)

*Translate into English:*

- 1 οὗτος ὁ παῖς φαίνεται μῶρος εἶναι.
- 2 ποῦ ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα ἧς ἄρχεις;
- 3 οἱ μὲν λόγοι παύονται, ὁ δὲ πόλεμος ἄρχεται.
- 4 ὁδε ὁ γέρον φαίνεται σοφώτατος εἶναι.
- 5 οἱ ἵπποι ὑπὸ τῶν νεανιῶν ἐλύοντο.
- 6 ὁ νεανίας τὸν δοῦλον λύεται.
- 7 ἄρ' ἐφύγετε τῷ ἄρχοντι πειθόμενοι, ὦ πολῖται;
- 8 ἐκείνη ἡ παῖς πολλὰ ἄθλα ἀεὶ φέρεται.
- 9 πάντες οἱ πολῖται τοῖς νόμοις πείθονται.
- 10 αἱ γυναῖκες οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν ἐκείνῳ τῷ ἀνδρὶ πείθεσθαι.

• Some verbs are only (or almost always) found in the middle form. These behave as if they were active. They roughly correspond to Latin deponent verbs. Eleven common middle or deponent verbs are:

- |    |             |   |
|----|-------------|---|
| 1  | αἰσθάνομαι  | I perceive, I notice                            |
| 2  | ἀποκρίνομαι | I answer, I reply                               |
| 3  | βούλομαι*   | I want, I wish                                  |
| 4  | γίγνομαι    | I become, I happen                              |
| 5  | δέχομαι     | I receive                                       |
| 6  | ἔπομαι      | I follow (+ <i>dat</i> )                        |
| 7  | ἔρχομαι†    | I come, I go                                    |
| 8  | μάχομαι     | I fight   |
| 9  | ὀργίζομαι   | I get angry (with, + <i>dat</i> )               |
| 10 | πορεύομαι   | I march, I travel                               |
| 11 | πυνθάνομαι  | I enquire; I ascertain, I find out (by enquiry) |

\* βούλομαι is stronger in than ἐθέλω, which often means only *be willing* rather than positively *want*

† ἔρχομαι is the present tense of the irregular verb whose irregular second (strong) aorist active ἦλθον we have already met

(In a few of these cases, an active form does exist but is less common: e.g. ὀργίζω = *I anger [someone]*. With some others an active form probably once existed, but has dropped out of use.)

• The present infinitive and participle (like the present and imperfect tenses) have exactly the same form in the middle and the passive voice: infinitive -εσθαι, participle -όμενος -η -ον.

• There is also a middle imperative:

- |           |        |        |
|-----------|--------|--------|
| <i>sg</i> | παύου  | cease! |
| <i>pl</i> | πάεσθε |        |

Exercise 8.4

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ γίγας τοὺς ἄνδρας αἰσθανόμενος ὀργίζεται.
- 2 ἄρα βούλεσθε ἀκούειν τοὺς τοῦ ποιητοῦ λόγους;
- 3 αἱ γυναῖκες τῷ στρατῷ ἔπονται.

- 4 οἱ πολέμιοι πρὸς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν νῦν πορεύονται.  
 5 ὁ γέρων αἰσθάνεται τὸν δοῦλον φεύγοντα.  
 6 θαυμάζομεν τοὺς σοφώτατα ἀποκρινόμενους.  
 7 ὁ διδάσκαλος τὰ γινόμενα ἀεὶ πυνθάνεται.  
 8 οἱ ἐν τῷ ἀγῶνι δραμόντες ἄθλα δέχονται.  
 9 οἱ στρατιῶται διὰ τῆς ὕλης ἐπορεύοντο.  
 10 μετὰ δέκα ὥρας ἡ μάχη παύεται.

#### Exercise 8.5

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The boy becomes\* a man.  
 2 The armies were fighting for ten hours.  
 3 All the soldiers want to march to the river.  
 4 That old man is now getting angry.  
 5 The allies are following our general.

\* *become* (like *be*) takes not a direct object but a *complement* (another nominative)

#### Exercise 8.6

### Plato's Parable of the Cave (1)

Plato believed that there are two levels of reality: the ordinary everyday world we experience with the senses, and an eternal world lying beyond. He saw Socrates as pointing people towards this, and he saw an answer to the relativism of the Sophists in the 'Theory of Forms': the idea that there is an ideal model of every object and quality (a perfect chair, perfect courage) in the eternal world. One of his most famous dialogues *The Republic* begins as a typical Socratic search for a definition, in this case of justice. In order to see the problem more clearly, Socrates proposes to talk about justice as it appears in a city-state before going on to justice as it appears in an individual. This provides the cue for Plato to describe his ideal society. During the course of the dialogue Socrates tells a parable to explain why the true nature of reality is not obvious to everyone. Plato also intends it as a comment on Socrates' own fate.

- ὁ Σωκράτης εἶπεν, "εἰ βούλη περὶ τοῦ ἡμετέρου βίου μανθάνειν, τόδε τὸ εἶδωλον παρέχω. οἱ ἄνθρωποι εἰσιν ὥσπερ ἐν ἄντρῳ τινὶ ὑπὸ τῇ γῇ καθίζοντες. καὶ ἐκεῖ ἐκ παίδων ἀναγκάζονται μένειν. τὰ τε ἄρθρα καὶ αἱ κεφαλὰὶ αὐτῶν ἐν δεσμοῖς ἔχονται. τὰς οὖν κεφαλὰς οὐχ οἰοί τ' εἰσὶ τρέπειν, γινώσκοντες οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τὰ πρὸ αὐτῶν. καὶ οὕτως ἀεὶ μένουσιν. ἔστι μέντοι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ, ὀπισθε τῶν ἐκεῖ καθιζόντων, πύρ

εἶδωλον -ου τό	image
ὥσπερ	as if, just like ( <i>here</i> people ...)
ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
ἐκ παίδων	from childhood
3 ἄρθρον -ου τό	limb
δεσμός -οῦ ὁ	chain
τρέπω	I turn
πρό	in front of (+ <i>gen</i> )
ὀπισθε	behind (+ <i>gen</i> )

μέγιστον, ὃ παρέχει φῶς αὐτοῖς. καὶ μεταξύ τοῦ πυρὸς καὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐστὶν ὁδός, καὶ παρὰ ταύτην τειχίον. ὀπισθε τοῦ τειχίου βαίνουνσιν τινες ἀνδριάντας φέροντες καὶ ζῶα λίθου καὶ ἄλλα παντοῖα. πάντα ταῦτα, τοῦ  
 10 τειχίου ὑπερέχοντα, σκιὰς βάλλει (οὕτως καὶ οἱ θαυματοποιοὶ πολλάκις πράσσουσιν). οἱ ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ καθίζοντες οὐδὲν ἄλλο γινώσκουσιν ἢ τὰς σκιὰς ἃς τὸ πῦρ βάλλει. ἰδόντες μέντοι τὰς σκιὰς, πιστεύουσιν αὐταῖς. τὸ γὰρ τῶν σκιῶν εἰδῶλον τοῖς ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ἐστὶν ὁ κόσμος."

	φῶς φωτός τό	light
	μεταξύ	between (+ <i>gen</i> )
	παρά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) alongside
	τειχίον -ου τό	wall
8	ὀπισθε	behind (+ <i>gen</i> )
	ἀνδριᾶς -άντος ὁ	statue (of a person)
	παντοῖος -α -ον	of all kinds
	ὑπερέχω	I project above (+ <i>gen</i> )
	σκιά -ας ἡ	shadow
10	θαυματοποιός -οῦ ὁ	puppeteer (using shadows behind translucent screen)
	ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
	εἰδῶλον -ου τό	image
	κόσμος -ου ὁ	world, universe

#### Exercise 8.7

### Plato's Parable of the Cave (2)

ὁ μὲν οὖν Σωκράτης ταῦτα περὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ εἶπεν. ὁ δὲ Γλαύκων πάντα ἀκούσας, "δεινόν ἐστι τὸ εἰδῶλον, καὶ δεινοὶ οἱ ἀνθρώποι περὶ ὧν λέγεις." "εἰσὶν ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς," εἶπεν ὁ Σωκράτης, "τί γὰρ ἄλλο γινώσκουσιν ἢ τὰς σκιὰς ἃς τὸ πῦρ βάλλει;" "οὐδὲν ἄλλο γινώσκειν  
 5 οἱοί τ' εἰσιν, ἐπεὶ ἀναγκάζονται τὰ τ' ἄρθρα καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς αἰεὶ ἐν δεσμοῖς ἔχειν."

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης εἶπεν, "οὗτοι νῦν πρὸς σκιὰς βλέπουσιν καὶ οὐδὲν ἄλλο. ὑπολαμβάναν δὲ τόδε· λύεται τις τῶν ἐκεῖ καθιζόντων ἀπὸ τῶν δεσμῶν, καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν τρέψας προσβαίνει πρὸς τὸ πῦρ· τί οὖν πράξει; καίπερ  
 10 πρῶτον τυφλὸς ὢν διὰ τὸ τοῦ πυρὸς φῶς, μετὰ ὀλίγον χρόνον τὴν περὶ τοῦ πυρὸς καὶ τῶν σκιῶν ἀλήθειαν εὕρήσει. καὶ πάντα ταῦτα αὐτῷ νῦν

	ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
	Γλαύκων -ωνος ὁ	Glaucon (friend taking part in dialogue with Socrates)
	εἰδῶλον -ου τό	image
	ὥσπερ	just as, just like
4	σκιά -ας ἡ	shadow
	ἄρθρον -ου τό	limb
	δεσμός -οῦ ὁ	chain
	βλέπω	I look (at, + <i>πρός</i> + <i>acc</i> )
	ὑπολαμβάνω	I imagine
9	τρέπω ἔτρωπα	I turn
	τυφλός -ῆ -όν	blind
	φῶς φωτός τό	light
	ἀλήθεια -ας ἡ	truth

μῶρα ἐστίν. καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου ἐξελθὼν, πρῶτον μὲν αὐθις τυφλὸς ὢν  
 διὰ τὸ τοῦ ἡλίου φῶς, ἔπειτα δὲ βλέπει πρὸς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ τὰ τῆς  
 γῆς καὶ τὰ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ. καὶ τέλος, τὴν ἀληθινὴν οἰκίαν γνοὺς καὶ εἰς  
 15 τὸ ἄντρον αὐθις εἰσελθὼν, λέξει τοῖς ἄλλοις περὶ τοῦ κόσμου καὶ περὶ  
 τοῦ ἀληθινοῦ φωτός. καὶ ἐθέλησει τοὺς δεσμοὺς αὐτῶν λύειν, καὶ  
 κελεύσει πάντας ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου εἰς τὸν κόσμον φεύγειν· οἱ δὲ οὐδαμῶς  
 τοῦτο πράξουσιν. μᾶλλον γὰρ ἐθέλουσι πρὸς σκιάς βλέπειν· καὶ πάντα τὰ  
 λεγόμενα αὐτοῖς μῶρα ἐστίν. ὥστε τέλος τὸν ἄγγελον διώξουσιν ὡς ἄξιον  
 20 ὄντα θανάτῳ κολάζεσθαι."

	ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
	τυφλός -ή -όν	blind
	ἥλιος -ου ὁ	sun
	βλέπω	I look (at, + πρὸς + acc)
14	ἀληθινός -η -ον	true
	κόσμος -ου ὁ	world
	ἐθέλῃσω	(future of ἐθέλω)
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
	μᾶλλον	more, rather

## Aorist middle

- In the aorist (unlike the present and imperfect) there are separate forms for the middle, as distinct from the passive.
- Within the aorist middle (as with the aorist active) there are separate forms for first (weak) and second (strong) aorist, but the amount of new material to be learned is very limited, and the tenses are formed by the usual building-block method.
- The first (weak) aorist middle (corresponding to the active **ἔπαυσα**) is predictably formed from:
  - augment
  - aorist stem (normally = present stem + sigma)
  - endings that mostly include alpha (like the corresponding active), and are variants of the usual historic middle/passive ones (-αμην etc rather than -ομην etc). Hence:

*first (weak) aorist middle:*

<i>sg</i>	1	ἐπαυσ-άμην	I ceased (stopped myself)
	2	ἐπαύσ-ω*	you ( <i>sg</i> ) ceased
	3	ἐπαύσ-ατο	he/she/it ceased
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐπαυσ-άμεθα	we ceased
	2	ἐπαύσ-ασθε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) ceased
	3	ἐπαύσ-αντο	they ceased

\* because -ω represents an earlier form -ασο (the sigma has dropped out, and the two vowels have combined), this ending too includes alpha, but in concealed form. This -ω ending must of course be carefully distinguished from the first person singular ending of some active tenses. (The -ου of the equivalent part of the imperfect middle/passive likewise represents an earlier form -εσο.)

*participle* παυσάμενος -η -ον      having ceased

Note that the middle παύομαι is often followed by a participle:

ἐπαύσαντο τρέχοντες they stopped running

Or by a genitive (*cease from* - remember that *from* is a normal meaning of the genitive):

ἐπαύσαντο τῆς μάχης they ceased from battle (*i.e.* stopped fighting)

• The second (strong) aorist middle (corresponding to the active ἔλαβον) is even more straightforward, and is predictably formed from:

- augment
- (second [strong]) aorist stem
- historic middle/passive endings. Hence:

*second (strong) aorist middle:*

<i>sg</i>	1	ἐλαβ-όμην	I took for myself*
	2	ἐλάβ-ου	you ( <i>sg</i> ) took for yourself
	3	ἐλάβ-ετο	he/she/it took for himself/herself/itself
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐλαβ-όμεθα	we took for ourselves
	2	ἐλάβ-εσθε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) took for yourselves
	3	ἐλάβ-οντο	they took for themselves

\* another meaning of the middle of λαμβάνω is *take hold of, grasp*, followed by the genitive

*participle* λαβόμενος -η -ον having taken for oneself

• Each type of aorist middle has the same stem as the equivalent aorist active: hence e.g.

<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>
ἐπεμψα	ἐπεμψάμην
ἐμαθον	ἐμαθόμην

• Just as, in the active, the second (strong) aorist ἔλαβον needs to be distinguished carefully from the imperfect ἐλάμβανον (the two tenses having the same endings but different stems), so too the aorist ἐλάβόμην needs to be distinguished from the imperfect ἐλαμβανόμην. But whereas ἐλαμβανόμην can be middle or passive, ἐλάβόμην is used only for the middle.

• Many of the middle verbs (*i.e.* deponents, and those with a special sense in the middle) form their aorists in an entirely predictable way. The following have first (weak) aorists that make the same slight adjustment to the stem (to accommodate the added sigma) as we have seen with the future and the aorist active:

<i>present</i>	<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist stem</i>	
ἄρχομαι	ἤρξάμην	ἄρξ-	I began
δέχομαι	έδεξάμην	δεξ-	I received

A few deponent verbs have a first (weak) aorist with slight irregularity:

ἀποκρίνομαι	ἀπεκρινάμην	ἀποκριν-	I answered, I replied
μάχομαι	έμαχεσάμην	μαχεσ-	I fought

• Other deponent verbs have a second (strong) aorist, with (as usual) telescoping or alteration of the stem:

αἰσθάνομαι	ἤσθόμην	αἰσθ-	I perceived
γίγνομαι	έγενόμην	γεν-	I became, I happened
έπομαι	έσπόμην	έσπ-	I followed
πυνθάνομαι	έπυθόμην	πυθ-	I enquired; I found out

• Note a peculiarity in the formation of πείθομαι (*I obey*). The active πείθω has a first (weak) aorist ἔπεισα, but the middle has a second (strong) aorist ἐπιθόμην.

### Exercise 8.8

Translate into Greek:

- 1 They perceived.
- 2 You (sg) received.
- 3 We became.
- 4 You (pl) found out.
- 5 He fought.

### Exercise 8.9

Translate into English:

- 1 ἐδεξάμεθα ἐκείνον τὸν αἰχμάλωτον ὡς φίλον γενόμενον.
- 2 ἡ ναυμαχία καίπερ μακρὰ οὐσα τέλος ἐπαύσατο.
- 3 ἡ ἐν τῷ λιμένι μάχη τότε ἤρξατο.
- 4 ὁ παῖς ὁ εὖ δραμῶν ἐδέξατο τὸ ἄθλον.
- 5 διὰ τί οὐκ ἀπεκρίνασθε, ὦ ἄνδρες;
- 6 ὁ περὶ τοῦ πολέμου πυθόμενος σοφός ἐστιν.
- 7 δέκα ὥρας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐμαχεσάμεθα.
- 8 τίς εἶδε τὴν τὸν χρυσὸν δεξαμένην;
- 9 οἱ τοῦ γέροντος δοῦλοι ἐλάβοντο τοῦ σίτου.
- 10 πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται τῷ στρατηγῷ τῷ ἀνδρεῖῳ ἐπίθοντο.

### Exercise 8.10

Translate into Greek:

- 1 After three days the battle ceased.
- 2 The girls finally received the money.
- 3 The disease began here.
- 4 The soldiers fought bravely on the island.
- 5 None of the prisoners of war replied.

### Exercise 8.11

## The Magic Ring

Would people be just if they could be unjust and sure of getting away with it? While exploring this question in Plato's Republic, Socrates' companion Glaucon (Plato's brother) tells the following story, to illustrate his view that justice is simply a matter of self-interest and convenience.

ἦν δε ποτε ποιμήν τις Γύγης ὀνόματι, δοῦλος ὢν· ὁ δὲ δεσπότης αὐτοῦ βασιλεὺς τῆς Λυδίας ἦν. καὶ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ χώρᾳ σεισμὸς ἦν. διὰ ταῦτα χάσμα ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς τοῦ ἀγροῦ ἐν ᾧ ὁ Γύγης τὰ πρόβατα

ποτε	once
ποιμήν -ένος ὁ	shepherd
Γύγης -ου ὁ	Gyges
βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
2 Λυδία -ας ἡ	Lydia
σεισμὸς -οῦ ὁ	earthquake
χάσμα -ατος τό	chasm, gaping hole
πρόβατα -ων τά	sheep



- ἐφύλασσαν. θαυμάσας δὲ ὁ ποιμὴν εἰς τὸ χάσμα κατέβη, καὶ ἐκεῖ εἶδεν  
 5 ἵππον ξύλινον κοῖλον, ἐν ᾧ ἦν νεκρὸς μέγιστος. οὗτος δὲ γυμνὸς ἦν, οὔτε  
 ἱμάτιον ἔχων οὔτ' ἄλλο οὐδὲν πλὴν δακτυλίου. ὁ δὲ ποιμὴν λαβὼν τὸν  
 δακτύλιον ἐξήλθεν αὐθις ἐκ τοῦ χάσματος, καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἔργον ἐτρέπετο.  
 καὶ οὐ διὰ πολλοῦ πρὸς τοὺς φίλους ἐλθὼν, ἠύρεν αὐτοὺς περὶ ἑαυτοῦ  
 10 διαλεγομένους· οὐ γὰρ εἶδον αὐτόν, διὰ τὸν θαυμάσιον δακτύλιον. ὁ δὲ  
 Γύγης, "διὰ τί," ἔφη, "διαλέγεσθε περὶ ἐμοῦ, ὥσπερ ἀπόντος; πάρειμι γὰρ  
 αὐτός, καὶ πολλὰ καὶ θαυμάσια ὑμῖν λέξω." οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι θαυμάσαντες  
 εἶπον, "ποῦ εἶ; τὴν γὰρ φωνὴν ἀκούομεν, ἰδεῖν δ' οὐχ οἶοί τ' ἐσμέν". ὁ δὲ  
 ποιμὴν (συνετὸς γὰρ ἦν) οὐδὲν ἀπεκρίνατο, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ ἀπῆλθεν· ὥστε οἱ  
 ἄλλοι, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν ἔτι ἤκουον, εἶπον, "οὐδεὶς πάρεστιν· ἀπάτη οὖν ἦν". ὁ  
 15 δὲ Γύγης, τσαύτην τέχνην εὐρών (ἀφανῆς γὰρ ἐγένετο τὸν δακτύλιον  
 περὶ τοῦ δακτύλου ἔχων), εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν τὴν πολίτου τινὸς πλουσίου  
 λάθρᾳ εἰσῆλθεν. χρυσὸν οὖν καὶ πολλὰ ἄλλα ἔκλεψεν. οὐδεὶς γὰρ  
 ἐκώλυσεν. καὶ τοιαῦτα πολλάκις ἔπρασεν, ὥστε πλουσιώτατος ἐγένετο.  
 τέλος δ' εἰς τὰ βασίλεια εἰσῆλθεν. οὔτε γὰρ οἱ φύλακες εἶδον αὐτόν οὔτε  
 20 ὁ βασιλεὺς. τοῦτον οὖν ἀποκτείνας καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα αὐτοῦ ὑβρίσας τὴν  
 ἀρχὴν αὐτὸς ἔλαβεν. οὕτως οὖν πάντων ἀνθρώπων κάκιστος ἐγένετο. τί  
 οὖν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ μύθου μανθάνομεν; ἄρ' οὐχ ὁ δίκαιος,  
 περὶ οὗ ἂν εἴ τις λέγει, τοῦτον τὸν δακτύλιον ἔχων τοιαῦτα πράξει καὶ  
 αὐτός;

	ξύλινος -η -ον	made of wood
	κοῖλος -η -ον	hollow
	γυμνός -ή -όν	naked
	ἱμάτιον -ου τό	cloak
6	πλὴν	except (+ gen)
	δακτύλιος -ου ὁ	ring
	τρέπομαι	I turn my attention to
	οὐ διὰ πολλοῦ	not long afterwards
	ἑαυτοῦ	himself (gen)
9	διαλέγομαι	I have a conversation
	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	miraculous
	ἐταῖρος -ου ὁ	comrade, companion
	ἰδεῖν	(irreg inf) to see
	συνετός -ή -όν	clever
14	ἀπάτη -ης ἡ	trick, illusion
	τέχνη -ης ἡ	skill
	ἀφανής	invisible
	δάκτυλος -ου ὁ	finger
	λάθρᾳ	secretly
19	βασίλεια -ων τά	palace
	οὔτε ... οὔτε	neither ... nor
	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
	ὑβρίζω ὕβρισα	(here) I rape
	ἀρχή -ῆς ἡ	power, throne
21	κάκιστος -η -ον	(irreg superlative) worst
	ἄρ' (= ἄρα) οὐ ... ;	surely?

## Aorist passive

- As we saw, in the aorist there are separate forms for middle and for passive.
- The distinction between first (weak) and second (strong) aorist - which is so important in the active and middle - does not really apply to the passive: all aorist passives have the same endings.
- The aorist passive normally has a stem ending in theta: this theta is the mark of a distinctively passive tense. Some verbs with a first (weak) aorist insert a sigma before the theta: hence the aorist passive stem of *παύω* is *παυσθ-*.
- In one important respect the aorist passive is unusual. Although its meaning is passive, its form resembles that of an active tense: its endings are identical to those of the root aorist active *ἔβην* (see page 28). Hence:

### *aorist passive:*

<i>sg</i>	1	ἐπαύσθ-ην	I was stopped
	2	ἐπαύσθ-ης	you ( <i>sg</i> ) were stopped
	3	ἐπαύσθ-η	he/she/it was stopped
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐπαύσθ-ημεν	we were stopped
	2	ἐπαύσθ-ητε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) were stopped
	3	ἐπαύσθ-ησαν	they were stopped

- However many verbs do not insert the sigma before the theta: so for example the aorist passive of *λύω* is *ἐλύθην*. But this is not a major problem: as always, common examples quickly become familiar (and with some verbs - including *παύω* itself - Greek authors vary in whether or not they put in the sigma). Details can easily be checked in the full list of verbs in the Reference Grammar (pages 218-20), as can the irregular aorist passive stems of some verbs, especially those with a second (strong) aorist active - note here:

		<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist passive</i>
ἄγω	I lead	ἤγαγον	ἤχθην
λαμβάνω	I take	ἔλαβον	ἐλήφθην
λέγω	I say, I speak	εἶπον	ἐρρήθην
φέρω	I carry	ἤνεγκα	ἠνέχθην

### Exercise 8.12

#### *Translate into Greek:*

- 1 I was saved.
- 2 It was thrown.
- 3 We were seized.
- 4 You (*sg*) were left.
- 5 They were persuaded.

- The resemblance (in form, not meaning) of the aorist passive to an active tense applies also to its participle. Other middle and passive participles are 2-1-2 in declension (e.g. *παυόμενος -η -ον*). But the aorist passive participle is 3-1-3, like an active participle (e.g. *παύων -ουσα -ον*, with masculine/neuter stem *παυοντ-*). Hence:

*aorist passive participle:* (basic aorist passive stem *παυσθ-* ; masculine/neuter genitive stem of participle *παυσθεντ-*)

having been stopped		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παυσθεῖς	παυσθεισ-α	παυσθέν
	<i>acc</i>	παυσθέντ-α	παυσθεισ-αν	παυσθέν
	<i>gen</i>	παυσθέντ-ος	παυσθεισ-ης	παυσθέντ-ος
	<i>dat</i>	παυσθέντ-ι	παυσθεισ-η	παυσθέντ-ι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παυσθέντ-ες	παυσθεισ-αι	παυσθέντ-α
	<i>acc</i>	παυσθέντ-ας	παυσθεισ-ας	παυσθέντ-α
	<i>gen</i>	παυσθέντ-ων	παυσθεισ-ων	παυσθέντ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	παυσθεισι(ν)	παυσθεισ-αις	παυσθεισι(ν)

• There is very little new learning here, if you compare this to an active participle such as *παύων* or *παύσας*. Given the nominative singulars and genitive stem, it is easy to work out the other bits. The masculine is normal third declension, with usual adjustment to the dative plural (here for *παυσθεντι*). The feminine is first declension, adding - compare present active *παύουσα*, first (weak) aorist active *παύασα* - a syllable ending in sigma (here -εισ-)\*, then endings like *θάλασσα*. The neuter is a predictable neuter variant of the masculine, with nominative/accusative singular a shortened form of the stem: compare present active *παύον*, first (weak) aorist active *παύσαν*.

(\* The dative plural of the masculine provides a clue to the extra syllable in the feminine: hence *παύουσι(ν)* gives *παύουσα*, *παύασασι(ν)* gives *παύασα*, and *παυσθεισι(ν)* gives *παυσθεισα*.)

• Whatever form the stem for the tense has (extra sigma or not, or other irregularities), the participle follows suit. Hence from *ἐλύθην* the participle is *λυθείς -εῖσα -έν* (basic aorist passive stem *λυθ-*; masculine/neuter genitive stem of participle *λυθεντ-*), and from *ἐλήφθην* the participle is *ληφθείς -εῖσα -έν* (basic aorist stem *ληφθ-*; masculine/neuter genitive stem of participle *ληφθεντ-*).

• A few verbs do not have the theta on the aorist passive stem, but the tense and participle endings are added as usual:

		<i>aorist passive</i>	<i>aor pass stem</i>	<i>participle</i>
θάπτω	I bury	ἐτάφην	ταφ-	ταφείς -εῖσα -έν (ταφεντ-)
κλέπτω	I steal	ἐκλάπην	κλαπ-	κλαπείς -εῖσα -έν (κλαπεντ-)

And a similar one you have not met before:

κόπτω	I cut (down)	ἐκόπην	κοπ-	κοπείς -εῖσα -έν (κοπεντ-)
-------	--------------	--------	------	----------------------------

### Exercise 8.13

*Give the Greek for:*

- 1 Having been hindered (*m nom pl*)
- 2 Having been heard (*f acc sg*)
- 3 Having been announced (*n nom pl*)
- 4 Having been forced (*m acc sg*)
- 5 Having been saved (*f nom pl*)

### Exercise 8.14

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἡ ἐκκλησία τῇ νυκτὶ ἐπαύσθη.
- 2 ὁ ἵππος, ὑπὸ τῆς παιδὸς λυθείς, ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ἐξέδραμεν.

- 3 ὁ χρυσὸς ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ἐλήφθη.  
 4 ὁ στρατός, τῷ ποταμῷ κωλυθεὶς, ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἔμενε.  
 5 ὁ ἄγγελος ὁ πρὸς τὴν κώμην πεμφθεὶς νῦν πάρεστιν.  
 6 τίνες εἰσιν οἱ νεκροὶ οἱ ἐνθάδε ταφέντες;  
 7 πάντα τὰ δένδρα ὑπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλῶτων ἐκόπη.  
 8 πᾶσαι αἱ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ληφθεῖσαι μετὰ δύο ἡμέρας ἐλύθησαν.  
 9 αἱ ἐπιστολαὶ οὕτω σοφῶς ἐκρύφθησαν ὥστε οὐδεὶς ἤδρεν.  
 10 οἱ ὑπὸ τοῦ γίγαντος διωχθέντες ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου ἔφυγον.

#### Exercise 8.15

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The battle was stopped by the allies' general.  
 2 The lion, when it had been released by the slave, ran towards the village.  
 3 Those soldiers were not hindered by the sea.  
 4 The boy who had been released was sent to the doctor's house.  
 5 All the women who had been chased out of their houses fled into the marketplace.

#### Future middle and passive

• In the present tense, the active παύω has the corresponding form παύομαι, which can be either middle or passive (decided by context). In the future tense, the active παύσω likewise has a corresponding form παύσομαι, but this is used *for the middle only*.

*future middle:*

<i>sg</i>	1	παύσ-ομαι	I shall cease (stop myself)
	2	παύσ-η	you ( <i>sg</i> ) will cease
	3	παύσ-εται	he/she/it will cease
<i>pl</i>	1	παύσ-όμεθα	we shall cease
	2	παύσ-εσθε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) will cease
	3	παύσ-ονται	they will cease

*participle:* παυσόμενος -η -ον      about to cease

• The future passive is formed from the the aorist passive stem (which as we saw normally ends in theta, with or without preceding sigma). It then adds -ησ- (introducing a further sigma) before the normal middle/passive primary endings:

*future passive:*

<i>sg</i>	1	παυσθήσ-ομαι	I shall be stopped
	2	παυσθήσ-η	you ( <i>sg</i> ) will be stopped
	3	παυσθήσ-εται	he/she/it will be stopped
<i>pl</i>	1	παυσθησ-όμεθα	we shall be stopped
	2	παυσθήσ-εσθε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) will be stopped
	3	παυσθήσ-ονται	they will be stopped

*participle:* παυσθησόμενος -η -ον      about to be stopped

• Correspondingly for a verb which does not insert sigma before theta, the future passive λυθήσομαι is formed from the aorist passive ἐλύθην; and for an irregular verb the future passive ληφθήσομαι is formed from the aorist passive ἐλήφθην. (Again, forms such as this can easily be looked up in the Reference Grammar: the commoner ones will quickly become familiar.)

• These tenses are formed by the familiar building-block method. With the vast majority of verbs the theta is there as a marker of the distinctively passive forms of the aorist and future. Sometimes slight adjustment to the stem is needed to accommodate the theta: so for example the future passive of διώκω is διωχθήσομαι (the aspiration spreads from the theta to convert kappa into chi: this is standard when a consonant which has an aspirated equivalent available comes before another already aspirated).

• Deponent verbs (and verbs with a special meaning in the middle) usually have as their future the middle form. This is normally easy to work out (either completely regular, or with the slight adjustment to the stem - to accommodate the added sigma - which is already familiar from the future and first aorist active). Hence:

<i>present</i>	<i>future</i>	
ἄρχομαι	ἄρξομαι	I shall begin
δέχομαι	δέξομαι	I shall receive
ἔπομαι	ἐψομαι	I shall follow
πορεύομαι	πορεύσομαι	I shall march

A few verbs, whilst still adding the usual future middle endings, make greater changes to the stem:

αἰσθάνομαι	αἰσθήσομαι	I shall perceive
γίγνομαι	γενήσομαι	I shall become, I shall happen
πυνθάνομαι	πεύσομαι	I shall enquire

#### Exercise 8.16

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 You (sg) will begin.
- 2 We shall be hindered.
- 3 He will perceive.
- 4 They will be chased.
- 5 You (pl) will follow.

#### Exercise 8.17

*Translate into English:*

- 1 τί νῦν γενήσεται, ὦ στρατηγέ;
- 2 οἱ ἄρχοντες οὐ δέχονται ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα.
- 3 οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες τῷ ποταμῷ οὐ κωλυθήσονται.
- 4 ποῦ εἰσιν οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ ἡμῖν ἐψόμενοι;
- 5 τίνες εἰσιν οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι οἱ νῦν λυθησόμενοι;

#### Exercise 8.18

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 When will the war cease?
- 2 This horse will not be released.
- 3 The soldiers will march towards the sea.
- 4 The men who are running away will be stopped by the giant.
- 5 Those women will receive prizes.

## Revision checkpoint

Make sure you know:

- the middle voice (with the various jobs it does) and deponent verbs
- the distinction between the tenses where the middle and passive forms are the same (present and imperfect), and those where there are separate forms for each (future and aorist)
- the two types of aorist middle: first (weak) and second (strong)
- aorist passive (theta as marker, quite often preceded by sigma; resemblance in form to an active tense)
- future middle and passive
- the building-block method by which the tenses are constructed

### Exercise 8.19

## Antigone

*The theme of unwritten or natural laws (rules and obligations above and beyond the laws of any particular society) is central to Antigone, a famous tragic drama by Sophocles. The story forms part of a cycle of myths about the royal family of Thebes (a city in central Greece) in the distant past. Oedipus, son of the royal house, was abandoned in infancy because of a dreadful prophecy from the gods, but survived and unknowingly killed his own father Laius and married his own mother Jocasta. Problems continued in the next generation, with Oedipus' children (also of course his half-brothers and half-sisters). His daughter Antigone defies the law of the state because of the obligation to her brother Polyneices dictated by the unwritten laws of the gods.*

- μετὰ δὲ τὸν τοῦ Οἰδίποδος θάνατον, οἱ υἱοὶ δύο ὄντες, ὁ μὲν Ἑτεοκλῆς  
ὁ δὲ Πολυνείκης ὀνόματι, πρῶτον μὲν τῆς ἀρχῆς μετέσχον ἐν ταῖς  
Θήβαις. ἔπειτα δὲ ἦν ἀγὼν δεινός. ὁ μὲν γὰρ Ἑτεοκλῆς οὐκέτι ἐθέλων τῆς  
ἀρχῆς μετέχειν ἐξήλασε τὸν ἀδελφόν. ὁ δ' οὖν Πολυνείκης συμμάχους  
5 ἦῤυρε τοὺς Ἀργεῖους, καὶ στρατὸν πρὸς τὰς Θήβας ἤγαγεν. ἦν δὲ τότε  
πόλεμος, ἐν ᾧ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἡγεμόνες τε καὶ στρατηγοὶ ἦσαν, ὁ μὲν  
Ἑτεοκλῆς τῶν Θηβαίων, ὁ δὲ Πολυνείκης τῶν Ἀργείων. ἦσαν δὲ ταῖς  
Θήβαις ἑπτὰ πύλαι, καὶ ἐκάστη φύλαξ. ὁ δὲ τῆς ἐβδόμης πύλης φύλαξ ὁ  
Ἑτεοκλῆς ἦν, καὶ ταύτῃ προσέβαλεν ὁ Πολυνείκης. τῇ δὲ τελευταίᾳ τοῦ  
10 πολέμου μάχῃ οἱ μὲν Θηβαῖοι ἀνδρείως ἐμαχέσαντο, οἱ δὲ Ἀργεῖοι  
ἔφυγον. οἱ μὲντοι ἀδελφοὶ ἀπέκτειναν ἀλλήλους.

	Οἰδίπους -οδος ὁ	Oedipus
	Ἑτεοκλῆς ὁ	Eteocles
	Πολυνείκης ὁ	Polyneices
	ἀρχή -ης ἡ	power, rule
2	μετέχω μετέσχον	I share (+ gen)
	Θῆβαι -ων αἱ	Thebes
	ἐξελαύνω ἐξήλασα	I drive out
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	Ἀργεῖοι -ων οἱ	Argives, men of Argos (city in southern Greece)
6	ἡγεμῶν -όνος ὁ	leader
	Θηβαῖοι -ων οἱ	Thebans, men of Thebes
	προσβάλλω προσέβαλον	I attack (+ dat)
	τελευταῖος -α -ον	final
	ἀλλήλους	each other

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ὁ μὲν Ἑτεοκλῆς τάφον τε καὶ τιμὴν ἐδέξατο. ὁ δὲ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ νεκρὸς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἔμενεν. ὁ γὰρ Κρέων, ὁ τῆς Ἰοκάστης ἀδελφὸς ἐν ταῖς Θήβαις νῦν ἄρχων, εἶπε τάδε· "οὗτος κάκιστος ἐστὶ τῶν  
 15 πολεμίων ὃς τῇ πατρίδι προσβάλλει, βουλόμενος τοὺς φίλους ἀποκτείνειν. τοὺς οὖν Θηβαίους κελεύω τοῦτον ἄνευ τάφου λείπειν. θανάτῳ δὲ κολασθήσεται ὁ τὸν νεκρὸν θάψας."

ταῦτα δὲ τοῖς Θηβαίοις ἐφαίνετο ἀδίκως λεχθῆναι. σιγῇ μέντοι τοὺς λόγους διὰ φόβον ἐδέξαντο. ἡ δ' Ἀντιγόνη, ἡ τῶν ἀποθανόντων ἀδελφή,  
 20 μαθοῦσα τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἀτιμίαν, οὐκ ἤθελε τῷ τυράννῳ πείθεσθαι. πάντα οὖν παρασκευάσασα ἔωθεν ἐξῆλθεν ὥς τὸν νεκρὸν θάψουσα. ἐλήφθη μέντοι ὑπὸ τῶν τοῦ Κρέοντος στρατιωτῶν τὸν νεκρὸν θάψουσα, καὶ παρὰ τὸν τύραννον ἤχθη. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κρέων, "διὰ τί," ἔφη, "ἐμοὶ οὐ πείθῃ;" ἡ δ' Ἀντιγόνη ἀπεκρίνατο, "οἱ μὲν σοὶ νόμοι ἐφήμεροί εἰσιν, οἱ δὲ  
 25 τῶν θεῶν αἱ μένουσιν. οὐδεὶς δὲ οἷός τ' ἐστὶ γινώσκειν πόθεν ἦλθον, πότε ἤρξαντο. τούτοις μέντοι τοῖς νόμοις καὶ νῦν καὶ αἰ πείσομαι, τοῖς ἀγράφοις."

	τάφος -ου ὁ	tomb
	ἀδελφός -ου ὁ	brother
	πεδῖον -ου τό	plain, open ground
	Κρέων -οντος ὁ	Creon
13	Ἰοκάστη -ης ἡ	Jocasta ( <i>mother and wife of Oedipus</i> )
	κάκιστος -η -ον	worst
	πατρίς -ίδος ἡ	fatherland, native city
	προσβάλλω προσέβαλον	I attack (+ <i>dat</i> )
	ἄνευ	without (+ <i>gen</i> )
18	ἀδίκως	unjustly
	Ἀντιγόνη -ης ἡ	Antigone
	ἀδελφή -ῆς ἡ	sister
	ἀτιμία -ας ἡ	dishonourable treatment
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant, ruler
21	ἔωθεν	at dawn
	παρά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) before, into the presence of
	ἐφήμερος -ον	of the day, temporary
	ἀγράφος -ον	unwritten

## Overview of participles

• You have now met all the participles in common use (shown in the tables below and overleaf). Participles are one of the most characteristic features of Greek, giving the language immense flexibility. The two-stage process of understanding what each participle literally means, then thinking of appropriate English in the context, is crucial to translating successfully.

Summary table of participles (showing masculine nominative singular of each):

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
present	παύων		παυόμενος
future	παύσων	παυσόμενος	παυσθησόμενος
first (weak) aorist	παύσας	παυσάμενος	παυσθείς
second (strong) aorist	λαβών	λαβόμενος	ληφθείς

---

Full grammar detail and meanings of the participles shown above:

present	active	παύων -ουσα -ον (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυοντ-) stopping (indicative: παύω I stop)
	middle/passive	παυόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) ceasing, stopping oneself ( <i>middle</i> ); being stopped ( <i>passive</i> ) (indicative: παύομαι I cease, I stop myself; I am stopped)
future	active	παύσω -ουσα -ον (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυσοντ-) about to stop (indicative: παύσω I shall stop)
	middle	παυσόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) about to cease, about to stop oneself (indicative: παύσομαι I shall cease, I shall stop myself)
	passive	παυσθησόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) about to be stopped (indicative: παυσθήσομαι I shall be stopped)
aorist	1st (weak) active	παύσας -ασα -αν (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυσαντ-) having stopped (indicative: ἔπαυσα I stopped)
	1st (weak) middle	παυσάμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) having ceased, having stopped oneself (indicative: ἐπαυσάμην I ceased, I stopped myself)
	2nd (strong) active	λαβών -ούσα, -όν (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem λαβοντ-) having taken (indicative: ἔλαβον I took)
	2nd (strong) middle	λαβόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) having taken for oneself (indicative: ἐλαβόμην I took for myself)
	passive	παυσθείς -εῖσα -έν (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυσθεντ-) having been stopped (indicative: ἐπαύσθην I was stopped)

---

### Exercise 8.20

For each of the following participles, state the tense, voice (active, middle or passive), gender, case, and number (singular or plural): e.g. *παυσάσαις* = *aorist active, feminine dative plural* (sometimes more than one answer is possible, e.g. a form could be masculine or neuter)

- 1 παύοντες
- 2 παυούσης
- 3 παυσθεῖσαν
- 4 παυσσάμενους
- 5 παύσοντας
- 6 παυσάντων (*two answers*)
- 7 παύοντι (*two answers*)



- 8 παυσομένου (*two answers*)  
 9 παυσθησομένων (*three answers*)  
 10 παυόμενον (*six answers*)

Five more adverbs:

- |   |          |                    |
|---|----------|--------------------|
| 1 | ἤδη      | already            |
| 2 | λάθρα    | secretly           |
| 3 | οὐδέποτε | never              |
| 4 | τότε     | then, at that time |
| 5 | ὕστερον  | later              |

#### Exercise 8.21 (Revision of participles)

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ ταῦτα μαθὼν σοφώτερός ἐστι τῶν ἄλλων.
- 2 ἄρα οἱ τότε ἄρχοντες γενόμενοι δικαιότεροι ἦσαν ἢ οἱ νῦν;
- 3 οἱ διὰ τῆς χώρας πορευόμενοι οὐδέποτε τῷ ποταμῷ ἐκωλύθησαν.
- 4 οὕτως ἀνδρεῖός ἐστιν ὁ τὰς γυναῖκας λάθρα λύσας ὥστε ὑπὸ πάντων θαυμάζεται.
- 5 οἱ πολέμιοι εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν διωχθέντες πάντες ἀπέθανον.
- 6 ὁ παῖς, καίπερ πολλὰ ἄθλα ἤδη δεξάμενος, ἔτι ἐβούλετο νίκην ἔχειν.
- 7 αἱ παῖδες τὰς βοὰς αὐθις ἀκούσασαι εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰσῆλθον.
- 8 οἱ τὴν τιμὴν οὐκ ἔχοντες πολλάκις τὸν χρυσὸν διώκουσιν.
- 9 οὕτως ὁ παῖς, τὴν ἐπιστολὴν εὐρών, ὕστερον ἀπέβαλεν.
- 10 οἱ ξένοι, ἐπὶ ὥρας ἤδη μαχεσάμενοι, οὐκέτι τῷ στρατηγῷ ἐπείθοντο.

#### Exercise 8.22

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The people who were chasing the horse caught it at last.
- 2 My father, having heard these words, became a soldier again.
- 3 The slave who had been released travelled for many days.
- 4 The girls ran away when they were about to be stopped by the old man.
- 5 The men who had guarded the village never received gifts.

### Genitive absolute

- Participle phrases can exist in any grammatical case, the case determined as usual by the job being done in the sentence:

οἱ δοῦλοι φεύγοντες τῷ ποταμῷ ἐκωλύθησαν.

The slaves while running away were hindered by the river.

(noun + circumstantial participle, in the nominative as subject)

ἄρ' εἶδες τοὺς στρατιώτας τοὺς μαχομένους;

Did you see the soldiers who were fighting?

(noun + defining/attributive participle, in the accusative as object)

οὐδὲν ἤκουσα περὶ τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦ τότε πεμφθέντος.

I heard nothing about the boy who had been sent at that time.

(noun + defining/attributive participle, in the genitive governed by περὶ)

πάντες βουλόμεθα δῶρα παρέχειν τοῖς γέρονσιν τοῖς ἐνθάδε μένουσιν.

We all want to provide gifts for the old men who are staying here.

(noun + defining/attributive participle, in the dative as indirect object)

But if a participle phrase is unconnected grammatically with the rest of the sentence (merely denoting an 'attendant circumstance', i.e. telling us about something else that was true or applicable at the time) it goes into the genitive: this is called the *genitive absolute*, from the original Latin meaning of 'absolute' as *set free* or *independent* (rather than the modern English meaning *complete* or *utter*). Hence:

τῶν δούλων φευγόντων, οἱ πολῖται οὐδὲν ἤκουσαν.

While the slaves were running away, the citizens heard nothing.

τῶν συμμάχων ἀποπεμφθέντων, οὐκ ἠθέλομεν μάχεσθαι.

Because the allies had been sent away, we did not want to fight.

ταῦτα ἐγένετο τοῦ γέροντος παρόντος.

These things happened with the old man present.

• The genitive absolute corresponds to the ablative absolute in Latin: this is another example of the Greek genitive doing one of the ablative jobs. The Greek genitive absolute is however less common than the Latin equivalent. In Latin many examples of the ablative absolute are made necessary by the limited number of participles available, in particular the lack (for all except deponent verbs) of a perfect active participle (corresponding to the Greek aorist). So *Having done these things, he left* must in Latin be turned round into *With these things having been done, he left* (making the participle passive, and the phrase ablative absolute). In Greek, with the flexibility provided by a full set of participles, there is no need to do this.

### Exercise 8.23

*Translate into English:*

- 1 τῶν πολεμίων φευγόντων, οὐκέτι ἐν κινδύνῳ ἔσμεν.
- 2 ταύτης τῆς ὁδοῦ χαλεπῆς οὔσης, ἀναγκαζόμεθα ἄλλην εὐρίσκειν.
- 3 ὀλίγων ναυτῶν παρόντων, ἄγγελον πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον πέμψομεν.
- 4 τοῦ ὕδατος δεινοῦ ὄντος, ἡ κώμη οὐδενὸς ἄξια ἐστίν.
- 5 τῆς γυναικὸς ἀποθανούσης, ὁ γέρον μόνος ἦν.
- 6 οἱ ξένοι πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν λάθρα προσήλθον, οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος.
- 7 τὸ ναυτικὸν ἐκ τοῦ λιμένος ἐξεπέμφθη, τοῦ στρατηγοῦ κελεύσαντος.
- 8 τοῦ ποταμοῦ χαλεποῦ ὄντος, ἐγγὺς τῆς κώμης ἐμένομεν.
- 9 τοῦ διδασκάλου ὀργιζομένου, οἱ παῖδες ἀπέδραμον.
- 10 τούτων γενομένων, οἱ σύμμαχοι ἀπῆλθον.

## Exercise 8.24

Translate into Greek:

- 1 When the boys had learned the words, the work was not difficult.
- 2 Our allies being few, we have a new plan.
- 3 Because the sea was hindering the army, the citizens did not want to fight.
- 4 While the girls were running away, I heard a shout.
- 5 When the general had released the prisoners of war, we all went away.

## Future tense of *to be*

The future of εἶμι, though active in meaning (*to be* can have no middle or passive sense), resembles a middle in form:

sg	1	ἔσομαι	I shall be
	2	ἔσῃ	you (sg) will be
	3	ἔσται*	he/she/it will be
pl	1	ἐσόμεθα	we shall be
	2	ἐσεσθε	you (pl) will be
	3	ἔσονται	they will be

\* this has been shortened to aid pronunciation from ἔσεται, the form that might have been predicted

participle: ἐσόμενος -η -ον about to be

## Active verbs with middle-form futures

- Some ordinary verbs use a middle form for their future (with active sense):

present	future	
ἀκούω	ἀκούσομαι	I shall hear
βαίνω	βήσομαι	I shall go
γινώσκω	γνώσομαι	I shall get to know
διώκω	διώξομαι*	I shall chase, I shall pursue
ἐσθίω	ἔδομαι	I shall eat
λαμβάνω	λήψομαι	I shall take
μανθάνω	μαθήσομαι	I shall learn
πάσχω	πείσομαι†	I shall suffer
φεύγω	φεύξομαι	I shall run away, I shall flee

\* however the active διώξω is also sometimes used

† note that this is identical to the future of πείθομαι (πείσομαι = *I shall obey*), but the context should make clear which it is

• There is no obvious explanation for this: βαίνω and γινώσκω are also unusual in having a root aorist active (ἔβην and ἔγνων respectively), but ἀκούω has a perfectly normal first (weak) aorist ἤκουσα (stem ἀκουσ-), and there seems no reason why the future could not be ἀκούσω. Minor peculiarities such as this have to be accepted as part of a language with a rich history: they can be irritating at first, but they can easily be checked in the Reference Grammar (pages 218-20). And because it is very often the commonest words that have irregular features (because they have been bashed about with use), they quickly become

familiar. It is also worth noting here that we have already seen one verb with middle form in the present, active in the aorist: *ἔρχομαι*, aorist *ἦλθον*. This pattern of mixed active and middle/deponent forms is broadly comparable to semi-deponent verbs in Latin, e.g. *gaudeo, gaudere, gavisus sum* (active present tense and infinitive, deponent - i.e. passive-form - perfect).

## Deponent verbs with passive-form aorists

- As we saw, deponent verbs are middle in form, and therefore normally use the middle versions of the future and aorist forms. But a few of them prefer the passive form for the aorist. Hence:

<i>present</i>	<i>aorist</i>	
ὀργίζομαι	ὀργίσθην	I got angry
πορεύομαι	ἐπορεύθην	I marched

- With *ὀργίζομαι* it is easy to explain this: *ὀργίσθην* is in origin a genuine passive of the underlying (but rarer) active and transitive verb *ὀργίζω* = *I anger* (someone); hence *I was angered* (by someone/something) for *I got angry*. Not quite so obvious is *πορεύομαι*: though it is worth noting here that Greek authors themselves vary, sometimes writing *ἐπορεύσαντο* rather than *ἐπορεύθισαν* for *they marched*.

### Exercise 8.25

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 We shall hear.
- 2 They got angry.
- 3 He will go.
- 4 You (*pl*) marched.
- 5 You (*sg*) will learn.

## Revision checkpoint

*Make sure you know:*

- all participles (what they mean and how they decline)
- how the genitive absolute works
- future of *to be*
- active verbs with middle-form futures
- deponent verbs with passive-form aorists

### Exercise 8.26

*Read the following passage then answer the questions below:*

### Socrates refuses to join in an illegal trial

*Socrates generally avoided public life, but he also believed in the duty of citizens to serve their city when required. He served in the army as a hoplite (heavy-armed infantryman), and was distinguished by his courage, physical resilience, and concern for his comrades. When he became briefly involved in political affairs, his behaviour matched up to his principles. Athenian democracy meant that any adult male citizen might serve his turn as chairman for a day of the Assembly (ἐκκλησία). Socrates happened to be chairman when a controversial matter came before the meeting. In 406 BC (in the closing stages of the Peloponnesian*

*War: see the next background section) Athens won a naval victory over Sparta and her allies at Arginusae (islands off modern Turkey). But this was tainted by criticism of the behaviour of the Athenian commanders after the battle. Eight generals (out of ten annually elected to command both land and sea forces) were tried by the Assembly: Socrates alone stood up against a tide of popular indignation and objected to the proposed method of doing this.*

ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης ἦν σοφώτατός τε καὶ ἄριστος τῶν τότε Ἀθηναίων.  
καὶ ἐπιστάτης τῆς ἐκκλησίας ποτε ὢν, οὐκ ἠθέλησε τῷ δήμῳ πείθεσθαι,  
ὥς βουλομένῳ ὁκτῶ στρατηγούς μιᾷ ψήφῳ παρὰ τοὺς νόμους ἀποκτείνειν.  
ἦν δὲ τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις νίκη ἐν ναυμαχίᾳ τινὶ πρότερον· οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ  
5 στρατηγοὶ οὐχ οἱοί τ' ἦσαν, μεγάλου χειμῶνος γενομένου, τοὺς  
Ἀθηναίους ναυαγούς σῶζειν. διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐβούλετο ὁ δῆμος πάντας  
ὁμοίως κολάζειν. καὶ οἱ μὲν πολῖται μάλιστα ὠργίσθησαν διότι ὁ  
Σωκράτης οὕτως ἐκώλυεν, καὶ ἐκέλευσαν αὐτὸν ἐαυτοῖς πείθεσθαι.  
ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης, "ἀκούετέ μου," ἔφη, "ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι. τοῦτο γὰρ  
10 πρᾶξαντες, ἀδικίας μεγίστης αἵτιοι ἔσεσθε, διότι οὐ δίκαιόν ἐστι τῶν  
ὁκτῶ πάντων μιᾷ ψήφῳ θάνατον καταγιγνώσκειν. ἐν γὰρ ταῖς Ἀθήναις  
πᾶς ὁ φεύγων χωρὶς δικάζεται." ἐπεὶ μέντοι ὁ Σωκράτης οὐκ ἔπεισε τὴν  
ἐκκλησίαν, οἱ στρατηγοὶ μετὰ ὀλίγας ἡμέρας ἀπέθανον.

	ἄριστος -η -ον	best
	ἐπιστάτης -ου ὁ	leader, chairman
	ποτε	(not in a question) once
	ψήφος -ου ἡ	vote
3	παρὰ	(+ acc) contrary to
	χειμῶν -ωνος ὁ	storm
	ναυαγός -οῦ ὁ	shipwrecked man
	ὁμοίως	in the same way
	ἐαυτοῦς -άς	themselves (reflexive pronoun; no nominative)
10	ἀδικία -ας ἡ	injustice
	αἷτιος -α -ον	responsible for, the cause of (+ gen)
	καταγιγνώσκω	I condemn (someone gen) to (a penalty acc)
	Ἀθῆναι -ων αἱ	Athens
	φεύγων -οντος ὁ	defendant, person on trial
12	χωρὶς	separately
	δικάζω	I try, I judge

- (1) How is Socrates described in line 1? (3)
- (2) Why is τῷ δήμῳ (line 2) dative? (1)
- (3) What did the Assembly want to do (line 3)? (3)
- (4) What had the generals been unable to do, and why (lines 4-6)? (4)
- (5) What does Socrates say about the proposed course of action (lines 9-11)? (3)
- (6) What principle of normal Athenian justice does Socrates appeal to (lines 11-12)? (2)
- (7) What was the outcome (lines 12-13)? (4)

20 marks

**Note** from this passage the word χειμῶν which means (according to context) *storm* or *winter* (i.e. the stormy season); note also that, although it is a third declension noun ending -ων, the genitive stem is -ων- (as in ἀγών -ωνος *contest*) rather than the more common -οντ- (as in γέρον, or a participle like παύων).

## The 'other' εἶμι: *I shall go*

As well as the very common εἰμί = *I am*, there is another εἶμι (also irregular, but different in conjugation) used as the future of ἔρχομαι (the 'ordinary' εἰμί' is shown alongside for comparison:

'other' εἶμι			'ordinary' εἰμί		
sg	1	εἶμι	I shall go	εἰμί	I am
	2	εἶ	you (sg) will go	εἶ	you (sg) are
	3	εἶσι(ν)	he/she/it will go	ἐστί(ν)	he/she/it is
pl	1	ἴμεν	we shall go	ἐσμέν	we are
	2	ἴτε	you (pl) will go	ἐστέ	you (pl) are
	3	ἴασι(ν)	they will go	εἰσί(ν)	they are

• Accents distinguish otherwise identical forms: the two first person singulars; and the third person singular *he will go* as against the third person plural *they are*. In the second person singular however the accents too are identical, but context almost always avoids ambiguity.

• The iota characteristic of the plural forms *we shall go* etc is related to the Latin *imus* etc (from *eo, ire*); the two Greek verbs are often referred to by tagging on their Latin equivalents - 'εἰμί *sum*' (*I am*) and 'εἶμι *ibo*' (*I shall go*).

• There is a participle from εἶμι *ibo* in common use. This however normally has a present sense (*going*, rather than *about to go*):

ἰόν, ἰούσα, ἰόν (genitive stem for masculine/neuter ἰοντ-)      going

This is formed by putting normal present active participle endings onto the stem ἰ-: this one-letter stem distinguishes it from the participle of εἰμί *sum*:

ὄν, οὔσα, ὄν (genitive stem for masculine/neuter ὄντ-)      being

• Similarly εἶμι *ibo* has an infinitive ἰέναι, again normally with present sense; compare εἶναι from εἰμί *sum*.

• Both εἰμί *sum* and εἶμι *ibo* can form compounds. But whereas εἰμί *sum* is compounded with a limited range of prefixes implying staying somewhere (hence e.g. *πάρειμι I am here*, *ἄπειμι I am away*), εἶμι *ibo* can (like ἔρχομαι itself) take a whole range of prefixes denoting motion. Hence for example:

ἐξιμεν      we shall go out  
προσιέναι      to go towards

• The participles of both verbs are often found in compound form, only the iota differentiating them:

ἄπόντες      being away      (masculine nominative plural)  
ἀπιόντες      going away      (masculine nominative plural)

Six more first declension feminine nouns:

1	ἀρχή, -ῆς ἡ	beginning; power, empire
2	βία -ας ἡ	force, violence
3	γλῶσσα -ης ἡ	tongue; language
4	στρατιά -ας ἡ	army ( <i>synonym of στρατός</i> )
5	συμφορά -ας ἡ	disaster
6	τύχη -ης ἡ	luck (good or bad), chance

## Exercise 8.27

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ φύλαξ οὐκ ἀκούσεται ἐκείνους τοὺς λόγους.
- 2 ἡ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν ὁδός, χαλεπὴ ἐσομένη, κωλύσει ἡμᾶς.
- 3 ἄρα πάντες οἱ ὑμέτεροι σύμμαχοι ἄπεισιν, ὦ πολῖται;
- 4 μετὰ ὀλίγον χρόνον ὁ ἄγγελος πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν προσεῖσιν.
- 5 ὁ τοῦ δεσπότης υἱὸς βίᾳ ἐκώλυσεν\* τοὺς δούλους φεύγειν.
- 6 τὴν τοῦ κριτοῦ βουλὴν νῦν μαθησόμεθα.
- 7 ὁ τὴν ἀρχὴν τότε λαβὼν τύχην ἀγαθὴν οὐκέτι ἔχει.
- 8 ἡ τοῦ ξένου γλῶσσα οὐκ ἐνθάδε διδάσκεται.
- 9 ἐπεὶ τὸν γέροντα δακρύοντα εἶδεν, ὁ ἄγγελος ἐπαύσατο περὶ τῆς συμφορᾶς λέγων.
- 10 ἡ ἡμέτερα στρατιὰ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐπορεύθη.

\* as previously noted, κωλύω + infinitive means *prevent (someone) from (doing)*

## Exercise 8.28

Translate into Greek:

- 1 After the assembly, we shall go to the marketplace.
- 2 This disaster, which is going to be terrible, will stop the war.
- 3 The women who are going to learn these things are very clever.
- 4 Those who are fighting will receive many gifts.
- 5 The slaves who are going into the house will be released by our master.

## Reflexive pronouns

• These are very straightforward, adding relevant parts of αὐτός after the appropriate personal pronoun, in the singulars (and third person plural) compressed into one word:

first person

		masculine	feminine	
sg	acc	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	myself*
	gen	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	
	dat	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	
pl	acc	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ourselves*
	gen	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	
	dat	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	*literally me-self, us-selves

second person

		masculine	feminine	
sg	acc	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν	yourself*
	gen	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς	
	dat	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ	
pl	acc	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς	yourselves*
	gen	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	
	dat	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς	*literally you-self, you-selves

third person

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
sg	acc	ἐαυτόν	ἐαυτήν	ἐαυτό	himself, herself, itself
	gen	ἐαυτοῦ	ἐαυτῆς	ἐαυτοῦ	
	dat	ἐαυτῷ	ἐαυτῇ	ἐαυτῷ	
pl	acc	ἐαυτούς	ἐαυτάς	ἐαυτά	themselves
	gen	ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν	
	dat	ἐαυτοῖς	ἐαυταῖς	ἐαυτοῖς	

• These pronouns, in their nature as reflexives (denoting that the action is *reflected back* onto the subject), cannot have nominative forms. *The general blamed himself* is reflexive; *The general himself fled* (ὁ στρατηγὸς αὐτὸς ἔφυγεν) is not.

• The ἐ- prefix corresponds to the Latin *se* (which is likewise the same in singular and plural).

• Reflexive pronouns are less common in Greek than in Latin. Where Latin inserts a reflexive accusative in intransitive/reflexive expressions like *he washed (himself)*, *he hid (himself)*, Greek (as we saw) normally just makes the verb middle. The active with the reflexive pronoun is however sometimes used for emphasis.

## Third person possessives

As we saw in Chapters 5 and 6, the first and second person pronouns have associated adjectives:

<i>pronoun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	
ἐγώ, ἐμέ etc	ἐμός -ή -όν	my
σύ	σός, σή, σόν	your (of you sg)
ἡμεῖς	ἡμέτερος -α -ον	our
ὅμοις	ὅμοτερος -α -ον	your (of you pl)

When used with a noun, these need the article as well, and they sandwich:

ἡ ἡμέτερα οἰκία  
our house

Though often the article alone is enough, if the context makes the possessive sense obvious:

ὁ Οἰδίπους τὸν πατέρα ἀπέκτεινεν.  
Oedipus killed his father.

• It would be possible in theory to use the genitive of the pronoun instead of the possessive adjective: *the house of me*. This is intelligible, but unnatural - just as in English. If an adjective is available, it should be used.

• In the third person however there is no Greek adjective meaning *his*, *her*, *their* etc in common use, and so (if the article alone is not enough to convey the meaning) you do have to say *the house of him*.

• There is a crucial distinction here between *his/of him(self)* referring back reflexively to the subject, and *his/of him* referring to someone else.

• For the reflexive possessive the appropriate genitive part of ἐαυτον etc is used, and needs to be sandwiched with the article:



ὁ διδάσκαλος ἔπεμψε τὴν ἑαυτοῦ βίβλον.  
The teacher sent his own book.

οἱ ναῦται τὸν ἑαυτῶν σίτον ἔφαγον.  
The sailors ate their own food.

- For the non-reflexive possessive the appropriate genitive part of αὐτός is used, and needs the article but must not be sandwiched:

πᾶσαι αἱ γυναῖκες θαυμάζουσι τὴν ἀρετὴν αὐτοῦ.  
All the women admire his courage.

οἱ στρατιῶται ἔλαβον τὴν κόρην καὶ τὰ χρήματα αὐτῆς.  
The soldiers captured the girl and her money.

- In Latin there is an adjective for the reflexive third person possessive (*suus -a -um*), but not for the non-reflexive (where the genitive of a pronoun must be used, e.g. *eius*, genitive of *is, ea, id*). In Greek the pronoun method has to be used for both versions.
- Because (as we saw) other uses of the Greek reflexive pronouns are relatively uncommon, the third person possessive genitive is the form most frequently met. As with the first and second person possessive adjectives, the third person possessive genitive pronouns are frequently used for emphasis or to express a contrast (where the article alone would not be enough).

#### Exercise 8.29

*Translate into English:*

- 1 οἱ ναῦται οὐκέτι τὸν ἑαυτῶν σίτον ἥσθιον ἀλλὰ τὸν τοῦ αἰχμαλώτου.
- 2 οἱ σοφοὶ οὐ θαυμάζουσιν ἑαυτούς.
- 3 ὁ στρατηγὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ θυγατέρα ἀπέκτεινεν.
- 4 ἄρα βούλη σφῆξιν σεαυτόν, ὦ γέρον;
- 5 ὁ κριτὴς αὐτὸς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔγραψεν.
- 6 πιστεύω τῷ τε παιδί καὶ τῇ μητρὶ αὐτοῦ.
- 7 ὁ στρατιώτης, ταῦτα μαθὼν, ἀπέκτεινεν ἑαυτόν.
- 8 τί νῦν λέξομεν περὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ὦ πολῖται;
- 9 τὴν ἐμὴν βίβλον ἔχει ἐκεῖνος, οὐ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ.
- 10 τὰς βουλὰς αὐτῶν πρότερον γνωσόμεθα ἢ τὰς ἡμετέρας.

#### Exercise 8.30

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The woman now wants to save herself.
- 2 The old man sent his own money to the temple.
- 3 I heard a story about myself.
- 4 The girl chases the boy and his horse.
- 5 Having suffered such a disaster, we do not admire ourselves.

## Background: Socrates (3)

As we saw in Chapter 7, Socrates at the end of his life was put on trial, accused of corrupting the young men of the city (apparently taken to mean with dangerous political ideas), and of not believing in the gods the city believed in but introducing new gods of his own. Whether or not the charges were justified, we may wonder why his accusers waited until he was 70, since Socrates as a self-styled 'gadfly' had all his life set out to be provocative.

The answer is that Athens had changed. The confident, relaxed city he had grown up in (with its democratic government and rich cultural life, financed by a firmly controlled empire) had fought and eventually lost the crippling twenty-seven-year Peloponnesian War (431-404 BC) against Sparta and her allies, the other big power block in the Greek world, which had become alarmed at the ambition of Athens. Criticism, mockery and radical religious ideas could now less easily be tolerated. The democratic constitution was twice overthrown, to be replaced (temporarily but painfully) by harsh right-wing regimes. Friends and disciples of Socrates (for example Critias, Plato's uncle) were known to be involved. Socrates would certainly have distanced himself from their violent methods, and from the belief (associated with some of the Sophists) that 'justice is (simply) the right of the stronger' or 'might is right'. But it could be argued that the right-wing opponents of democracy were in some respects putting into practice an elitist strain in Socrates' thought, as he often stressed that experts should be trusted: since you clearly would want surgery performed not by someone chosen at random from the street but by a skilled doctor, why was government any different?

Plato and Xenophon both wrote versions of the *Apology* (= speech in self-defence, not 'apologetic' in our sense) which Socrates delivered in court, recounting and justifying his life. These written accounts amplify but probably do not misrepresent Socrates' actual words. He explains that he is neither a Sophist nor a 'natural philosopher' (i.e. scientist). As we saw in Chapter 7, he insists that his only wisdom consists in knowing that he knows nothing. Though he hears a divine voice which deters him from wrongdoing (described in terms perhaps unfamiliar to his audience), he does not neglect normal religious observance.

It is unlikely that Socrates' accusers expected or wanted the death penalty to be inflicted. Voluntary exile would have been possible before the verdict. At the point after it where both sides proposed a penalty, he could have suggested a moderate fine. In fact (believing unconditionally in his innocence) he provoked the jury by suggesting that, so far from being punished, he should be given free dinners for life in the public hall in Athens (a privilege normally accorded to Olympic victors and others who brought glory to the city). This so annoyed the jurors that on a second vote more of them voted for the death penalty than had voted him guilty in the first place. Execution was postponed for a month while the Athenian state ship was engaged on a sacred mission (because it would have been ill-omened to carry out the death penalty during this period). Meanwhile Socrates was held in prison, and was visited by his friends, whose conversations are recorded in Plato's dialogues *Crito* and *Phaedo*. The latter ends with a moving description of how Socrates calmly accepted the cup of hemlock by which the death penalty was carried out in Athens.

### Exercise 8.31

#### Socrates on Trial

*Socrates begins his speech in court, after the prosecution have put the case against him:*

"καλοῖς μὲν λόγοις, ὃ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, οὐχ οἷός τ' εἶμι λέγειν, ἀληθεῖα δ' ἴσως. τοῖς μέντοι ὑπὸ τῶν κατηγορῶν λεχθεῖσιν οὐδαμῶς πιστεύω. ἀλλ' οὐ μόνον πρὸς τοὺς νῦν κατηγοροὺς λέξω, ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς τοὺς

ἀλήθεια -ας ἢ

ἴσως

κατηγοροῦ -ου ὁ

οὐδαμῶς

3 πρὸς (+ acc)

truth

perhaps

accuser

in no way, not at all

(here) in response to

- πρότερον. πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν καὶ δεινοί, οἱ περὶ ἐμοῦ πολλὰ μὲν λέγοντες,  
 5 οὐδὲν δὲ δίκαιον. ἠκούσατε γὰρ ἐκ παίδων πάντες ὑμεῖς ὅτι Σωκράτης τίς  
 ἐστι, τὰ τε ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ καὶ τὰ ὑπὸ τῇ γῇ ἀεὶ διώκων, καὶ λέγων ὅτι ὁ  
 ἄδικος λόγος δίκαιός ἐστι, καὶ ἄλλους διδάσκων τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα. καὶ οἱ  
 πολῖται τοιαῦτα ἀκούσαντες λέγουσιν ὅτι τοὺς θεοὺς οὐ νομίζω. τὰ δὲ  
 10 τῶν ἄλλων κατηγορῶν ὀνόματα οὐχ οἷός τ' εἰμὶ λέγειν, πλὴν ἑνός. οὗτος  
 δε κωμωδοποιός ἐστίν. πολλοὶ γὰρ ὑμῶν ἐν τῷ θεάτρῳ παρῆτε. ἐστὶ δ' ἐν  
 τῇ κωμῳδίᾳ Σωκράτης τις περιφερόμενος, ἀεροβάτης ὢν καὶ περὶ πολλῶν  
οὐδὲν λέγων. ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μάρτυρές ἐστέ· τίς γὰρ ἠκουσέ μου περὶ  
 τοιούτων λέγοντος; χρήματα δ' οὐδέποτε ἐδεξάμην διδάσκων, ὥσπερ  
Πρωταγόρας καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι σοφισταί. οὗτοι γὰρ διδάσκουσι καὶ  
 15 χρήματα δέχονται, σοφοὶ ὄντες. ἐγὼ δ' οὐδαμῶς σοφός.

- "καὶ λέγουσιν οἱ κατήγοροι ὅτι, οὐ νομίζων τοὺς θεοὺς οὓς ἡ πόλις  
 νομίζει, δαιμόνια εἰσφέρω ἄλλα καὶ νέα· καὶ ὅτι τοὺς νεανίας τοὺς  
 'Αθηναίους διαφθείρω. τοιαῦτα γὰρ πολλάκις ἠκούετε· ὁ Σωκράτης λέγει  
 20 ὅτι ὁ ἥλιος λίθος ἐστίν, οὐ θεός, καὶ ἡ σελήνη γῆ." οὐ μέντοι ἐγὼ ἀλλ'  
 ὁ 'Αναξαγόρας ταῦτα πάλαι ἔγραψεν· τὴν δὲ βίβλον οἰοί τ' ἐστὲ μιάς  
 δραχμῆς ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἀγορεύειν. ἐγὼ δ' οὐδαμῶς ταῦτα λέγω. θεοὺς τε  
 γὰρ καὶ δαιμόνια νομίζω. ἐστὶ δὲ καὶ δαιμόνιον, ὥσπερ φωνή τις  
 λέγουσα, ὃ ἀεὶ κωλύει με τῆς ἀδικίας.

	ἐκ παίδων	from childhood
	ὅτι	that
	ἄδικος -ον	unjust
	νομίζω	(here) I believe in
9	πλὴν	except (+ gen)
	κωμωδοποιός -οῦ ὁ	writer of comedy (Socrates refers to Aristophanes and his play Clouds)
	θέατρον -ου τό	theatre
	κωμωδία -ας ἡ	comedy
11	ἀεροβάτης -ου ὁ	walker on air
	οὐδὲν λέγω	I talk rubbish
	μάρτυς -υρος ὁ	witness
	Πρωταγόρας ὁ	Protagoras
	σοφιστής -οῦ ὁ	Sophist
15	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
	δαιμόνιον -ου τό	divine being
	διαφθείρω	(here) I corrupt
	σελήνη -ης ἡ	moon
	'Αναξαγόρας ὁ	Anaxagoras (philosopher a generation before Socrates, who speculated about the physical universe)
21	δραχμή -ης ἡ	drachma (Athenian unit of currency; here 'genitive of price' - translate for ~)
	ἀγορεύω	I buy
	ἀδικία -ας ἡ	injustice

25 "οὐδὲ φόβος ἔχει με πρὸς θάνατον ἰόντα. ὁ γὰρ θάνατος ἢ ὥσπερ ὕπνος  
 ἀτάρακτος ἐστίν, ἢ ὥσπερ ὁδὸς τις ἐνθὲνδε εἰς ἄλλον τόπον. καὶ ἐκεῖ  
 οἶός τ' ἔσομαι τοῖς τε ἄλλοις διαλέγεσθαι καὶ τῷ Ὀμήρῳ. στρατιώτης  
 γὰρ ὢν οὐδέποτε ἔφυγον ἐγὼ ἀλλ' ἔμεινα ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀθηναίων στρατηγῶν  
 ταχθεὶς· οὐδὲ φιλόσοφος ὢν ἔφυγον ἀλλ' ἔμεινα ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν ταχθεὶς,  
 τοὺς τε ἄλλους καὶ ἑμαυτὸν ἐξετάζων· οὐδὲ νῦν φεύξομαι."

	ἢ ... ἢ	either ... or
	ὥσπερ	like
	ἀτάρακτος -ον	undisturbed
	ἐνθὲνδε	from here
26	διαλέγομαι	I have a conversation (with, + <i>dat</i> )
	Ὀμηρος -ου ὁ	Homer
	φιλόσοφος -ου ὁ	philosopher
	ἐξετάζω	I examine

## Future infinitives

The ordinary infinitives (active *παύειν* = *to stop*, middle/passive *παύεσθαι* = *to cease/to be stopped*) are present tense. Greek also has infinitives in other tenses. Here are the future ones (entirely predictable in formation):

active	<i>παύσειν</i>	(compare future indicative <i>παύσω</i> )
<i>literally</i>	to be going to stop, to be about to stop	
middle	<i>παύσεσθαι</i>	(compare future indicative <i>παύσομαι</i> )
<i>literally</i>	to be going to cease, to be about to cease	
passive	<i>παυσθήσεται</i>	(compare future indicative <i>παυσθήσομαι</i> )
<i>literally</i>	to be going to be stopped, to be about to be stopped	

The literal translations of course sound very clumsy and are rarely appropriate. Future infinitives have a number of jobs (we shall see some more in Chapter 10), but note here their use with the verbs

ἐλπίζω	I hope (to)
μέλλω	I intend to, I am about to

Here the future infinitive just reinforces the sense of the verb, and is translated like the present:

ἐλπίζομεν τὴν σὴν ἐπιστολὴν δέξεσθαι.  
 We hope to receive your letter.

μέλλω τοὺς πολεμίους διώξεσθαι.  
 I intend to chase the enemy.

The future infinitive of εἰμί *sum* is *ἔσεσθαι* (compare future indicative *ἔσομαι*).

ὁ Σωκράτης μέλλει ἀεὶ δίκαιος ἔσεσθαι.  
 Socrates intends always to be just.

## Compound negatives (1)

- As well as the simple negative οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ), there are several compounds. You have met:

οὐδεὶς οὐδεμία οὐδέν	no-one, nothing, no (not any)*
οὐδέποτε	never
οὐκέτι	no longer

\* used as both pronoun (οὐδεὶς = *no-one*) and adjective (οὐδεὶς δοῦλος = *no slave*)

Note also:

οὔτε ... οὔτε	neither ... nor
---------------	-----------------

(This pair act as a negative version of ἢ ... ἢ = either ... or.)

- The usual position, especially for the simple negative, is just before a verb. If a negative comes elsewhere, it specifically refers to (or 'negatives') the word immediately following.

### Exercise 8.32

Translate into English:

- 1 οὔτε βουλὴν οὔτε χρήματα ἔχομεν.
- 2 τοσαύτη συμφορὰ οὐδέποτε πρότερον ἐγένετο.
- 3 αἱ παῖδες ἐμελλον πάντας τοὺς λόγους μαθήσεσθαι.
- 4 οὐ χρήματα ἀλλὰ φίλους βούλομαι ἔχειν.
- 5 ἄρα ταῦτα ἔδεσθαι μέλλεις;

## Revision checkpoint

Make sure you know:

- εἶμι = *I shall go*
- reflexive pronouns
- third person possessives (using genitive pronouns)
- future infinitives
- compound negatives

### Exercise 8.33

## Socrates' Final Day

Two friends of Socrates discuss his final day. Echecrates discovers that Phaedo was with him when he died.

- Ἐχεκράτης ἄρα αὐτός, ὃ Φαίδων, παρήσθα ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἥ ὁ Σωκράτης ἀπέθανεν; τότε γὰρ μόνον ἠκούσαμεν, ὅτι τὸ φάρμακον ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ ἔπιεν.
- Φαίδων αὐτὸς παρὴν, ὃ Ἐχεκράτης. ἄρα τὰ περὶ τῆς δίκης ἐπύθεσθε;
- 5 Ἐχε ναι, ταῦτα ἐπυθόμεθα· ἐθουμάζομεν μέντοι ὅτι πολλῶ ὕστερον

Ἐχεκράτης ὁ	Echecrates
Φαίδων ὁ	Phaedo
ὅτι	that
φάρμακον -ου τό	poison
4 δίκη -ης ἡ	trial
ναι	yes

	(ὥς γε φαίνεται) ἀπέθανεν ὁ Σωκράτης. διὰ τί οὖν οὕτως ἐγένετο;	
Φαι	τύχη τις αὐτῷ ἐγένετο, ὦ φίλε. τῇ γὰρ <u>προτεραΐα</u> τῆς δίκης τὸ πλοῖον, ὃ εἰς <u>Δῆλον</u> οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι πέμπουσιν, ἐμελλεν <u>ἀνάξεσθαι</u> .	
Ἔχε	τοῦτο δὲ τί ἐστίν;	
10 Φαι	τοῦτό ἐστι τὸ πλοῖον, ὥς γε οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι λέγουσιν, ἐν ᾧ <u>Θησεύς</u> ἤγαγεν εἰς <u>Κρήτην</u> τοὺς <u>δῖς</u> ἑπτὰ, νεανίας τε καὶ κόρας. πάντας δὲ σώσας, καὶ τὸν <u>Μινώταυρον</u> κτείνας, ὁ Θησεὺς δῶρον τοῖς θεοῖς παρέχειν ἐβούλετο. οἱ οὖν Ἀθηναῖοι ἔτι καὶ νῦν <u>κατ' ἔτος</u> πλοῖον εἰς Δῆλον πέμπουσιν. καὶ οὐδεὶς θανάτῳ κολάζεται <u>ἕως</u> τὸ πλοῖον ἀπεστίν. ὁ οὖν Σωκράτης ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ ἔμενεν.	
15 Ἔχε	τί εἶπεν ὁ Σωκράτης <u>πρὸ</u> τοῦ θανάτου;	
Φαι	ἐξ ἀρχῆς πάντα λέξω, ἐπεὶ ἀκούειν βούλη. τῇ γὰρ προτεραΐα, ἐπεὶ ἐξήλθομεν ἐκ τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου ἐσπέρας, εἶπέ τις ἡμῖν, "τὸ πλοῖον ἐκ Δήλου πάρεστιν." αὕτη οὖν ἡ ἡμέρα <u>τελευταία</u> ἦν. ὁ μὲν Σωκράτης αὐτὸς <u>ἀτάρακτος</u> ἦν, ἡ δὲ γυνὴ ἡ <u>Ξανθίππη</u> ἐπεὶ εἶδεν ἡμᾶς δακρύνουσα τῷ ἀνδρὶ εἶπεν, "νῦν <u>ὑστατον</u> οἷός τ' ἔσῃ τοῖς φίλοις <u>διαλέγεσθαι</u> , καὶ ἐκείνοί σοι." καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης,	
20	"αἰσθάνεσθε," ἔφη, "ἃ <u>πάσχει</u> βούλομαι οὖν τινα <u>οἰκαδε</u> αὐτὴν ἀπάγειν." καὶ ἐκείνην μὲν ἀπήγαγόν τινες δακρύνουσιν. ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης πολλὰ τοῖς παροῦσιν ἀνδράσι διελέγετο. καὶ <u>ἔγωγε</u> <u>θαυμάσια</u> ἔπαθον· οὐ γὰρ <u>οἶκτος</u> εἰσῆλθέ με· <u>εὐδαίμων</u> γὰρ ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐφαίνετο. καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες τὸ αὐτὸ ἔπαθον ἀκούοντες τοὺς λόγους οἷς ἐδίδασκε περὶ τοῦ θανάτου· οὐ γὰρ	
25	κακὸν τί ἐστίν ἐπεὶ ἡ <u>ψυχὴ</u> οὐτ' ἀποθνήσκει οὔτε <u>διαλύεται</u> .	
30		

	γε	at least
	τῇ προτεραΐα	on the day before (something, + gen)
	Δήλος -ου ἡ	Delos (sacred island with important annual festival)
	ἀνάγομαι	I put to sea
10	Θησεύς ὁ	Theseus
	Κρήτη -ης ἡ	Crete
	δῖς	twice (the archaic phrase 'twice seven' was traditional in the story for 'fourteen')
	Μινώταυρος -ου ὁ	Minotaur
13	κατ' ἔτος	each year
	ἕως	while
	πρὸ	before (+ gen)
	τελευταῖος -α -ον	final
	ἀτάρακτος -ον	undisturbed, calm
20	Ξανθίππη -ης ἡ	Xanthippe (wife of Socrates)
	ὑστατον	for the last time
	διαλέγομαι	I have a conversation
	οἰκαδε	home, homewards
	ἔγωγε	I at least, I for my part
26	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	wonderful
	οἶκτος -ου ὁ	pity
	εὐδαίμων	happy
	ψυχὴ -ῆς ἡ	soul
	διαλύω	I dissolve

## The Death of Socrates

- καὶ ἦν ἤδη ἔγγυς ἡλίου δυσμῶν· μετὰ δὲ τὸ λουτρόν ὁ Σωκράτης ἐκάθιζε, μετὰ τῶν φίλων λέγων. καὶ ὁ τῶν ἑνδεκα ὑπηρετῆς εἰσελθὼν εἶπεν, "ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐ καταγνώσομαι σου ὥσπερ τῶν ἄλλων καταγιγνώσκω, διότι ὀργίζονται ἐπεὶ κελεύω αὐτοὺς πίνειν τὸ φάρμακον,  
 5 τῶν ἀρχόντων ἀναγκαζόντων. σὺ δὲ γενναϊότατός τε καὶ ἄριστος εἶ πάντων τῶν δεῦρο ἐλθόντων. καὶ οὐκ ἐμοὶ ὀργίζη, ἀλλὰ τοῖς αἰτίοις. νῦν δὲ χαῖρε, καὶ ἀνδρείως πρᾶσσε τὰ ἀναγκαῖα." ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης, "καὶ σύ," ἔφη. "χαῖρε· ἐγὼ δὲ ταῦτα πράξω." καὶ ὁ ὑπηρετῆς δακρῶν ἐξῆλθεν. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τοῖς φίλοις, "ὥς ἄστειος," ἔφη, "ὁ ἄνθρωπος. ἀλλ', ὦ  
 10 Κρίτων, πείσομαι αὐτῷ. κέλευε οὖν τινα τὸ φάρμακον φέρειν, εἰ ἐτοῖμον ἐστίν." ὁ δὲ Κρίτων, "πολλοί," ἔφη, "τοὺς τοῦ ὑπρέτου λόγους ἀκούσαντες μετὰ τῶν φίλων ἐσθίουσί τε καὶ πίνουσι· μὴ οὖν σπεῦδε." ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης ἀπεκρίνατο τάδε· "οὔτοι μὲν δικαίως πράσσουσιν· ἐγὼ δ' οὐκ ἐθέλω σφῆξιν τὸν ἐμὸν βίον."  
 15 ὁ δὲ Κρίτων ἐκέλευσε παῖδά τινα παρόντα· καὶ ὁ παῖς ἐπανήλθεν ἄγων τὸν τὸ φάρμακον ἔχοντα, ἐν κύλικι φερόμενον. ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης, ἐπεὶ εἶδε τὸν ἄνθρωπον, "ὦ ἀγαθέ," ἔφη, "πῶς πράξω τὰ κελευσθέντα; σὺ γὰρ ἐμπειρος εἶ." "πιὼν περιβάδιζε· τῶν δ' ἄρθρων βαρυνομένων, κατακλίνου." καὶ τὴν κύλικα παρέσχεν· ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης οὐδαμῶς φοβούμενος ἐδέξατο.

	δυσμαί -ων αἱ	setting
	λουτρόν -ου τό	bath
	οἱ ἑνδεκα	the Eleven ( <i>board of magistrates in charge of prisons</i> )
	ὑπηρετῆς -ου ὁ	servant
3	καταγιγνώσκω <i>fut</i> καταγνώσομαι	I condemn (+ <i>gen</i> )
	ὥσπερ	as, in the same way that
	φάρμακον -ου τό	poison
	γενναῖος -α -ον	noble
	ἄριστος -η -ον	best
6	δεῦρο	here, to this place
	αἷτιος -α -ον	responsible, to blame
	χαῖρε	farewell!
	ἀναγκαῖος -α -ον	necessary, unavoidable
	ὥς	( <i>here</i> ) how ... !
9	ἄστειος -α -ον	civilised
	Κρίτων -ωνος ὁ	Crito ( <i>friend of Socrates, handling arrangements</i> )
	μὴ	( <i>with imperative</i> ) do not ... !
	σπεῦδε	I hurry
	ἐπανερχομαι ἐπανήλθον	I return
16	κύλιξ -ικος ἡ	cup
	ἐμπειρος -ον	experienced
	περιβάδιζω	I walk around
	ἄρθρον -ου τό	limb
	βαρύνομαι	I become heavy
18	κατακλίνομαι	I lie down
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way

- 20 "ἄρα ἔξεστιν," ἔφη, "τοῖς θεοῖς ἐκ τῆς κύλικος σπένδειν;" ὁ δ' ἄνθρωπος ἀπεκρίνατο, "ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐ περίεστι φάρμακον γὰρ παρασκευάζομεν ὁ ἱκανὸν ἐστὶ πίνειν." "μανθάνω," ἔφη, "ἀλλὰ τοῖς θεοῖς εὐχομαι ὁδὸν ἀγαθὴν ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς ἐκεῖσε ἔχειν." ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν ἐξέπιε τὸ φάρμακον.
- καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ἡμῶν οὐκέτι οἰοί τ' ἦσαν τὰ δάκρυα κατέχειν. ὁ δὲ
- 25 Σωκράτης ἐκέλευσεν ἡμᾶς ἡσυχάζειν. "διὰ ταῦτα γάρ, ὦ φίλοι," ἔφη, "τὴν γυναῖκα πρότερον ἀπέπεμψα. ἀλλ' ἀνδρεῖοι ὄντες ἡσυχάζετε." καὶ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἀκούσαντες αἰσχύνην ἐπάθομεν. ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης περιεβάδιζεν ἕως τὰ ἄρθρα ἐβαρύνθη· ἔπειτα δὲ κατεκλίνετο. καὶ ὁ ἄνθρωπος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς πόδας, ἔπειτα δὲ τὰς κνήμας ἐπίεσεν. ὁ μὲντοι Σωκράτης οὐδὲν ἔπαθεν·
- 30 εἶπε δὲ τοὺς τελευταίους λόγους. "ὦ Κρίτων," ἔφη, "τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ ὀφείλομεν ἀλεκτρυόνα· θύε μοι τοῦτον." "ταῦτα ἔσται," ἔφη ὁ Κρίτων, "ἄρα ἐθέλεις ἄλλο τι λέγειν;" ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἀπεκρίνατο. καὶ ὁ Κρίτων συνέλαβε τὸ τε στόμα καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς. ἦδε ἡ τελευτή, ὃν Ἐχέκρατες, τοῦ ἡμετέρου φίλου ἐγένετο, ἀνδρὸς ἐκ πάντων ἀρίστου καὶ
- 35 σοφωτάτου καὶ δικαιοτάτου.
- |    |                      |   |
|----|----------------------|---|
|    | ἔξεστι(ν)            | it is possible  |
|    | σπένδω               | I pour a libation   |
|    | περίεστι             | there is a surplus  |
|    | ἱκανός -ή -όν        | sufficient  |
| 22 | εὐχομαι              | I pray  |
|    | ἐκεῖσε               | to there, to that place ( <i>here implying</i> the next world)  |
|    | ἐκπίνω ἐξέπιον       | I drink up, I drink all of  |
|    | κατέχω               | I restrain  |
|    | ἡσυχάζω              | I am quiet  |
| 27 | αἰσχύνη -ης ή        | shame   |
|    | περιβαδίζω           | I walk around   |
|    | ἕως                  | until   |
|    | ἄρθρον -ου τό        | limb  |
|    | βαρύνομαι ἐβαρύνθη   | I become heavy  |
| 28 | κατακλίνομαι         | I lie down  |
|    | κνήμη -ης ή          | shin  |
|    | πιέζω ἐπίεσα         | I press   |
|    | τελευταῖος -α -ον    | final   |
|    | Ἀσκληπιός -ου ὁ      | Asclepius ( <i>god of medicine: whilst showing his piety, Socrates also implies that death cures the ills of life</i> ) |
| 30 | ὀφείλω               | I owe   |
|    | ἀλεκτρυών -όνος ὁ    | cock, cockerel  |
|    | θύω                  | I sacrifice   |
|    | συλλαμβάνω συνέλαβον | I close   |
| 33 | στόμα -ατος τό       | mouth   |
|    | τελευτή -ης ή        | end   |
|    | ἄριστος -η -ον       | best  |

Note from these last two passages the use of ἕως which (according to context) means *while* or *until*:

οὐδείς θανάτῳ κολάζεται ἕως τὸ πλοῖον ἀπεστίν.  
No-one is punished with death while the ship is away.

ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης περιεβάδιζεν ἕως τὰ ἄρθρα ἐβαρύνθη.  
Socrates walked around until his limbs became heavy.



## Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 8

αἰσθάνομαι ἡσθόμην	I perceive
ἀποκρίνομαι ἀπεκρινάμην	I answer, I reply
ἄριστος -η -ον	best, very good
ἀρχή -ης ἡ	rule, empire; beginning
ἄρχω ἡρξα	I rule (+ <i>gen</i> )
ἄρχομαι ἡρξάμην	I begin
βία -ας ἡ	force, violence
βούλομαι <i>imperfect</i> ἐβουλόμην	I wish, I want
γε	at least, at any rate
γίγνομαι ἐγενόμην	I become, I happen
γλῶσσα -ης ἡ	tongue; language
δέχομαι ἐδεξάμην	I receive
ἐαυτόν ἐαυτήν ἐαυτό	himself, herself, itself ( <i>reflexive</i> )
<i>pl</i> ἐαυτούς ἐαυτάς ἐαυτά	themselves ( <i>reflexive</i> )
εἶμι	I shall go
<i>infinitive</i> ἰέναι	to go
<i>participle</i> ἰών ἰοῦσα ἰόν (ἰοντ-)	going
ἐλπίζω ἤλπισα	I hope (+ <i>fut inf</i> )
ἐμαυτόν ἐμαυτήν	myself
<i>pl</i> ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ourselves ( <i>reflexive</i> )
ἐπομαι ἐσπόμην	I follow (+ <i>dat</i> )
ἐρχομαι ( <i>fut</i> εἶμι) ἤλθον	I come, I go
ἕως	while; until
ἤ ... ἢ	either ... or
ἡγεμών -όνης ὁ	leader
ἤδη	already
θύω ἔθυσα	I sacrifice
κόπτω ἔκοψα	I cut; I knock
λάθρα	secretly
μάχομαι ἐμαχεσάμην	I fight
μέλλω	I am about to, I intend to (+ <i>fut inf</i> )
ὀργίζομαι ὠργίσθην	I get angry
ὅτι	that
οὐ μόνον ... ἀλλὰ καί	not only ... but also
οὐδέποτε	never
οὔτε ... οὔτε	neither ... nor
παύομαι ἐπαυσάμην	I cease, I stop myself
πειθομαι ἐπιθόμην	I obey (+ <i>dat</i> )
πορεύομαι ἐπορεύθην	I march
προσβάλλω προσέβαλον	I attack (+ <i>dat</i> )
πυνθάνομαι ἐπυθόμην	I enquire; I learn by enquiry
σεαυτόν σεαυτήν	yourself ( <i>reflexive</i> )
<i>pl</i> ὑμᾶς αὐτούς, ὑμᾶς αὐτάς	yourselves ( <i>reflexive</i> )
στρατιά -ᾶς ἡ	army

συμφορά -ᾶς ἡ

τότε

τύχη -ῆς ἡ

ὑστερον

φαίνομαι *imperf* ἐφαινόμην

χειμών -ῶνος ὁ

(45 words)

disaster

then, at that time

luck (good or bad), chance

later

I appear

storm; winter

## Chapter 9

### Irregular third declension nouns (2)

Third declension nouns ending in sigma in the nominative singular usually have accusative singular in nu rather than alpha. This is in line with first and second declension nouns e.g. *τιμὴν, λόγον*. We saw in Chapter 5 that the normal third declension accusative e.g. *φύλακα* probably arose as a substitute for an unpronounceable *φύλακ-ν*. If a stem can easily add nu instead of alpha, it will. The simplest example (other nouns making further small changes, as we shall see) is:

*ἰχθύς -ύος ὁ* = fish (stem *ἰχθυ-*)

sg	nom	<i>ἰχθύς</i>
	acc	<i>ἰχθύ-ν</i>
	gen	<i>ἰχθύ-ος</i>
	dat	<i>ἰχθύ-ι</i>
pl	nom	<i>ἰχθύ-ες</i>
	acc	<i>ἰχθύ-ας</i>
	gen	<i>ἰχθύ-ων</i>
	dat	<i>ἰχθύ-σι(ν)</i>

### Third declension (3-1-3) adjectives

A common type of third declension adjective declines in a way related to this. 'Third declension' is here shorthand for 3-1-3: most third declension adjectives have a separate feminine, which is (as usual) first declension.

They are comparable to 3-1-3 participles e.g. *παύων -ουσα -ον, παύσας -ασα -αν, παυσθείς -εῖσα -έν*. You have already met in Chapter 6 one common 3-1-3 adjective: *πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν* = *all*. They differ from third declension adjectives in Latin, which are 3-3, i.e. without a separate feminine.

- These adjectives also differ slightly from *ἰχθύς*, because although the stem starts off by ending in upsilon, after the accusative it changes to epsilon.
- As with the 3-1-3 participles, the feminine adds an extra syllable, in this case *-ει-*.

3-1-3 declensions

*βραδύς* = slow

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
sg	nom	<i>βραδύς</i>	<i>βραδεῖα</i>	<i>βραδύ</i>
	acc	<i>βραδύν</i>	<i>βραδεῖαν</i>	<i>βραδύ</i>
	gen	<i>βραδέος</i>	<i>βραδεῖας</i>	<i>βραδέος</i>
	dat	<i>βραδεῖ</i>	<i>βραδεῖα</i>	<i>βραδεῖ</i>
pl	nom	<i>βραδεῖς*</i>	<i>βραδεῖαι</i>	<i>βραδέα</i>
	acc	<i>βραδεῖς</i>	<i>βραδεῖας</i>	<i>βραδέα</i>
	gen	<i>βραδέων</i>	<i>βραδειῶν</i>	<i>βραδέων</i>
	dat	<i>βραδέσι(ν)</i>	<i>βραδεῖαις</i>	<i>βραδέσι(ν)</i>

\* this is a contraction of *ε + ες* (see below), and the accusative simply follows suit (compare how in Latin third declension plurals nominative and accusative are the same)

Three common adjectives like βραδύς:

1	εὐρύς	broad, wide
2	ἡδύς	sweet, pleasant
3	ταχύς	quick, swift

- The adverbs formed from these end in -εως (notice the epsilon again), hence e.g.

βραδέως	slowly
ταχέως	quickly

The adverb ἡδέως (*lit* sweetly) often has the idiomatic meaning *gladly*.

- The regular comparative and superlative for adjectives of this type end respectively -υτερος -α -ον, -υτατος -η -ον, hence:

βραδύτερος -α -ον	slower
βραδύτατος -η -ον	slowest, very slow

However ἡδύς and ταχύς form their comparative and superlative in a different way, as we shall see in Chapter 10.

- As with any comparative and superlative, the adverb versions use respectively the neuter singular and neuter plural of the equivalent adjective, hence:

βραδύτερον	more slowly
βραδύτατα	most slowly, very slowly

#### Exercise 9.1

*Translate into English:*

- 1 καλοὶ ἰχθύες εὐρίσκονται ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ ποταμῷ, εὐρυτάτῳ ὄντι.
- 2 ὁδε ὁ ἵππος οὐδέποτε ταχύς ἔσται.
- 3 οἱ πεζοὶ βραδύτερον ἐπορεύοντο τοῦ ἡγεμόνος οὐ παρόντος.
- 4 ἡ ὁδὸς ἢ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν οὐκ εὐρεῖα ἦν.
- 5 οἱ πολέμιοι ὑμῖν ταχέως μὲν λάθρα δὲ ἔπονται.

#### Exercise 9.2

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 Is that food sweet?
- 2 Did you catch a fish in the wide river, slave?
- 3 We saw very swift horses there.
- 4 The doctor's daughter does not eat that sort of food.
- 5 The master is slowly getting angry.

that sort of = τοιοῦτος

## Mixed declension adjectives

Two extremely common adjectives start as if they were 3-1-3, but switch to 2-1-2 (like σοφός) after the accusative singular:

μέγας = great, big (stem for 2-1-2 parts μεγαλ-)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	μέγας	μεγάλ-η	μέγα
	<i>acc</i>	μέγαν	μεγάλ-ην	μέγα
	<i>gen</i>	μεγάλ-ου	μεγάλ-ης	μεγάλ-ου
	<i>dat</i>	μεγάλ-ω	μεγάλ-ῃ	μεγάλ-ω
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
	<i>acc</i>	μεγάλ-ους	μεγάλ-ας	μεγάλα
	<i>gen</i>	μεγάλ-ων	μεγάλ-ων	μεγάλ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	μεγάλ-οις	μεγάλ-αῖς	μεγάλ-οις

This mostly behaves as if it had started μέγας: the masculine vocative is μέγαλε.

We have already met (in Chapter 4) its irregular superlative μέγιστος -η -ον = *greatest, very great*.

Similarly:

πολύς = much, *pl* many (stem for 2-1-2 parts πολλ-)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	πολύς	πολλ-ή	πολύ
	<i>acc</i>	πολύν	πολλ-ήν	πολύ
	<i>gen</i>	πολλ-οῦ	πολλ-ῆς	πολλ-οῦ
	<i>dat</i>	πολλ-ῶ	πολλ-ῇ	πολλ-ῶ
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	πολλοί	πολλοί	πολλοί
	<i>acc</i>	πολλοί	πολλοί	πολλοί
	<i>gen</i>	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	πολλοῖς	πολλοῖς	πολλοῖς

Here you can see clearly that the masculine could have continued like βαρύς, or like ἰχθύς, whereas in fact it mostly behaves as if it had started πολλός, πολλόν (forms actually found in some early authors and in some Greek dialects). Note that the initial third declension parts of the masculine and neuter have single lambda, the 2-1-2 parts double. We have already met (in Chapter 5) the plural, which is completely regular 2-1-2.

### Exercise 9.3

*Translate into English:*

- 1 πολλοὶ τούτων τῶν ἰχθύων οὐ μεγάλοι εἰσίν.
- 2 πολὺν χρόνον ἐμένομεν, τῆς ὁδοῦ βραδείας οὕσης.
- 3 δῶρα πολλὰ καὶ τιμὴν πολλὴν ἐδεξάμεθα.
- 4 οἱ πολέμοι ἐν τῷ μεγάλῳ λιμένι ἐμάχοντο.
- 5 οἱ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ πολλοῖς λόγοις τέλος ἐπέισθησαν.

## Exercise 9.4

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 A big house and many trees were on the island.
- 2 The old man received much food.
- 3 Many horses are slower than that one.
- 4 The general's wife sent many letters to the prisoners of war.
- 5 The swift messenger marched towards the harbour.

## Revision checkpoint

*Make sure you know:*

- irregular third declension noun ἰχθύς
- third declension (3-1-3) adjectives like βραδύς
- mixed declension adjectives μέγας, πολύς

## Verbs with epsilon contraction

We saw in Chapter 1 that there is just one main conjugation in Greek. However if the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel blends into the vowel of the ending. The commonest verbs of this type end in -εω = *I like, I love*. (They are roughly similar to second conjugation verbs in Latin, e.g. *monéo*.) We have already seen occasional examples of contraction - this process whereby adjacent vowels blend - e.g. βαρεῖς for βαρε-ες as the masculine nominative plural of βαρύς. It is important to memorise the rules for such contractions and apply them (rather than laboriously learning every example). For contraction with epsilon the rules are:

ε followed by ε becomes ει

ε followed by ο becomes ου

ε followed by a long vowel or diphthong disappears

Hence:

φιλέω = *I like, I love*

<i>present active:</i>			<i>present middle/passive:</i>		
sg	1	φιλῶ [φιλε-ω]	φιλοῦμαι	[φιλε-ομαι]	
	2	φιλεῖς [φιλε-εις]	φιλεῖ (or -εῖ)	[φιλε-η (or -ει)]	
	3	φιλεῖ [φιλε-ει]	φιλεῖται	[φιλε-εται]	
pl	1	φιλοῦμεν [φιλε-ομεν]	φιλούμεθα	[φιλε-ομεθα]	
	2	φιλεῖτε [φιλε-ετε]	φιλεῖσθε	[φιλε-εσθε]	
	3	φιλοῦσι(ν) [φιλε-ουσι(ν)]	φιλοῦνται	[φιλε-ονται]	
<i>participle:</i>			<i>participle:</i>		
φιλῶν -οῦσα -οῦν (stem φιλουντ-) [φιλε-ων -ουσα -ον (φιλε-οντ-)]			φιλούμενος -η -ον [φιλε-ομενος -η -ον]		
<i>infinitive:</i>			<i>infinitive:</i>		
φιλεῖν [φιλε-ειν]			φιλεῖσθαι [φιλε-εσθαι]		

		<i>imperfect active:</i>		<i>imperfect middle/passive:</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	ἐφίλουν [ἐφιλε-ον]		ἐφιλούμην [ἐφιλε-ομην]
	2	ἐφίλεις [ἐφιλε-ες]		ἐφιλοῦ [ἐφιλε-ου]
	3	ἐφίλει [ἐφιλε-ε]		ἐφιλεῖτο [ἐφιλε-ετο]
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐφιλοῦμεν [ἐφιλε-ομεν]		ἐφιλούμεθα [ἐφιλε-ομεθα]
	2	ἐφιλείτε [ἐφιλε-ετε]		ἐφιλείσθε [ἐφιλε-εσθε]
	3	ἐφίλουν [ἐφιλε-ον]		ἐφιλοῦντο [ἐφιλε-οντο]

For the (first/weak) aorist and future of these verbs, the epsilon is lengthened to eta before adding the sigma, but the endings after the sigma are normal (as it has inserted a barrier, so contraction does not take place). Hence:

<i>aorist</i>	<i>active</i>	ἐφίλησα
	<i>middle</i>	ἐφιλησάμην
	<i>passive</i>	ἐφιλήθην
<i>future</i>	<i>active</i>	φιλῆσω
	<i>middle</i>	φιλήσομαι
	<i>passive</i>	φιληθήσομαι

- Note that the singular imperative is φίλει (φιλε-ε), distinguished by the accent from the third person singular φιλεῖ (φιλε-ει): this is an important example of accent affecting meaning. The plural imperative is φιλείτε (like the ordinary second person plural, as with non-contracted verbs).
- It is conventional to quote these verbs in uncontracted form in a wordlist or dictionary (to make the formation clear), but to write them with the contraction in a sentence or passage.

Seven common verbs with epsilon contraction -

Six active:

1	ἀδικέω	I act unjustly (towards)
2	αἰτέω	I ask for <i>often with double acc</i> : ask someone ( <i>acc</i> ) for something ( <i>acc</i> )
3	ἀναχωρέω	I retreat
4	βοηθέω	I (run to) help (+ <i>dat</i> ) <i>lit</i> rush (θέω) in response to a shout (βοή)
5	μισέω	I hate
6	ποιέω	I make, I do

And one deponent:

7	φοβέομαι	I fear, I am afraid (of)
---	----------	--------------------------

## The augment and verbs beginning with a vowel

We have seen numerous examples already of what happens when the augment is added to a verb beginning with a vowel (e.g. ἀγγέλλω, imperfect ἡγγέλλον). This seems similar to contraction, but is really a lengthening of the existing vowel. It should be noted however that:

- alpha lengthens to eta, rather than to long alpha (as in the example above)
- epsilon normally also lengthens to eta (e.g. ἐθέλω, imperfect ἤθελον), but in a few cases *does* follow the epsilon contraction rule, producing ει (e.g. ἔχω, imperfect εἶχον)

This list shows the effect of adding the augment to verbs starting with vowels/diphthongs:

<i>original vowel</i>	<i>result after augment added</i>
α	η
α, αι, ει	ῃ
αυ, ευ	ῃυ
ε	η, or sometimes ει
ι	ι (pronounced long)
ο	ω
οι	ῶ
υ	υ (pronounced long)

#### Exercise 9.5

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ Σωκράτης οὐδέποτε ἡδίκησε τοὺς πολίτας.
- 2 οἱ αἰχμαλῶτοι ἤτησαν τὸν στρατηγὸν σῖτόν τε καὶ ὕδωρ.
- 3 τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον ποιήσαντες;
- 4 αἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ βοηθήσουσι τοῖς ἀναχώρουσιν.
- 5 φίλει τοὺς τὴν δικαιοσύνην φιλοῦντας, ᾧ παῖ.

#### Exercise 9.6

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The slaves asked the doctor for food.
- 2 The girls, after helping the old man, ran to the house.
- 3 The wealthy are hated by these citizens.
- 4 That slave is being treated unjustly by his master.
- 5 Were you retreating after the battle, allies?

### Background: Greek Myth (1)

The story of Socrates' imprisonment in Chapter 8 (where the mission of the Athenian sacred ship to Delos commemorated the triumph of Theseus) showed that traditional myths were highly influential in fifth-century Athens: religious ceremonies, festivals, and customs constantly alluded to events believed to have taken place in the Heroic Age - in historical terms, the Bronze Age (roughly 1000 years before the lifetime of Socrates). Greeks were familiar with their myths from childhood. As the story of Antigone showed, myth formed the normal subject matter for serious drama or 'tragedy' (though not every play necessarily had an unhappy ending). Because audiences would know the story, at least in outline, originality for a dramatist consisted of subtle variation on a familiar theme. Suspense was a matter not of surprise about the turn of events, but of waiting to see just how and when the inevitable would happen. The sense of events as 'fated' was no doubt helped by the simple fact of the audience already knowing how the story 'had to end'. Myths became traditional, achieved their status as myths, because they possessed some universal significance or enduring quality: they spoke across time, dealing with recurrent human dilemmas. Through myth, tragedy was able to confront issues highly relevant to the city (like the nature of justice, the tug of duties between public and private life), but in a distanced, generalised way. (Comedy in contrast - as we saw in Chapter 7 with the treatment of Socrates by Aristophanes in *Clouds* - was normally set in the present, and used a made-up story, though often involving real people.)

Some myths are undoubtedly romanticised versions of historical events. Most though not all historians would put the stories of the Trojan War in this category. Other myths are better explained as completely



fictitious, but 'true' in the sense that they fulfil wishes, or confront fears, which we all recognise. They may be folk tales (simple adventure stories, with elements of ingenious trickery and magic: much of the *Odyssey* comes under this heading), or darker psychological parables (like the story of Antigone's father Oedipus). These categories however are fluid. Whatever their origin, Greek myths have recurrent elements: the interaction of men and gods (in a time when this was possible, when men were of a nobler stamp than subsequently), and recurrent story patterns - in particular that of the Quest (for a treasure, a bride, a homecoming, knowledge). Long and difficult journeys have to be undertaken, monsters killed, and the tricks of enemies thwarted: only then can the hero win his reward. In this chapter we shall read several stories in which you can identify these elements. So influential were the story patterns of myth that, as we shall see in Chapter 10, Greek authors such as the historian Herodotus applied them also to more recent events; and Plato (as we saw in the stories of the Cave and the Magic Ring) in effect made up his own myths as a powerful means of getting his philosophical message across.

We look first at the story of Theseus. This seems to reflect a time even earlier than that of most myths, when the island of Crete was the dominant force in the Greek world (a period archaeologists call Minoan, after the mythical king Minos). Somewhere around 1500 BC power passed from Crete to the Greek mainland city of Mycenae, which in due course became the context for the Trojan War stories.

## Exercise 9.7

### Theseus and the Minotaur (1)

*Aegeus (king of Athens) becomes the enemy of Minos (king of Crete) with dire consequences, but later meets the girl who will bear him a son. Theseus is born, and a challenge laid down.*

ὁ Αἰγεὺς βασιλεὺς τῶν Ἀθηνῶν πάλαι ἦν· ἅμα δ' ἤρχετο τῆς Κρήτης ὁ Μίνως, μεγίστην ἀρχὴν τῶν τότε ἔχων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Αἰγεὺς ἐφόνευσεν ἕνα τῶν Μίνως υἱῶν, ὁ τῆς Κρήτης βασιλεὺς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους δίκην ἤτησεν. οἱ δὲ πρῶτον μὲν οὐκ ἤθελον, ὕστερον δὲ (τοῦ Μίνως νίκην ἐν πολέμῳ 5 ἔχοντος) ἐτοῖμοι ἦσαν τὰ κελευσθέντα ποιεῖν. ὁ δὲ Μίνως ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς κατ' ἔτος πέμπειν τῷ Μινωταύρῳ ἑπτὰ τε νεανίας καὶ ἑπτὰ κόρας.

ὁ δὲ Μινώταυρος θηρίον δεινότατον ἦν, τὸ μὲν ἥμισυ ἄνθρωπος, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ ταῦρος. ἡ γὰρ τοῦ Μίνως γυνή, Πασιφάη ὀνόματι, δεινὸν ἔρωτα ταύρου τινὸς εἶχεν. καὶ τὸν ταῦρον φιλήσασα τὸν Μινώταυρον ἔτεκεν.

	Αἰγεὺς ὁ	Aegeus
	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
	ἅμα	at the same time
	Κρήτη -ης ἡ	Crete
2	Μίνως -ως ὁ	Minos
	φονεύω ἐφόνευσεν	I murder, I kill
	δίκη -ης ἡ	justice, satisfaction
	οἱ δέ	but they (see note at the end of this passage)
	κατ' (= κατὰ) ἔτος	each year
6	Μινώταυρος -ου ὁ	Minotaur
	θηρίον -ου τό	beast, monster
	ἥμισυ	half
	ταῦρος -ου ὁ	bull
	Πασιφάη -ης ἡ	Pasiphae
8	ἔρως -ωτος ὁ	passion, lust (for, + gen)
	τίκτω ἔτεκεν	I give birth to

10 ὁ δὲ Μίνως δικαίως ὀργισθεὶς ἐβούλετο κρύπτειν τὸ θηρίον. ὁ οὖν Δαίδαλος, δημιουργὸς σοφώτατος ὢν, τὸν λαβύρινθον ἐποίησεν, ἐν ᾧ ὁ Μινώταυρος διῆγεν, τοὺς εἰσελθόντας ἐσθίων.

ὁ δ' Αἰγεὺς πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἡθύμει διότι οὐκ ἦν υἱὸς αὐτῷ. ἔπειτα δ' ἀποδημῶν πρὸς τὴν Τροιζήνᾳ ποτε προσήλθεν· καὶ ἐκεῖ ὁ Πιτθεὺς βασιλεὺς ἦν. ὁ δ' Αἰγεὺς ἐφίλησε τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ, Αἶθραν ὀνόματι· καὶ αὕτη παῖδα ἔτεκεν. ὁ μὲντοι Αἰγεὺς, διότι ἐχθροὶ αὐτῷ πανταχοῦ ἦσαν, οὐκέτι ἠθέλεν ἐν τῇ Τροιζήνῃ μένειν. ὁ μὲν οὖν παῖς, Θησεὺς ὀνόματι, μετὰ τῆς τε μητρὸς καὶ τοῦ πάππου ἔκει ἐλείφθη. ὁ δ' Αἰγεὺς ξίφος τε καὶ ἐέδιλα ὑπὸ πέτρῳ ἔκρυπεν. "ἐπεὶ ὁ Θησεύς," ἔφη, "οἷός τ' ἔσται τὸν λίθον κινήσας ταῦτα λαμβάνειν, γινώσεται τὸ τοῦ πατρὸς ὄνομα." ἔπειτα δὲ πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἐπανήλθεν ὁ Αἰγεὺς.

	θηρίον -ου τό	beast, monster
	Δαίδαλος -ου ὁ	Daedalus
	δημιουργός -ου ὁ	inventor, craftsman
	λαβύρινθος -ου ὁ	labyrinth
12	διάγω	I live
	ἀθυμέω	I am miserable
	ἀποδημέω	I travel, I am away from home
	Τροιζήν -ήνος ἡ	Troezen ( <i>city in southern Greece</i> )
	Πιτθεὺς ὁ	Pittheus
15	Αἶθρα -ας ἡ	Aethra
	τίκτω ἔτεκον	I give birth to
	πανταχοῦ	everywhere
	Θησεύς ὁ	Theseus
	πάππος -ου ὁ	grandfather
19	ξίφος -ους τό*	sword
	πέδιλα -ων τά	sandals
	πέτρος -ου ὁ	rock
	κινέω ἐκίνησα	I move
	ἐπανερχομαι ἐπανήλθον	I return

\*this type of neuter third declension noun with epsilon contraction is explained below

## Article marking change of subject

From the passage above note the important idiom whereby the nominative definite article followed by δέ starts a new sentence, marking a change of subject to someone who was in the previous sentence (or clause before semi-colon) in a different case:

ὁ τῆς Κρήτης βασιλεὺς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους δίκην ᾗτησεν. οἱ δὲ πρῶτον μὲν οὐκ ἠθέλον ...

The king of Crete asked the Athenians for justice. But they at first were unwilling ...

The article is translated *he, she, they* - and δέ *and* or *but* - as appropriate. This idiom is a survival of the use of the article as a pronoun which was common in earlier Greek. (You need, as usual, to *look ahead* to distinguish this idiom from the article simply with a new noun.)

## Adjectives with epsilon contraction

Contraction resulting from an epsilon stem joining an ending whose first letter is a vowel affects some nouns and adjectives, as well as verbs. Contracted third declension adjectives such as ἀληθής = *true* are fairly common (but unusual in being 3-3 rather than 3-1-3, i.e. having no separate feminine - unlike the βαρύς type, but like third declension adjectives in Latin).

ἀληθής = *true*

		<i>masculine/feminine</i>		<i>neuter</i>	
sg	nom	ἀληθής		ἀληθές	
	acc	ἀληθῆ	[ε-α]	ἀληθές	
	gen	ἀληθοῦς	[ε-ος]	ἀληθοῦς	[ε-ος]
	dat	ἀληθεῖ	[ε-ι]	ἀληθεῖ	[ε-ι]
pl	nom	ἀληθεῖς	[ε-ες]	ἀληθῆ	[ε-α]
	acc	ἀληθεῖς	[ε-ας*]	ἀληθῆ	[ε-α]
	gen	ἀληθῶν	[ε-ων]	ἀληθῶν	[ε-ων]
	dat	ἀληθέσι(ν)		ἀληθέσι(ν)	

\* but (as with βαρύς) the acc plural follows the nominative instead of producing its own contraction

Four common adjectives with epsilon contraction:

1	ἀσθενής	weak
2	ἀσφαλής	safe
3	δυστυχής	unlucky, unfortunate
4	εὐτυχής	lucky, fortunate

• The adverbs formed from these end as usual in -ῶς (the accent showing the contraction), hence e.g.

ἀληθῶς                      truly

• The comparative and superlative of these adjectives end respectively -εστερος -α -ον, -εστατος -η -ον, hence e.g.

ἀληθέστερος -α -ον      truer  
ἀληθέστατος -η -ον      truest, very true

## Compound adjectives and privative alpha

• A few second declension adjectives are 2-2 rather than 2-1-2, i.e. without a separate feminine. These are normally compounds (i.e. the stem has a prefix, or has more than one element: compare compound *verbs* such as ἀποβάλλω). An example in the GCSE vocabulary is:

ἄδικος -ον                      unjust

The initial alpha here means *not* or *-un* and is called *privative* (it *deprives* the word of its normal meaning: compare δίκαιος). The 3-3 adjectives with epsilon contraction discussed above are also compounds: ἀσθενής and ἀληθής mean in origin *not strong* and *not deceptive*, whilst δυστυχής and εὐτυχής mean respectively *badly* and *well* supplied with luck, τύχη. The privative alpha also occurs as a verb prefix: we have just met ἄδικέω = *I do wrong (to), I injure*.

## Nouns with epsilon contraction

There is a group of common third declension neuter nouns with epsilon contraction such as γένος = *race, nation, type, kind*. These need particular care to avoid confusion with second declension nouns like λόγος (compare how in Latin nouns such as *corpus, genus* - the same word as in Greek - and *opus* are third declension neuter, not second declension masculine like *servus*).

γένος -ους τό = race, family, kind

sg	nom	γένος	
	acc	γένος	
	gen	γένους	[ε-ος]
	dat	γένει	[ει]
pl	nom	γένη	[ε-α]
	acc	γένη	[ε-α]
	gen	γενών	[ε-ων]
	dat	γένεσι(ν)	

The genitive singular must of course be distinguished from the accusative plural of a noun like λόγος, and the nominative and accusative plural from a first declension nominative singular like τιμή. As always, the definite article serves as a useful marker.

Four common nouns like γένος:

1	ἔτος	year
2	ξίφος	sword
3	ὄρος	mountain
4	τείχος	wall

There are also a few masculine and feminine third declension nouns with epsilon contraction, though none are included in GCSE. But we have met the proper name *Socrates*:

sg	nom	Σωκράτης*	
	acc	Σωκράτη	[ε-α]
	gen	Σωκράτους	[ε-ος]
	dat	Σωκράτει	[ε-ι]
		*vocative Σώκρατες	

These must be distinguished from first declension masculine nouns like κριτής -οῦ (a few proper names - e.g. Ξέρξης [the Persian king Xerxes] - do go like κριτής).

### Exercise 9.8

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἄρα οἱ τοῦ Σωκράτους λόγοι ἀεὶ ἀληθεῖς ἦσαν;
- 2 τί γένος ἐνθάδε εὐρεθήσεται;
- 3 ὁ παῖς τὸν ἵππον ξίφει ἔλυσεν.
- 4 τῶν τειχῶν ἰσχυρῶν ὄντων, ἀσφαλεῖς ἐκεῖ ἐσόμεθα.
- 5 οὐδεμία οἰκία ἐστὶ τῷ δυστυχεῖ γέροντι.

- 6 ἡ ἡμετέρα στρατιὰ πολλὰ ἔτη ἀσθενέστατη ἦν.  
 7 αἱ γυναῖκες εὐτυχέστερον ἔπρασσον ἢ οἱ ἄνδρες.  
 8 ὁ παῖς καίπερ ἀσθενὴς ὢν μόνος ἐφύλασσε τὸ τεῖχισμα.  
 9 πολλὰ ὄρη τοὺς ἀναχωροῦντας κωλύσει.  
 10 ἄρα ἡ τῶν βαρβάρων γλῶσσα ἡδεῖα ἐστίν;

### Exercise 9.9

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 I am fortunate because I like the food here.  
 2 That tribe was being treated unjustly for many years.  
 3 We admired both the sea and the mountains.  
 4 The unjust do not love peace.  
 5 Did you run to help the unfortunate slave?

### Revision checkpoint

*Make sure you know:*

- verbs with epsilon contraction (φιλέω)
- adjectives with epsilon contraction (ἀληθής)
- compound adjectives (2-2 ἄδικος) and privative alpha
- nouns with epsilon contraction (γένος)

### Exercise 9.10

#### Theseus and the Minotaur (2)

- τῷ δὲ ἕκτῳ καὶ δεκάτῳ ἔτει ἡ Αἰθρα τὸν Θησέα, νεανίαν ἰσχυρὸν ἤδη γενόμενον, πρὸς τὸν πέτρον ἤγαγεν. ὁ δέ, τοῦτον κίνησας καὶ τὰ περὶ τοῦ πατρὸς μαθὼν, ἐκ τῆς Τροιζήνης ἐξήλθεν, οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἔχων ἢ ξίφος καὶ ἱμάτιον. ἡ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὁρῶν ὁδὸς μακρὰ ἦν καὶ χαλεπώτατη. οἱ γὰρ ἐκεῖ
- 5 πολλὰ ἔτη κακῶς ἐποίουν τοὺς ὁδοιπόρους. ὁ μὲντοι Θησεὺς πολλοὺς τε κλέπτας καὶ πολλὰ θηρία ἀποκτείνας πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀσφαλῶς προσήλθεν. πολλὰ οὖν περὶ τοῦτου τοῦ νεανίου ἠγγέλθη ὥς τὰ θηρία ἀποκτείναντος. ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς τὸ ὄνομα ἑαυτοῦ ἐκρυσεν· ἐβούλετο γὰρ πρῶτον τὰ ἐκεῖ πράγματα γινώσκειν.

	ἕκτος καὶ δέκατος	sixteenth
	Αἰθρα -ας ἡ	Aethra
	Θησεύς -έως ἡ	Theseus
	πέτρος -ου ὁ	rock
2	κινέω ἐκίνησα	I move
	Τροιζήν -ήνος ἡ	Troezen
	ἱμάτιον -ου τό	cloak
	κακῶς ποιέω	I treat badly
	ὁδοιπόρος -ου ὁ	traveller
6	κλέπτῃς -ου ὁ	robber
	θηρίον -ου τό	wild beast
	πράγματα -ων τά	affairs

- 10 ὁ οὖν Αἰγεὺς (τὸν υἱὸν οὐ γινώσκων) ἐφοβείτο αὐτὸν ὥσπερ ἐχθρὸν ὄντα. καὶ ἐκάλεσεν αὐτὸν ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, βουλόμενος φαρμάκῳ ἀποκτείνειν. τοῦ δὲ παιδὸς τὸ ξίφος ἐλκύσαντος (τὸν γὰρ σίτον ἤθελε κόπτειν), ὁ Αἰγεὺς ἀναγνώριζων αὐτὸν ἀπελάκτισε τὴν κύλικα τὴν τὸ φάρμακον ἔχουσαν. καὶ ἡδέως ἐδέξατο τὸν υἱόν.
- 15 οὗτος οὖν, τῶν τε νεανιῶν καὶ τῶν κορῶν ἤδη ἐννέα ἔτη τῷ Μινωταύρῳ πεμφθέντων, ἔπεισε τὸν πατέρα ἑαυτὸν ἐν τοῖς νεανίαις πέμπειν· "τὸν γὰρ Μινώταυρον ἀποκτείνεις," ἔφη, "σώσω ἑμαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους". ὁ οὖν Αἰγεὺς ὡμολόγησεν. ἡ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ναὺς ἰστία μέλανα εἶχεν πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην πλέουσα, ὥσπερ πρὸς θάνατον. ὁ δ' Αἰγεὺς ἐκέλευσε τὸν υἱὸν
- 20 τὴν μὲν νίκην λευκοῖς ἰστίοις φαίνειν, τὴν δὲ συμφορὰν τὰ μέλανα ἔτι ἔχοντα.
- ἐπεὶ δ' εἰς τὴν Κρήτην ἀφίκοντο, ὃ τε Θησεὺς καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς δεσμωτήριον ἤχθησαν. καὶ ἐκεῖ ἰσχυρῶς ἐφυλάσσοντο. ἡ μέντοι Ἀριάδνη, ἡ τοῦ Μίνωος θυγάτηρ, ἔπει εἶδε τὸν Θησέα ἐφίλει αὐτὸν καὶ ἐβούλετο
- 25 σῶζειν. πρὸς οὖν τὸ δεσμωτήριον τῆς νυκτὸς προσελθοῦσα τὸν Θησέα ἐκάλεσεν· "ὦ Θησεῦ, Ἀριάδνη πάρειμι· βουλόμενη σῶζειν, παρέχω σοι τοῦτο τὸ ξίφος καὶ τοῦτο τὸ λίνον. ταῦτα γὰρ ἔχων οἷός τ' ἔσῃ τὸν Μινώταυρον ἀποκτείνας ἐκ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου ἀσφαλῶς φεύγειν." ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς μάλιστα θαυμάζων τὸ τε ξίφος καὶ τὸ λίνον ἐδέξατο.
- 30 ἡμέρας δὲ γενομένης οἱ τοῦ Μίνωος δοῦλοι ἤγαγον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους πρὸς τὸν λαβυρίνθον. ὃ τε Θησεὺς καὶ οἱ ἑταῖροι ἠναγκάσθησαν εἰσιέναι. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι μάλιστα ἐφοβοῦντο, ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς ἀνδρείως προὔχρησεν ὥς τὰ τῆς Ἀριάδνης δῶρα ἔχων. τῷ μὲν γὰρ λίνῳ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγίνωσκε, καίπερ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου ποικίλου ὄντος· τῷ δὲ ξίφει τὸν
- 35 Μινώταυρον ἀπέκτεινεν. ὁ οὖν Θησεὺς καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οὕτω σωθέντες ἀπὸ τῆς Κρήτης ἔφυγον. τοὺς μέντοι τοῦ πατρὸς λόγους ἀμελῶν ὁ Θησεὺς τὰ μέλανα ἰστία μετὰ τὴν νίκην οὐκ ἥλλαξεν. ὁ οὖν Αἰγεὺς, ὥσπερ τοῦ υἱοῦ ἀποθανόντος, ἔβαλεν ἑαυτὸν εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν (ἦ μετὰ ταῦτα τὸ ὄνομα αὐτοῦ ἔχει).

	Αἰγεὺς -έως ὁ	Aegeus
	ὥσπερ	as if
	ἐπὶ	(+ acc) to
	φάρμακον -ου τό	poison
12	ἔλκω εἴλκυσα	(here) I draw (sword etc)
	ἀναγνώριζω	I recognise
	ἀπολακτίζω ἀπελάκτισα	I kick away
	κύλιξ -ικος ἡ	cup
	Μινώταυρος -ου ὁ	Minotaur
18	ὁμολογέω ὡμολόγησα	I agree
	ἰστία -ων τά	sails
	μέλας -αινα -αν	black
	Κρήτη -ης ἡ	Crete
	λευκός -ή -όν	white
23	Ἀριάδνη -ης ἡ	Ariadne

	Μίνως -ως ὁ	Minos
	λίνον -ου τό	thread
	λαβύρινθος -ου ὁ	labyrinth
	προχώρεω προὐχώρησα	I advance, I go forward
34	ποικίλος -η -ον	intricate, complex
	ἄμελέω	I forget about, I disregard
	ἀλλάσσω ἡλλαξα	I change

## Irregular epsilon verbs

- As always, you should not worry too much about minor irregularities: these and other forms can easily be checked in the list of verbs in the Reference Grammar. It is much more important to understand and be able to apply the basic principle of contraction.

Five epsilon contraction verbs involving various forms of irregularity:

1	αἶρέω*	I take
2	ἄφικνέομαι	I arrive
3	καλέω	I call, I invite
4	πλέω	I sail
5	ὑπισχνέομαι	I promise (+ fut inf, like ἐλπίζω and μέλλω - see page 62)

\* in many contexts synonymous with λαμβάνω, but αἶρέω tends to be more emphatic (meaning in origin *seize*, whereas λαμβάνω may imply only something like *get*)

- As we saw, most verbs with stems ending in epsilon lengthen this vowel to eta before adding the sigma for the future and first (weak) aorist: φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα. But καλέω keeps the epsilon (hence aorist ἐκάλεσα), and then as a further irregularity has the future καλώ (i.e. exactly like the contracted present, and distinguishable only by context) instead of the expected καλέσω.

- Most verbs with stems ending in epsilon have a first (weak) aorist. A few however have a second (strong) aorist. As with any second aorists, the aorist stem can be: telescoped from the present stem; changed a bit more; or completely unrelated. The aorist does not involve any contraction. Hence:

	present	aorist	aorist stem
<i>telescoped from present</i>	ἄφικνέομαι	ἄφικόμην	ἄφικ-
<i>changed a bit more</i>	ὑπισχνέομαι	ὑπεσχόμην	ὑποσχ-
<i>completely unrelated</i>	αἶρέω	εἶλον	έλ-

Like many highly irregular forms, the aorist of αἶρέω quickly becomes familiar because it is very common.

- Finally, when a stem with epsilon is only one syllable long, the verb contracts only when the added ending begins with epsilon. Hence:

sg	1	πλέω	I sail
	2	πλεῖς [ε-εις]	you (sg) sail
	3	πλεῖ [ε-ει]	he/she/it sails
pl	1	πλέονμεν	we sail
	2	πλεῖτε [ε-ετε]	you (pl) sail
	3	πλέονσι(ν)	they sail
<i>infinitive</i>		πλεῖν	
<i>participle</i>		πλέων -ουσα -ον (stem πλεοντ-)	
<i>aorist</i>		ἔπλευσα	

- Here are the five slightly irregular epsilon verbs again, each with its aorist to illustrate the type of irregularity involved, and aorist stem (as seen e.g. in the participle):

	<i>present</i>		<i>aorist</i>	<i>(aorist stem)</i>
1	αἶρέω	I take	εἶλον	(ἐλ-)
2	ἄφικνέομαι	I arrive	ἄφικόμεν	(ἄφικ-)
3	καλέω	I call, I invite	ἐκάλεσα	(καλεσ-)
4	πλέω	I sail	ἔπλευσα	(πλευσ-)
5	ὑπισχνέομαι	I promise (+ <i>fut inf</i> )	ὑπεσχόμεν	(ὑποσχ-)

## Futures with epsilon contraction

- Most verbs form their future by adding sigma to the present stem, then using the primary active endings. We saw in Chapter 8 one sort of variant: verbs that become middle/deponent in the future (with no distinction of meaning), e.g. ἀκούω, *fut* ἀκούσομαι.
- Another variant is seen in a group of verbs which, although they do not have an epsilon on the present stem, form their future like the present of an epsilon verb (and without the sigma of a normal future: they add epsilon instead of sigma). These verbs include some deponents. Common examples (here showing the future in the contracted form in which it would occur in a sentence or passage) are:

<i>present</i>	<i>future</i>
ἀγγέλλω	ἀγγεῶ ( <i>circumflex accent shows contraction</i> )
ἀποθνήσκω	ἀποθανοῦμαι*
ἀποκρίνομαι	ἀποκρινοῦμαι
ἀποκτείνω	ἀποκτενῶ
βάλλω	βαλῶ
διαφθείρω	διαφθερῶ
λέγω	ἐρῶ ( <i>alternative to λέξω</i> )
μάχομαι	μαχοῦμαι
μένω	μενῶ
ὀργίζομαι	ὀργιοῦμαι
πίπτω	πεσοῦμαι*
τρέχω	δραμοῦμαι*
φαίνομαι	φανοῦμαι

\* these futures are doubly unusual: they change to a middle/deponent form *and* use an epsilon form

## Background: Greek Myth (2)

Myths often deal with thought patterns or anxieties deeply rooted in human beings, but which in modern societies may be cloaked by the veneer of civilisation or argued away by a scientific outlook keen to avoid the taint of superstition. A good example is 'sympathetic magic': a mysterious connection between two apparently separate things, in particular the idea that a person's wellbeing is bound up with some object or action. This is familiar to us in Voodoo (where you make a wax model of your enemy, stick pins in it, and wait for the results). Similarly, primitive people are often unwilling to be photographed: the photograph might fall into the wrong hands, be accidentally or maliciously destroyed, and the subject therefore (so runs this train of thought) be destroyed too. This idea underlies the following story, about the hero Meleager.



## Meleager

ὁ Οἰνεὺς τῆς Καλυδῶνος ἐβασίλευεν. καὶ ἡ γυνὴ αὐτοῦ, Ἀλθαία ὀνόματι, υἱὸν ἔτεκεν, ὃν ἐκάλεσαν Μελέαγρον. τοῦτου δὲ γενομένου, μετὰ ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας οἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐορτὴν καὶ δεῖπνον παρεσκεύαζον. ἐπὶ δὲ τὴν ἐορτὴν ἦλθον ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ Μοῖραι. αὐταὶ δὲ περὶ τοῦ παιδὸς εἶπον τάδε: "σκοπεῖτε τοῦτο τὸ ξύλον ἐπὶ τῆς ἐστίας· τοῦ ξύλου κατακαυθέντος, ὁ Μελέαγρος ἀποθανεῖται". ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ μήτηρ ταῦτα ἤκουσε, τὸ ξύλον ἐκ τοῦ πυρὸς ταχέως λαβοῦσα ἐν θήκῃ ἔκρυψε, καὶ ἐπιμελῶς ἐφύλασεν.

μετὰ δὲ πολλὰ ἔτη ὁ Οἰνεὺς, ὃς ἐπεὶ καρπὸν ἐκ τῆς γῆς ἔλαβεν ἀπαρχὰς πᾶσι τοῖς θεοῖς αἰεὶ ἔθνε, τὴν Ἀρτεμίδα ἅπαξ ἐξέλιπεν. ὀργισθεῖσα οὖν ἡ θεὰ κάπρον ἄγριον ἔπεμψεν ὥς τὴν γῆν καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους διαφθεροῦντα. μαθὼν δὲ ὁ Οἰνεὺς τὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ κάπρου ποιούμενα, συνεκάλεσε τοὺς ἀρίστους ἐκ πάσης τῆς χώρας ὥς τὸ θηρίον ἀποκτενοῦντας. καὶ συνήλθον εἴκοσιν ἀνδρεῖοι, μεθ' ὧν ἦσαν ἀδελφοὶ δύο τῆς Ἀλθαίας, καὶ ἡ Ἀταλάντη ἡ ἐξ Ἀρκαδίας.

	Οἰνεὺς ὁ	Oeneus
	Καλυδῶν -ῶνος ἡ	Calydon (town in central Greece)
	βασιλεύω	I am king
	Ἀλθαία -ας ἡ	Althaea
2	τίκτω ἔτεκον	I give birth to
	Μελέαγρος -ου ὁ	Meleager
	ἐορτή -ῆς ἡ	feast
	ἐπὶ	(+ acc) to
	Μοῖραι -ῶν αἱ	Fates (goddesses of destiny)
5	σκοπέω	I look at
	ξύλον -ου τό	log
	ἐπὶ	(+ gen) on
	ἐστία -ας ἡ	hearth
	κατακαίω aor pass κατεκαύθην	I burn completely, I burn away
7	θήκη -ης ἡ	chest, box
	ἐπιμελῶς	carefully
	καρπός -οῦ ὁ	crop, harvest
	ἀπαρχαί -ῶν αἱ	first-fruits, offerings
	Ἀρτεμις -ίδος ἡ	Artemis (virgin goddess of hunting)
10	ἅπαξ	once, a single time
	ἐκλείπω ἐξέλιπον	I leave out
	κάπρος -ου ὁ	boar
	ἄγριος -α -ον	wild
	συγκαλέω συνεκάλεσα	I call together
13	θηρίον -ου τό	wild beast
	συνέρχομαι συνήλθον	I come together, I meet
	εἴκοσι(ν)	twenty
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	Ἀταλάντη -ης ἡ	Atalanta
15	Ἀρκαδία -ας ἡ	Arcadia (wild mountainous area of southern Greece)

- αὕτη παρθένος ἦν περὶ τῆς ἄγρας ἐμπειροτάτη. καὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τινὲς εἶπον, "οὐκ ἄξιόν ἐστιν εἰ ἡμεῖς ἄνδρες ὄντες ἀναγκασθῶμεθα μετὰ γυναικὸς θηρεύειν." τοῦτο δ' ἀκούσας ὁ Μελέαγρος ὠργίσθη διότι ἐφίλει τὴν Ἀταλάντην, καὶ ἐβούλετο πάντας ἐπαινεῖν αὐτήν. τέλος μέντοι
- 20 πάντες ὁμολογήσαντες ἐπὶ τὴν ἄγραν ἐξῆλθον. καὶ πρώτη ἡ Ἀταλάντη τὸν κάπρον ἐτόξευσε τὸ νῶτον. τοῦ δὲ θηρίου διὰ ταῦτα ὀργιζομένου ἡ Ἀταλάντη ἐν μεγίστῳ κινδύνῳ ἦν. ὁ μέντοι Μελέαγρος εὐθὺς προσδραμὼν τὸν κάπρον τῷ ξίφει ἀπέκτεινεν.
- ἀποθανόντος τε τοῦ κάπρου, τὸ δέρμα ἔδωκεν ὁ Μελέαγρος τῇ
- 25 Ἀταλάντῃ, ὡς πρώτη τοξευσάσῃ. οἱ δὲ τῆς Ἀλθαίας ἀδελφοί, ὀργισθέντες διότι παρθένος ἀνδρῶν παρόντων τὸ τοῦ δέρματος δῶρον ἔλαβεν, εἶπον, "εἰ μὲν Μελέαγρος ὁ τὸ θηρίον ἀποκτείνας βούλεται τὸ δέρμα λαβεῖν, καλὸν ἐστίν· εἰ δὲ μή, ἡμεῖς ληψόμεθα ὡς συγγενεῖς ὄντες". ὁ δὲ Μελέαγρος μάλιστα ὀργισθεὶς τὸ ξίφος αὐθις λαβὼν ἀμφοτέρους
- 30 ἀπέκτεινεν. ἡ δ' ἀδελφὴ αὐτῶν Ἀλθαία, διὰ τοὺς θανάτους ὀργιζομένη, τὸ ξύλον ὃ ἐφύλασσαν ἐκ τῆς θήκης ἐξελοῦσα εἰς τὸ πῦρ κατέβαλεν· κατακαυθέντος δὲ τοῦ ξύλου εὐθὺς ἀπέθανεν ὁ Μελέαγρος.

	παρθένος -ου ἡ	virgin
	ἄγρα -ας ἡ	hunt
	ἐμπειρος -ον	experienced
	θηρεύω	I hunt
19	ἐπαινέω	I praise
	ὁμολογέω ὁμολόγησα	I agree
	κάπρος -ου ὁ	boar
	τοξεύω ἐτόξευσα	I shoot (with a bow)
	νῶτον -ου τό	back ( <i>here 'accusative of part affected': in the ~</i> )
21	θηρίον -ου τό	wild beast
	δέρμα -ατος τό	skin, hide
	ἔδωκα	( <i>irreg aor</i> ) I gave
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	εἰ δὲ μή	but if not, otherwise
28	συγγενής -ές	related
	μάλιστα	very much
	ἀμφοτέροι -αι -α	both
	ἀδελφὴ -ῆς ἡ	sister
	ξύλον -ου τό	log
31	θήκη -ης ἡ	chest, box
	κατακαίω <i>aor pass</i> κατεκαύθην	I burn completely, I burn away

### Irregular third declension nouns (3)

Finally (these are the last noun forms you need to learn), there are a few third declension nouns involving various irregularities, but linked by having genitive singular ending in -εως (lengthening the normal omicron) and genitive plural ending in -εων:

		βασιλεύς -έως ὁ king	πόλις -εως ἡ city, city-state	ναῦς, νεώς ἡ ship
sg	nom	βασιλεύς*	πόλις	ναῦς
	acc	βασιλέα	πόλιν	ναῦν
	gen	βασιλέως	πόλεως	νεώς
	dat	βασιλεῖ	πόλει	νηί
		*vocative βασιλεῦ		
pl	nom	βασιλῆς or -εῖς†	πόλεις	νῆες
	acc	βασιλέας	πόλεις	ναῦς
	gen	βασιλέων	πόλεων	νεών
	dat	βασιλεῦσι(ν)	πόλεσι(ν)	ναυσί(ν)

† βασιλεῖς is a later form; but with ἵππεύς = *horseman* the plural ἵππεῖς = *cavalry* is the norm

#### Exercise 9.12

Translate into English:

- 1 ἄρα εἶδες τοὺς εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἀφικνουμένους;
- 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς ναύτας συλλέξας ἐκ τοῦ λιμένος ἐξέπλευσεν.
- 3 οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἀσφαλεῖς ἦσαν, καίπερ τῶν τειχῶν ἀσθενῶν ὄντων.
- 4 αἱ τὸν γίγαντα ἀποκτενοῦσαι ἐτοίμαί εἰσιν.
- 5 ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῖς φυλάσσουσιν οὐδὲν ἀποκρίνεται.
- 6 οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἀφίκοντο.
- 7 ὁ ἄγγελος ὑπέσχετο πάντα ἀληθῶς λέξειν.
- 8 τὸ τεῖχος ἐλόντες, οἱ στρατιῶται πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν δραμοῦνται.
- 9 οἱ σύμμαχοι τὴν βουλὴν ἰδόντες οὐδέποτε μαχοῦνται.
- 10 ἐν τῇδε τῇ νηὶ πάντες μενούμεν.

#### Exercise 9.13

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Will the allies run out of the city?
- 2 Having found the letter, the king will be angry.
- 3 I saw three ships sailing into the harbour.
- 4 The woman promised to reply.
- 5 Why did you take that book, boy?

Exercise 9.14

Perseus (1)

*This is one of the most famous of all Greek myths. It is an adventure story, a quest containing many of the classic folk-tale elements. It is also, like many myths, a meditation on the nature of death and man's confronting of it: Perseus' feats make him in many ways master of death, yet he remains mortal. The long story begins and ends with his grandfather Acrisius. Here too is a recurrent story pattern: the very steps taken to try to prevent a dire prophecy from coming true serve only to hasten it.*

ὁ Ἀκρίσιος βασιλεὺς τοῦ Ἄργους ποτὲ ἐγένετο. ἦν δ' αὐτῷ θυγάτηρ  
καλλίστη, Δανάη ὀνόματι. βουλόμενος δὲ υἱὸν ἔχειν, ἀγγέλους πρὸς  
Δελφοὺς ἔπεμψεν ὥς ἀπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ πεισομένους διὰ τί υἱὸς οὐκ ἔστιν  
αὐτῷ. ὁ δ' Ἀπόλλων οὐδὲν περὶ τούτου ἀπεκρίνατο, ἀλλ' εἶπεν, "ὦ  
5 βασιλεῦ, ἔσται τῇ σῇ θυγατρὶ υἱὸς δὲς ἀποκτενεῖ σε." ὁ οὖν Ἀκρίσιος τὴν  
Δανάην ἐν οἰκῇματι χαλκοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ γῇ κρύψας ἰσχυρῶς ἐφύλασσε.

ὁ δὲ Ζεὺς ἐν ὑετῷ χρυσοῦ ὥς τὴν Δανάην ἐλθὼν προσεῖπεν αὐτῇ ἐκ τῆς  
ὀμίχλης. μετὰ δ' ἑννέα μῆνας ἡ Δανάη υἱὸν ἔτεκε, καὶ οὗτος ὁ παῖς  
Περσεὺς ἐκλήθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ἀκρίσιος περὶ τοῦ Περσέως ἤκουσε, μάλιστα  
10 ὠργίσθη. καὶ τῷ περὶ τοῦ Διὸς λόγῳ οὐ πιστεύων, ἐμέμφετο τὸν Πρωτέα  
τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφὸν δὴν μάλιστα ἐμίσει, λέγων ὅτι τὴν τοῦ οἰκῆματος  
κληῖδα κλέψας λάθρα εἰσήλθεν.

ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Ἀκρίσιος μεγάλην θήκην ξυλίνην ἐποιήσατο. οὐ γὰρ ἤθελε  
τὴν θυγατέρα καὶ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτῆς φονεῦειν, τὴν τῶν θεῶν ὀργὴν  
15 φοβούμενος· εἶπε δὲ πρὸς ἑαυτόν, "ἡ θήκη ἴσως καταδύσει, ἀλλ' οὐκ

	Ἀκρίσιος -ου ὁ	Acrisius
	Ἄργος -ους τό	Argos (city in southern Greece)
	ποτέ	once
	κάλλιστος -η -ον	very beautiful
2	Δανάη -ης ἡ	Danae
	Δελφοί -ων οἱ	Delphi
	Ἀπόλλων -ωνος ὁ	Apollo
	οἶκημα -ατος τό	room, chamber
	ὑετός -ου ὁ	shower
7	ὥς	(+ acc) to (a person)
	ὀμίχλη -ης ἡ	mist
	μῆν μηνός ὁ	month
	τίκτω ἔτεκον	I give birth to
	Περσεύς -έως ἡ	Perseus
9	μάλιστα	very much
	μέμφομαι	I blame
	Πρωτεύς -έως ὁ	Proteus
	κλῆς κληδος ἡ	key
	θήκη -ης ἡ	chest, box
13	ξύλινος -η -ον	wooden
	φονεύω ἐφόνευσα	I murder, I kill
	ὀργή -ῆς ἡ	anger
	ἴσως	perhaps
	καταδύνω fui καταδύσω	I sink

- αἷτιος ἐγώ." ἐν δὲ τῇ θήκῃ ἢ τε Δανάη καὶ ὁ Περσεὺς διὰ τῆς θαλάσσης  
 πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα ἐφέροντο. καὶ ἡ Δανάη ἤτησε τὸν Δία σῶζειν αὐτούς.  
 ἡμέρας δὲ γενομένης, ἡ θήκη πρὸς νῆσον τινὰ ἐφέρετο. καὶ ἄλιεύς τις,  
 Δίκτυς ὀνόματι, τὴν τε Δανάην καὶ τὸν παῖδα εὐρὼν πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν  
 20 ἤγαγεν. ἐκεῖ οὖν πολλὰ ἔτη ἔμενον, ἐν ᾧ ὁ Περσεὺς νεανίας ἀνδρείος  
 τε καὶ σοφὸς ἐγένετο. καὶ ὁ Πολυδέκτης, ὃ τε τῆς Σερίφου βασιλεὺς καὶ  
 ὁ τοῦ Δίκτυος ἀδελφὸς ὢν, περὶ αὐτῶν τέλος ἀκούσας ἐβούλετο γαμῆν  
 τὴν Δανάην, ἡ καλλίστη ἔτι ἦν, καὶ νῦν τῆς Ἀθήνης ἱέρεια. ἡ δὲ Δανάη  
 ἐμίσει αὐτὸν ὡς ἀγριώτατον ὄντα. ὁ οὖν βασιλεὺς ἐβούλετο βίᾳ  
 25 λαμβάνειν τὴν Δανάην· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο χαλεπὸν ἦν, διότι ὁ Περσεὺς αἰεὶ  
 παρῆν ὡς τὴν μητέρα φυλάξων.

- ὁ οὖν Πολυδέκτης, μηχανὴν ζητῶν ὡς τὸν Περσέα διαφθερῶν, πάντας  
 τοὺς τῆς νήσου νεανίας πρὸς ἐορτὴν μεγάλην ἐκάλεσεν· ἐν δὲ τούτοις ἦν  
 ὁ Περσεὺς. ἐκελεύσθησαν δὲ πάντες δῶρον ὀνομάζειν τοῦ βασιλέως  
 30 ἄξιον. τοῖς μὲν οὖν ἄλλοις ἵππος ἐφαίνετο δῶρον ἄξιον εἶναι· ὁ δὲ  
 Περσεὺς εἵλετο τὴν τῆς Γοργόνης τῆς Μεδούσης κεφαλὴν. τοῦτο δ' εἶπε  
 τῆς Ἀθήνης πειθούσης· ἡ γὰρ θεὰ, ὀργισθεῖσα διότι ἡ ἱέρεια ἡ Δανάη  
 κακῶς ἐποιήθη, ἐβούλετο τὸν Πολυδέκτην κολάζειν. τῇ οὖν ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ  
 νεανῖαι αὐθις παρήσαν. ἕκαστος δὲ τῶν ἄλλων ἵππον καλὸν ἤγεν· ὁ δὲ  
 35 Περσεὺς οὐδὲν δῶρον εἶχεν. ὁ οὖν Πολυδέκτης ὀργισθεὶς ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν  
 τὴν τῆς Μεδούσης κεφαλὴν κομίζειν· "εἰ δὲ μή, τὴν σὴν μητέρα βίᾳ  
 λήψομαι." καὶ ὁ Περσεὺς ὑπέσχετο, "ἢ τοῦτο ποιήσω ἢ ἀποθανοῦμαι."

	αἷτιος -α -ον	to blame, responsible
	θήκη -ης ἡ	chest, box
	ἄλιεύς -έως ὁ	fisherman
	Δίκτυς -υος ὁ	Dictys
21	Πολυδέκτης -ου ὁ	Polydectes
	Σερίφος -ου ἡ	Seriphos (small Greek island)
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	γαμέω	I marry
	ἱέρεια -ας ἡ	priestess
24	ἄγριος -α -ον	(here) cruel
	μηχανή -ης ἡ	means, device
	ζητέω	I seek, I look for
	ἐορτή -ης ἡ	feast
	ὀνομάζω	I name
31	αἰρέομαι εἰλόμην	I choose
	Γοργών -όνος ἡ	Gorgon (female monster with serpents in its hair, and glaring eyes)
	Μέδουσα -ης ἡ	Medusa
	ἱέρεια -ας ἡ	priestess
33	κακῶς ποιέω	I treat badly
	τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ	on the next day
	κομίζω	I fetch
	εἰ δὲ μή	otherwise

## Tense and aspect (1): Aorist imperative

• *Tense* refers to the *time* an action happens (present, future, or past). *Aspect* refers to the *type of time*, the way of looking at it (e.g. single action, long or continuous process, etc).

• In its normal (i.e. *indicative*) form, the aorist refers to *a single action* that is *in the past*:

ἐκελεύσαμεν	we ordered
ἔμαθες	you (sg) learned

• In other parts of the verb the aorist can denote just *a single action*, not necessarily one in the past. In this case the aorist is being used *by aspect*.

• This is most clearly illustrated by the aorist imperative, the active forms of which are:  
*first (weak) aorist active imperative*

sg	παῦσον	stop (something)! (stressing now, on this one occasion)
pl	παύσατε	

*second (strong) aorist active imperative*

sg	λαβέ	take (something)! (stressing now, on this one occasion)
pl	λάβετε	

The imperative is clear-cut because it is hard to see how an imperative could refer to the past (insofar it has a tense at all, any imperative is in effect a sort of future, because the thing being commanded has not happened yet).

• The distinction between the present and aorist imperative is not always hard and fast, but the present is normally used for a command that is generalised or that envisages the action being repeated, the aorist to stress that the command applies to a single occasion.

Surrounding words often help:

τοὺς λόγους ἀεὶ μάνθανε.  
Always learn the words! (present imperative)

τούτους τοὺς λόγους εὐθὺς μαθέ.  
Learn these words immediately! (aorist imperative)

• The forms of the aorist imperative are partly predictable. The singular of the first (weak) aorist imperative παῦσον is slightly unexpected (and is like the neuter of the future participle). Its plural παύσατε is however just the second person plural of the aorist indicative without the augment (which only the indicative ever has). The second (strong) aorist is easier: it is simply the present imperative endings (-ε, -ετε) added to the aorist stem, hence e.g. present imperative λάμβανε, aorist imperative λαβέ. (Compare how the second [strong] aorist participle likewise uses the present endings on the aorist stem: the second [strong] aorist borrows its *indicative* endings from the imperfect, but all its *other* endings from the present.)

## More imperatives

• We saw the middle/deponent present imperative in Chapter 8:

*present middle imperative*

sg	παύου	cease! (generally)
pl	παύεσθε	

Middle/deponent aorist imperatives (used in the way described above) also exist:

*first (weak) aorist middle imperative*

sg παῦσαι                      cease! (*once*)

pl παύσασθε

*second (strong) aorist middle imperative*

sg λαβοῦ                      take for yourself! (*once*)

pl λάβεσθε

Notice again the relation of the plurals to the equivalent indicative: the present is identical, the aorists simply remove the augment.

---

### Summary table of imperatives:

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>
present		
sg	παῦε	παύου
pl	παύετε	παύεσθε
first (weak) aorist		
sg	παῦσον	παῦσαι
pl	παύσατε	παύσασθε
second (strong) aorist		
sg	λαβέ	λαβοῦ
pl	λάβετε	λάβεσθε

---

### Use of μή: Compound negatives (2)

- The negative used with the indicative (and normally with participles, and other parts of the verb and constructions expressing facts) is οὐ, which (as we saw in Chapter 8) comes with a whole set of compound versions (οὐδαμῶς, οὐδέποτε, etc).

- We have also however seen several examples of μή. This is used with parts of the verb and constructions expressing possibilities or ideas. Predictably therefore (since a command may not in fact be carried out) μή is always used with imperatives.

However negative commands referring to a single occasion are expressed not - as you might expect - by μή with the aorist imperative, but by a different construction explained in Chapter 11.

- There is a corresponding set of compound versions of μή, entirely predictable in form:

<i>οὐ version</i>	<i>μή version</i>	<i>meaning</i>
οὐδείς οὐδεμία οὐδέν	μηδείς μηδεμία μηδέν	no-one, nothing, no (not any)
οὐδέποτε	μηδέποτε	never
οὔτε ... οὔτε	μήτε ... μήτε	neither ... nor

- The use of οὐ and μή roughly corresponds to the use of *non* and *ne* in Latin.

## Exercise 9.15

Translate into English:

- 1 τὸ δίκαιον ἀεὶ φίλει, ὦ φίλε.
- 2 τὸδε τὸ ξίφος λαβέ.
- 3 μηδέποτε ταῦτα τὰ κακὰ ἔργα ποιεῖτε, ὦ πολῖται.
- 4 μὴ παῦσαι μαθὼν, ὦ παῖ.
- 5 ἐν πάσαις ταῖς μάχαις ἀνδρείως μάχου, ὦ στρατιώτα.

## Revision checkpoint

Make sure you know:

- irregular epsilon verbs
- futures with epsilon contraction
- irregular third declension nouns βασιλεύς, πολίς, ναῦς
- the distinction between tense and aspect, and the use of the aorist imperative by aspect
- imperatives: active and middle, present and aorist
- the use of μή, and μη- versions of compound negatives

## Exercise 9.16

### Perseus (2)

- ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν βασιλείων πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν ἀποδραμών, ὁ Περσεὺς πολὺν χρόνον ἄπορος ἦν. οἱ μέντοι θεοὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν οὕτως ἀθυμοῦντα, καὶ εὐθὺς παρήσαν ἡ τ' Ἀθήνη καὶ ὁ Ἑρμῆς. ὁ οὖν τῶν θεῶν ἄγγελος, "ὦ Περσεῦ," ἔφη, "μὴ ἀθύμει· πάρεσμεν γάρ σοι ὡς βοηθήσοντες. λαβὲ οὖν τήνδε τὴν ἄρπην ἀδαμάντινον, ἣ ὁ Κρόνος τὸν Οὐρανὸν ἐξέτεμεν. οὐδὲν γὰρ ὀξύτερόν ἐστι τῆς ἄρπης, ἣ μόνη οἷα τ' ἐστὶ τὴν τῆς Γοργόνης κεφαλὴν ἀποκόπτειν." καὶ ἡ Ἀθήνη, "καὶ λαβέ," ἔφη, "τήνδε τὴν ἀσπίδα τὴν λαμπροτάτην. εἰ γὰρ ἀνθρωπὸς τις πρὸς τὴν Μέδουσσαν σκοπεῖ, εἰς λίθον εὐθὺς διὰ φόβον τρέπεται. τὴν μέντοι εἰκόνα αὐτῆς ἐν τῇ ἀσπίδι

	βασιλεια -ων τά	palace
	ἄπορος -ον	at a loss
	ἀθυμέω	I am disheartened
	Ἑρμῆς -οῦ ὁ	Hermes
5	ἄρπη -ης ἡ	sickle
	ἀδαμάντινος -ον	of adamant (fabulously hard steel)
	Κρόνος -ου ὁ	Cronos (father of Zeus)
	Οὐρανός -οῦ ὁ	Uranus (father of Cronos)
	ἐκτέμνω ἐξέτεμον	I castrate
6	ὀξύς -εῖα -ύ	sharp
	Γοργών -όνης ἡ	Gorgon (female monster with snakes in its hair, and glaring eyes)
	ἀσπίς -ιδος ἡ	shield
	λαμπρός -ά -όν	shining, bright
8	σκοπέω	I look
	εἰκὼν -όνης ἡ	image, reflection



10 σκοπῶν ἐν οὐδενὶ κινδύνῳ ἔσῃ." καὶ ὁ Ἑρμῆς, "νῦν ἀπελθέ· ἡ γὰρ μήτηρ ὑπὸ τοῦ Δίκτυος φυλαχθήσεται. ἔσται δέ σοι ὁδὸς μακροτάτη. πρῶτον μὲν ὡς τὰς Γραΐας ἐλθὼν, παρὰ τούτων μαθὲ ποῦ εὐρήσεις τὰς νύμφας τὰς ὀπισθε τοῦ Βορέου οἰκούσας. αὐταὶ δὲ χρήσιμά τέ τινα παρέξουσιν καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν Γοργωνων ἐξηγήσονται."

15 ἔστιν ἄντρον ἐρήμον, ἐν ᾧ αἱ Γραῖαι οἰκοῦσιν· εἰσὶ δὲ τρεῖς. αὐταὶ αἱ ἀδελφαὶ οὐδέποτε νέαι ἦσαν, ἀλλ' αἰ γράες. ἔστι δ' αὐταῖς εἷς ὀφθαλμός, εἷς ὁδός· τούτων γὰρ μετέχουσιν. ὁ οὖν Περσεὺς οὐκέτι ἀθυμῶν εἰς τὸ ἄντρον σιγῇ εἰσῆλθεν. καὶ τῆς μὲν τῶν Γραιῶν τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν ἀδελφῇ προτεινούσης, ὁ νεανίας λάθρα ἔλαβεν. "ὦ Γραῖαι, τὸν ὑμέτερον  
20 ὀφθαλμὸν ἔχω. ἀληθῶς οὖν ἀποκρίνασθε. εἰ δὲ μή, ἐν σκότῳ αἰεῖ ἔσεσθε." αἱ δὲ ὡμολόγησαν, ὥσθ' ὁ Περσεὺς περὶ τῶν νυμφῶν ἔμαθεν. ταύτας οὖν ὀπισθε τοῦ Βορέου ἤρρεν· καὶ φιλίως ἐδέξαντο αὐτόν.

ὁ οὖν Περσεὺς μετὰ τῶν νυμφῶν τέως ἔμενε. τέλος δ' εἶπεν, "ὦ καλαὶ νύμφαι, νῦν ἄπειμι ὡς τὴν Μέδουσαν ἀποκτενῶν. εἰπετέ μοι, ποῦ οἰκοῦσιν αἱ Γοργόνες; καὶ πῶς ἀποκτενῶ τὴν Μέδουσαν;" "πρῶτον μὲν  
25 πέδιλα περυγῶτά παρέξομεν, οἷς τὰς τῆς Μεδοῦσης ἀδελφὰς φεύξῃ· ἔπειτα δὲ τήνδε τὴν κίβισιν, ἐν ἣ τὴν κεφαλὴν φέρειν οἶός τ' ἔσῃ· τέλος

	σκοπέω	I look at
	Δίκτυς -υος ὁ	Dictys
	ὡς	(+ acc) to (a person)
	Γραῖαι -ῶν αἱ	Graeae (sisters of the Gorgons, personifying old age)
12	παρὰ	(+ gen) from
	νύμφη -ης ἡ	nymph
	ὀπισθε	behind (+ gen)
	Βορέας -ου ὁ	North Wind
	οἰκέω	I live
14	ἐξηγέομαι	I explain
	ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
	ἐρήμος -η -ον	lonely
	ἀδελφή -ῆς ἡ	sister
	γραῦς γραῶς ἡ	old woman
17	ὁδός -όντος ὁ	tooth
	μετέχω	I share (+ gen)
	ἀθυμέω	I am disheartened
	προτείνω	I hold out
	εἰ δὲ μή	otherwise
20	σκότος -ου ὁ	darkness
	ὁμολογέω ὡμολόγησα	I agree
	τέως	for a while
	Μέδουσα -ης ἡ	Medusa
	πέδιλα -ων τά	sandals
26	περυγῶτός -ῆ -όν	winged
	κίβισις -εως ἡ	bag

δὲ τὴν τοῦ Ἑιδου κυνὴν. ὁ γὰρ ταύτην φορῶν ἀφανὴς γίγνεται." ταῦτα  
 οὖν πάντα δεξάμενος, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν μαθὼν, ὁ Περσεὺς αὐτίς ἐπορεύθη,  
 30 τὰς νύμφας χαίρειν κελεύσας.

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς τῆς τῶν Γοργόνων χώρας ἦν, πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους λιθίνους  
 εἶδε, καὶ πολλὰ θηρία τὸ αὐτὸ παθόντα. πάντες γὰρ λίθινοι ἐποιήθησαν  
 διότι τὰς Γοργόνας ἐσκέψαντο. ἔπειτα δ' εἶδε τὰς ἀδελφὰς αὐτάς, ὑπὸ τῷ  
 ἡλίῳ καθευδούσας. αἱ δὲ Γοργόνες ὀδόντας μεγάλους εἶχον, ὥσπερ ὕες,  
 35 καὶ χεῖρας χαλκοῦ· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ τῇ Μεδούσῃ δράκοντες περὶ τὴν  
 κεφαλὴν ἀντὶ κόμης. καὶ ἡ μὲν Μέδουσα θνητὴ ἦν, αἱ δ' ἀδελφαὶ  
 ἀθάνατοι. ὁ δὲ Περσεὺς, τὴν τοῦ Ἑιδου κυνὴν φορῶν, λάθρα προσήλθεν,  
 οὐδὲν ἄλλο σκοπῶν ἢ τὴν εἰκόνα τὴν ἐν τῇ λαμπρᾷ ἄσπίδι. ἔπειτα δέ,  
 καίπερ μάλιστα φοβούμενος, καὶ τὴν εἰκόνα μόνην ἔτι καὶ νῦν σκοπῶν,  
 40 τὴν ἄρπην εἴλκυσεν· καὶ μὲν πληγὴ τὴν κεφαλὴν τὴν δεινотάτην  
 ἀποτεμὼν εἰς τὴν κίβισιν εἰσέβαλεν.

	Ἑιδης -ου ὁ	Hades ( <i>lit</i> the invisible one, <i>god of the Underworld</i> )
	κυνὴ -ῆς ἡ	cap
	φορέω	I wear
	ἀφανὴς -ές	invisible
30	νύμφη -ης ἡ	nymph
	χαίρειν κελεύω	I say farewell to ( <i>literally</i> I order to rejoice)
	λίθινος -η -ον	made of stone
	θηρίον -ου τό	wild animal
	σκοπέω ἐσκεψάμην	I look at
33	ἀδελφὴ -ῆς ἡ	sister
	ὑπὸ	(+ <i>dat</i> ) ( <i>here</i> ) in ( <i>literally</i> under)
	καθεύδω	I sleep
	ὀδοὺς -όντος ὁ	tooth
	ὕς ὕος ὁ	pig
35	χαλκός -ου ὁ	bronze
	δράκων -οντος ὁ	snake
	ἀντὶ	instead of (+ <i>gen</i> )
	κόμη -ης ἡ	hair
	θνητός -ῆ -όν	mortal
37	ἀθάνατος -ον	immortal
	κυνὴ -ῆς ἡ	cap
	φορέω	I wear
	εἰκὼν -όνος ἡ	image, reflection
	λαμπρός -ά -όν	bright, shining
38	ἀσπίς -ίδος ἡ	shield
	μάλιστα	very much
	ἄρπη -ης ἡ	sickle
	ἐλκω εἴλκυσα	( <i>here</i> ) I draw (weapon)
	πληγὴ -ῆς ἡ	blow, stroke
41	ἀποτέμνω ἀπέτεμον	I cut off
	κίβισις -εως ἡ	bag

## Tense and aspect (2): Aorist infinitive

- In the indicative the aorist is unambiguously used as a tense, or 'by tense' (single action in the past), and in the imperative it is unambiguously used as an aspect, or 'by aspect'.
- Notice however that 'by tense' is here shorthand for 'by tense *as well as* aspect' (because the 'single action' idea still applies, distinguishing the aorist from the imperfect), whereas 'by aspect' implies 'by aspect *only*'.
- The aorist *participle* is normally\* used by tense, like the indicative:

οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν βοὴν ἀκούσαντες ἐβοήθησαν.

The soldiers, having heard the shout, came to help.

or When the soldiers had heard the shout, they came to help.

i.e. they first heard the shout, then came to help. As we have seen frequently, the aorist participle normally refers to something that happened *before* the action referred to by the main verb of the sentence (whilst the present participle refers to something happening at the same time).

\* Some exceptions are noted in Chapter 11.

- In some parts of the verb however the aorist form can be used *either* by tense *or* by aspect, depending on context. This is most clearly illustrated by the aorist infinitive, whose active forms are:

<i>first (weak) aorist</i>	παῦσαι	to stop (once) <i>or</i> to have stopped
<i>second (strong) aorist</i>	λαβεῖν	to take (once) <i>or</i> to have taken

- Of the two possible meanings, the use by aspect is more common (but we shall see an important example of the use by tense in Chapter 10).
- The form of the first (weak) aorist infinitive needs to be learned, though it has the predictable sigma and alpha (and is coincidentally the same as the singular first [weak] aorist middle imperative). The form of the second (strong) aorist infinitive is entirely predictable, adding the present infinitive ending to the aorist stem (just as the corresponding participle and imperative add the equivalent present endings).

## Indirect command

- A clear example of the use of the aorist infinitive by aspect is in an indirect (or 'reported') command:

*direct* λαβὲ τὰ χρήματα.  
Take the money!

*indirect* ἐκελεύσαμεν αὐτὸν λαβεῖν τὰ χρήματα.  
We ordered him to take the money.

Because the aorist imperative in the original direct speech was used by aspect, the infinitive follows suit: it *behaves like what it is replacing*. The aorist infinitive in the indirect command represents an aorist imperative in the direct command.

- Similarly a present infinitive is used in an indirect command to represent a present imperative (for a generalised order) in the original direct speech:

*direct* τὰ τῆς πόλεως τεῖχῃ ἀεὶ φυλάσσετε.  
Always guard the walls of the city!

*indirect* ἐκέλευσα τοὺς πολίτας τὰ τῆς πόλεως τεῖχῃ ἀεὶ φυλάσσειν.  
I ordered the citizens always to guard the walls of the city.

- Greek always uses the infinitive for an indirect command. This is unlike Latin, where the infinitive is used only after certain verbs (*iubeo, veto*), others requiring a more complex construction with *ut* and the subjunctive. Indirect commands in Greek are very straightforward, and we have in fact seen several examples already: they translate naturally into English.

- As with direct commands, and all constructions referring to possibilities rather than actual facts (because a command may not actually be carried out), the negative in an indirect command is μή.

## More infinitives

- We met παύεσθαι in Chapter 8 as the present middle infinitive (meaning *to cease*), and in Chapter 7 as the present passive infinitive (meaning *to be stopped*).

- We met the future active, middle, and passive infinitives in Chapter 8:

<i>active</i>	παύσειν	(compare indicative παύσω)
<i>middle</i>	παύσεσθαι	(compare indicative παύσομαι)
<i>passive</i>	παυσθήσεσθαι	(compare indicative παυσθήσομαι)

- As with participles, Greek has a full set of infinitives. Most of them are predictable.

- Aorist middle and passive infinitives (respectively *to cease (once)/to have ceased etc; to be stopped (once)/to have been stopped etc*) are:

	<i>first (weak) aorist</i>	
<i>middle</i>	παύσασθαι	(compare indicative ἐπαυσάμην)
<i>passive</i>	παυσθῆναι	(compare indicative ἐπαύσθην)
	<i>second (strong) aorist</i>	
<i>middle</i>	λαβέσθαι	(compare indicative ἐλάβόμην)
<i>passive</i>	ληφθῆναι	(compare indicative ἐλήφθην)

---

## Overview of infinitives

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
<i>present</i>	παύειν	παύεσθαι	
<i>future</i>	παύσειν	παύσεσθαι	παυσθήσεσθαι
<i>first (weak) aorist</i>	παύσαι	παύσασθαι	παυσθῆναι
<i>second (strong) aorist</i>	λαβεῖν	λαβέσθαι	ληφθῆναι

---

Table showing indicative/imperative/infinitive/participle

		<i>indicative</i> (1 sg)	<i>imperative</i> (sg)	<i>infinitive</i>	<i>participle</i> (m nom sg)
present	<i>active</i>	παύω	παύε	παύειν	παύων
	<i>middle</i>	παύομαι	παύου	παύεσθαι	παυόμενος
	<i>passive</i>	(all same as middle)			
future	<i>active</i>	παύσω	-	παύσειν	παύσων
	<i>middle</i>	παύσομαι	-	παύσεσθαι	παυσόμενος
	<i>passive</i>	παυσθήσομαι	-	παυσθήσεσθαι	παυσθησόμενος
imperfect	<i>active</i>	ἔπαυον	-	-	-
	<i>middle/passive</i>	ἐπαυόμην	-	-	-
1st (weak) aorist	<i>active</i>	ἔπαυσα	παύσον	παύσαι	παύσας
	<i>middle</i>	ἐπαυσάμην	παύσαι	παύσασθαι	παυσάμενος
	<i>passive</i>	ἐπαύσθην	- *	παυσθῆναι	παυσθείς
2nd (strong) aorist	<i>active</i>	ἔλαβον	λαβέ	λαβεῖν	λαβών
	<i>middle</i>	ἐλαβόμην	λαβοῦ	λαβέσθαι	λαβόμενος
	<i>passive</i>	ἐλήφθην	- *	ληφθῆναι	ληφθείς

\* aorist passive imperatives exist but are uncommon (see page 211)

#### Exercise 9.17

Translate into English:

- 1 διώξον τὸν δοῦλον τὸν φεύγοντα, ὦ φίλε.
- 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκέλευσε τοὺς στρατιώτας λίθους βαλεῖν.
- 3 οὐ κελεύσω τούτους τοὺς σύμμαχους ἐνθάδε μαχέσασθαι.
- 4 τὴν δικαιοσύνην αἰεὶ φίλει, ὦ παῖ.
- 5 ἄρα βούλη τὴν πόλιν ληφθῆναι;
- 6 ξίφος ἔλὼν μάχεσαι, ὦ μῶρε.
- 7 κάλεσον τὸν τοὺς ἵππους διώκοντα, ὦ γύναι.
- 8 οὐ φοβοῦμαι τὴν μάχην τὴν παυσθησομένην.
- 9 εἰς τὸν λιμένα νῦν πλεύσατε, ὦ νεανῖαι.
- 10 οἱ περὶ ἐκελεύσθησαν εὑρεῖν τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν διὰ τῶν ὁρῶν.

#### Exercise 9.18

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Take the money, girls!
- 2 The master ordered the slave to throw a big stone.
- 3 Always trust the teacher, boy!
- 4 Do not eat this food, citizens!
- 5 The generals were ordered by the king to capture the city.

## Impersonal verbs

An impersonal verb is one which has *it* rather than a person as the subject. Its form is third person singular. It is followed by an infinitive. You have already seen an example: ἔξεστι(ν) = *it is possible*.

Other common ones are:

δεῖ	it is necessary ( <i>implying compulsion</i> )
χρή	it is necessary ( <i>often implying moral obligation</i> )

The infinitive which follows will be present or aorist determined *by aspect* (aorist to stress something which is to happen just once). This use by aspect (*to do X [once]*) is the 'default mode' for the aorist infinitive:

δεῖ φυγεῖν.

It is necessary to run away (*now, on this occasion*).

If a subject is put in with δεῖ or χρή, it is accusative:

δεῖ σὲ φυγεῖν.

It is necessary for you to run away.

or It is necessary that you (should) run away.

This is another example of the subject of an infinitive naturally being accusative (because the nominative slot has already been used up by *it*).

However ἔξεστι(ν) and other impersonal verbs are followed by a dative (as impersonal verbs normally are in English):

ἔξεστι σοὶ φυγεῖν.

It is possible for you to run away.

- Some impersonals are forms of verbs which can also be used with a personal subject: ἔξεστι is a compound of εἰμί (hence its imperfect is ἐξήν) and δεῖ is in origin part of the verb δέω (though it is uncertain whether this is δέω = *I bind*, or = *I lack*). An important example of this is δοκεῖ. The ordinary verb δοκέω usually means *I seem*. The impersonal use (again with the dative) implies *it seems a good idea to X* i.e. *X decides*:

δοκεῖ μοι φυγεῖν.

It seems a good idea to me to run away.

i.e. I decide to run away.

- δοκεῖ is often found in the aorist (because it implies a single crisp action):

ἔδοξε μοι μαχέσασθαι.

I decided to fight.

- δεῖ is often found in the imperfect form ἔδει. There is also an aorist ἐδέησε(ν).

- χρή is often found in an imperfect form: ἐχρήν or an unaugmented form χρήν. Because it implies moral obligation, *ought* is often an appropriate translation for χρή. Greek however (unlike English) can say *I oughted (at the time) to do X*. This must be recast as *I ought to have done X* (making the infinitive rather than the impersonal verb past tense):

χρῆν με τὸν γέροντα ὠφελεῖν.  
*literally* I oughted to help the old man.  
*i.e. in correct English,*  
 I ought to have helped the old man.

- It is also possible to form impersonal verbs from a neuter adjective plus ἔστί (again followed by a dative):  
 ἀγαθόν ἐστιν ἐλπίζειν.  
 It is good to hope.

This can also be explained (and translated) by taking the adjective with the infinitive, which is then regarded as a neuter noun:

To hope is (a) good (thing).

## Infinitive after verbs

- The infinitive following naturally after another verb is technically called *prolative* ('carried forward'), but operates naturally, as in English. As well as impersonal verbs, it follows verbs meaning *want (to)*, *be able (to)*, *begin (to)* etc. As we saw above, an aorist infinitive in such contexts is used *by aspect* (to stress something which is to happen just once). We have also seen that some verbs are followed by a future infinitive:

ἐλπίζω	I hope (to)
μέλλω	I am about to, I intend (to)
ὑπισχνέομαι	I promise (to)

Here the future infinitive simply reinforces the sense of the verb, and so e.g. ἐλπίζω ἀφίξεσθαι is translated *I hope to arrive*.

## Exercise 9.19

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἄρ' ἔξεστι τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ τὰ περὶ τῆς ναυμαχίας μαθεῖν;
- 2 δεῖ πάντας τοὺς παρόντας εὐθὺς φυγεῖν.
- 3 ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώραν εἰσβαλεῖν.
- 4 ἐχρῆν ἡμᾶς τοῖς αἰχμαλώτοις βοηθεῖν.
- 5 οἱ παῖδες ἔμελλον τὸν πατέρα χρήματα αἰτήσιν.
- 6 χαλεπὸν ἐστὶ τοὺς φυγόντας ἐν τῇ ὕλῃ εὐρίσκειν.
- 7 οἱ δοῦλοι ὑπέσχοντο τὰ κελεύσθεντα πράξειν.
- 8 αὕτη ἡ κόρη ἐλπίζει τοὺς λόγους ταχέως γνώσεσθαι.
- 9 ἔδει τοὺς αἰρέθεντας πολὺν χρόνον ἐκεῖ μένειν.
- 10 ἔδοξε τῷ κριτῇ τὴν βίβλον δέξασθαι.

## Exercise 9.20

Translate into Greek:

- 1 It is necessary for the allies to suffer bad things.
- 2 It was possible for the women to hear all the words.
- 3 The teacher decided to send another letter.
- 4 Did the girl promise to find the books?
- 5 It is good to receive such gifts.

## Revision checkpoint

Make sure you know:

- use of μή in simple form and compounds
- indirect commands and the use of the aorist infinitive by aspect
- all infinitives in common use
- the correlation of indicative, imperative, infinitive, and participle
- impersonal verbs

## Exercise 9.21

### Perseus (3)

- οἱ δὲ δράκοντες συρίζοντες τὰς τῆς Μεδοῦσης ἀδελφὰς ἐξ ὕπνου ἐκίνησαν. αὗται οὖν ὥς τὸν τῆς ἀδελφῆς θάνατον τιμωρήσουσαι προσέδραμον, τὸν πράξαντα ζητοῦσαι. ὁ μέντοι Περσεὺς τοῖς πεδίλοις τοῖς πτερυγωτοῖς διὰ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ ἀπέφυγεν. μετὰ δὲ πολὺν χρόνον εἶδε
- 5 κόρης καλλίστης ἀνδριάντα ἐν τῇ ἀκτῇ, πέτρῳ γλυπτόν. ἐγγύτερον μέντοι προσελθὼν, εἶδε κόρην (οὐκ ἀνδριάντα) τῷ πέτρῳ δεθεῖσαν. "ὦ κορὴ καλλίστη," ἔφη, "ὥς οἰκτεῖρω σε, οὐκ ἄξια πάσχουσιν". "τίς εἰ σύ, τὴν Ἀνδρομέδην οὕτως οἰκτεῖρων; καὶ πόθεν καλεῖς;" ὁ μὲν οὖν Περσεύς, τὴν

	δράκων -οντος ὁ	snake
	συρίζω	I hiss
	Μέδουσα -ης ἡ	Medusa
	ἀδελφή -ῆς ἡ	sister
2	κινέω ἐκίνησα	I move, I set in motion
	τιμωρέω ἐτιμώρησα	I avenge
	ζητέω	I seek, I look for
	πέδιλα -ων τά	sandals
	πτερυγωτός -ῆ -όν	winged
5	ἀνδριάς -άντος ὁ	statue
	ἀκτὴ -ῆς ἡ	shore
	πέτρος -ου ὁ	rock
	γλυπτός -ῆ -όν	carved
	ἐγγύτερον	nearer
6	δέω aor pass ἐδέθην	I bind, I fasten
	ὥς	(here) how ... !
	οἰκτεῖρω	I pity
	Ἀνδρομέδη -ης ἡ	Andromeda



10 τοῦ Ἄιδου κυνὴν ἀφελών, περὶ ἑαυτοῦ ἔλεξεν· ἡ δ' Ἀνδρομέδῃ τὸν τῶν δεσμών λόγον ἐξηγήσατο.

ἡ γὰρ Κασσιόπεια, ἡ τῆς Ἀνδρομέδης μήτηρ, περὶ τοῦ ἑαυτῆς κάλλους μέγα ἔλεγεν ὡς καλλίων οὐσα τῶν Νηρηίδων. αἱ οὖν Νηρηίδες, διὰ ταῦτα μάλιστα ὀργισθεῖσαι, τὸν Ποσειδῶνα ἤτησαν κολάζειν αὐτήν. ὁ οὖν Ποσειδὼν θηρίον δεινότατον ἐπεμψεν, ὃ διέφθειρεν πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν ἥς  
 15 ὁ Κεφεύς, ὁ τῆς Ἀνδρομέδης πατήρ, βασιλεὺς ἦν. ἡγγέλθη δὲ τότε τὸ μαντεῖον τόδε· "ὁ βασιλεὺς οἷός τ' ἐστὶ τὴν τοῦ θηρίου ὀργὴν παῦσαι εἰ ἐθέλει τὴν θυγατέρα τοῖς πέτροις δῆσαι." καὶ ὁ Κεφεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν ἠναγκάσθη τὴν θυγατέρα οὕτως ἀδικῆσαι. ὁ δὲ Περσεύς, τὴν Ἀνδρομέδην ἤδη φιλῶν, τὴν θάλασσαν ἐσκέψατο. τοῦ δὲ θηρίου αὐθις προσιόντος,  
 20 τὴν τῆς Γοργόνης κεφαλὴν ἐκ τῆς κιβίσεως ἔλῶν καὶ πρὸ τῶν τοῦ θηρίου ὀφθαλμῶν τῶν δεινοτάτων προτείνων, ὁ Περσεὺς τοῦ θηρίου ἐκράτησεν. σιγῇ οὖν ἔμενε τὸ θηρίον, ψυχρόν τε καὶ ἀκίνητον· λίθος γὰρ ἐγένετο. οὕτως οὖν ὁ Περσεύς, τῇ ἄρπῃ τῇ ἀδαμαντίνῃ τοὺς δεσμοὺς λύσας, τὴν Ἀνδρομέδην ἔσωσεν.

25 πάντες οὖν νῦν ἔχαιρον. ὁ δὲ Περσεὺς ἐβούλετο τὴν Ἀνδρομέδην τὴν ἑαυτοῦ γυναῖκα γενέσθαι. τοῦ δὲ πατρὸς ὁμολογήσαντος, ὁ γάμος ἐποιήθη, καὶ ἐορτὴ μεγάλη. πάντων μέντοι ἡδέως πινόντων τε καὶ

	"Αιδης -ου ὁ	Hades
	κυνή -ης ἡ	cap
	ἀφαιρέω ἀφείλον	I remove, I take off
	ἐξηγήομαι ἐξηγησάμην	I explain
11	Κασσιόπεια -ας ἡ	Cassiopeia
	κάλλος -ους τό	beauty
	μέγα λέγω	I boast ( <i>lit</i> I talk big)
	καλλίων	more beautiful
	Νηρηίδες -ων αἱ	Nereids ( <i>sea-nymphs</i> )
13	μάλιστα	very much
	Ποσειδών -ωνος ὁ	Poseidon
	θηρίον -ου τό	( <i>here</i> ) monster
	Κεφεύς -έως ὁ	Cepheus
	μαντεῖον -ου τό	oracle
16	ὀργή -ης ἡ	anger
	πέτρος -ου ὁ	rock
	δέω ἔδησα	I bind, I fasten
	σκοπέω ἐσκεψάμην	I look at
	κιβίσις -εως ἡ	bag
21	προτείνω	I hold out
	κρατέω ἐκράτησα	I overpower (+ <i>gen</i> )
	ψυχρός -ά -όν	cold
	ἀκίνητος -ον	motionless
	ἄρπη -ης ἡ	sickle
23	ἀδαμάντινος -η -ον	of adamant
	χαίρω	I rejoice, I am happy
	ὁμολογέω ὁμολόγησα	I agree
	γάμος -ου ὁ	marriage
	ἐορτή -ης ἡ	feast

ἐσθιόντων, εἰσῆλθεν ἄνθρωπός τις δεινός τε καὶ μέγιστος, ξίφος ἔχων.  
 οὗτος θεῖος κακὸς τῆς Ἀνδρομέδης ἦν, Φινεύς ὀνόματι, τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ  
 30 θυγατέρα ἀδίκως φιλῶν. "ἥ παρέχε τὴν κόρην μοι, ἥ τοὺς ἀνδρας  
 ἀποκτενῶ, τὰς γυναῖκας λήψομαι, τὴν πόλιν κατακαύσω." τοῦ μέντοι  
 Περσέως τὴν τῆς Μεδούσης κεφαλὴν αὐθις προτείνοντος, ὁ Φινεύς λίθος  
 ἐγένετο.

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα οὐ πολλῶ ὃ τε Περσεὺς καὶ ἡ Ἀνδρομέδη ἀποπλεύσαντες  
 35 πρὸς τὴν Σέριφον ἀφίκοντο. τὰ μέντοι ἐκεῖ πράγματα οὐδαμῶς εὐτυχῇ ἦν.  
 ἥ τε γὰρ Δανάη ὑπὸ τοῦ Πολυδέκτου δούλῃ ἐποιήθη, ὁ δὲ Δίctυς ἐν  
 δεσποτηρίῳ ἐδέθη. τὴν οὖν Ἀνδρομέδην ἐν τῇ νηὶ λιπών, ὁ Περσεὺς  
 πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια προσῆλθεν. τὸν δὲ βασιλέα ἡῦρε μετὰ τῶν φίλων  
 ἐσθιόντα. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, "ἄρα δῶρόν μοι φέρεις, ὦ Περσεύ;" "ναί, ὥσπερ καὶ  
 40 ὑπεσχόμην." "μὴ φλυαρεῖ· οὐδαμῶς γὰρ φοβοῦμαι." ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Περσεὺς  
 τὴν τῆς Γοργόνης κεφαλὴν αὐθις ἐξεῖλεν. ἔτι καὶ νῦν οἱ λίθοι ἐν τῇ  
 νήσῳ εἰσίν.

τοῦ δὲ Πολυδέκτου καὶ τῶν φίλων λιθίνων ποιηθέντων, ὁ Δίctυς τῆς  
 Σερίφου βασιλεὺς ἐγένετο· καὶ τὴν Δανάην ἐγημεν. ὁ δὲ Περσεὺς καὶ ἡ  
 45 Ἀνδρομέδη αὐθις ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς ἐν τῷ Ἀργεὶ οἰκῆσοντες. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ  
 πρὸς τὴν Ἀρίσαν ἀφίκοντο. ἐκεῖ δ' ἀγῶνες ἤγοντο, ἐν οἷς ὁ Περσεὺς  
 πολλὰ ἄθλα ἐφέρετο. δίσκον μέντοι οὕτως ἰσχυρῶς ἔβαλεν ὥστε γέροντά  
 τινα ἐν τοῖς θεαταῖς εὐθὺς ἀπέκτεινεν· καὶ οὗτος Ἀκρίσιος ἦν, ὃς τὸ  
 Ἀργος ἔλιπε διότι ἐφοβεῖτο τοὺς τοῦ θεοῦ λόγους.

	θεῖος -ου ὁ	uncle
	Φινεύς -έως ὁ	Phineus
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	κατακαίω <i>fut</i> κατακαύσω	I burn down
32	προτείνω	I hold out
	Σέριφος -ου ἡ	Seriphos
	πράγματα -ων τά	affairs
	Δανάη -ης ἡ	Danae
	Πολυδέκτης -ου ὁ	Polydectes
36	δούλη -ης ἡ	(female) slave
	Δίctυς -υος ὁ	Dictys
	δέω <i>aor pass</i> ἐδέθην	I tie up
	βασίλεια -ων τά	palace
	ναί	yes
40	φλυαρέω	I talk rubbish
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way, not at all
	λίθινος -η -ον	(made of) stone
	γαμέω ἐγήμε	I marry
	Ἀργος -ους τό	Argos
45	οἰκέω ὤκησα	I live
	Λάρισα -ης ἡ	Larissa (town in central Greece)
	ἄγω	(here) I hold, I celebrate
	δίσκος -ου ὁ	discus
	θεατής -οῦ ὁ	spectator
48	Ἀκρίσιος -ου ὁ	Acrisius

## Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 9

ἀδικέω ἡδίκησα	I do wrong (to), I act unjustly (towards)
ἀδικος -ον	unjust
αἰρέω εἶλον	I take
αἰτέω ἤτησα	I ask for, I beg
ἀληθής -ές	true
ἀναχωρέω ἀνεχώρησα	I withdraw, I retreat
ἀσθενής -ές	weak
ἀσπίς -ιδος ἡ	shield
ἀσφαλής -ές	safe
ἀφικνέομαι ἀφικόμην	I arrive
βασιλεύς -έως ὁ	king
βοηθέω ἐβοήθησα	I help, I run to help (+ <i>dat</i> )
βραδύς -εῖα -ύ	slow
γένος -ους τό	race, kind, type
δεῖ <i>imperfect</i> ἔδει	it is necessary (+ <i>acc</i> + <i>inf</i> )
δοκεῖ ἔδοξε(ν)	<i>lit</i> it seems good (to X <i>dat</i> ), i.e. X decides
δυστυχής -ές	unlucky, unfortunate
ἐξέστι(ν) <i>imperfect</i> ἐξῆν	it is possible (+ <i>dat</i> and/or + <i>inf</i> )
ἔτος -ους τό	year
εὐρύς -εῖα -ύ	broad, wide
εὐτυχής -ές	lucky, fortunate
ἡδύς -εῖα -ύ	sweet, pleasant
ἡδέως	sweetly; gladly
ἵππεύς -έως ὁ	horseman, <i>pl</i> cavalry
ἰχθύς -ύος ὁ	fish
καλέω ἐκάλεσα	I call, I invite
μέγας μεγάλη μέγα (μεγαλ-)	great, big
μή	not ( <i>in contexts other than statements of fact</i> )
μηδεῖς, μηδεμίας, μηδέν (μηδεν-)	no-one, nothing, ( <i>as adj</i> ) no (not any)
μηδέποτε	never
μήτε ... μήτε	neither ... nor
μισέω ἐμίσησα	I hate
ναῦς νεώς ἡ	ship
ξίφος -ους τό	sword
ὄρος -ους τό	mountain
πλέω ἔπλευσα	I sail
ποιέω ἐποίησα	I make, I do, (+ <i>adv</i> and <i>acc</i> ) I treat
πολίς -εως ἡ	city
πολύς πολλή πολύ (πολλ-)	much
πολλοί -αί -ά	many
ταχύς -εῖα -ύ	quick, swift
τείχος -ους τό	wall
ὑπισχνέομαι ὑπεσχόμην	I promise
φιλέω ἐφίλησα	I love, I like

φοβέομαι ἐφοβήθην

φονεύω ἐφόνευσα

χρή (ἐ)χρήν

(45 words)

I fear, I am afraid (of)

I murder, I kill

it is necessary

## Chapter 10

### Indirect statement: Introduction

A *direct* statement quotes a speaker's actual words:

"The old man is very wise" says Socrates.

- Or it may be simply something an author tells us (any ordinary sentence that is not a question or command):

Socrates was born in 369 BC.

If a direct statement is put into *indirect* speech (i.e. if it is *reported* by someone else) it naturally turns into:

Socrates says that the old man is very wise.

- The words do not have to be spoken aloud:

"The old man is very wise" thinks Socrates (to himself)

similarly becomes

Socrates thinks that the old man is very wise.

- An indirect statement comes after a verb in which the voice, mind, or one of the senses is used: *say, think, hear, find out, know*.

A 'that' clause is the most common way of expressing this in English. But we have three methods altogether:

Socrates says that the old man is very wise. ('that' clause)

Socrates believes the old man to be very wise. (infinitive construction)

Socrates regards the old man as being very wise. (participle construction)

Greek similarly has all three constructions. As in English, particular verbs or types of verb prefer one or the other. (Latin in contrast has only the infinitive construction.)

### Indirect statement (1): with 'that' clause

- This is the normal method with verbs of *saying*, especially λέγω with its aorists ἔλεξα and the commoner εἶπον (and with some verbs that *imply* saying, e.g. ἀποκρίνομαι = *reply, answer*; ἀγγέλλω = *report, announce*). The word for *that* is ὅτι, which we met in Chapter 8.

- The 'that' clause behaves like an independent sentence, with its subject in the nominative, οὐ as the negative, and the verb usually indicative\*. Hence the direct statement

"ὁ γέρων σοφώτατός ἐστιν"

becomes the indirect

ὁ Σωκράτης λέγει ὅτι ὁ γέρων σοφώτατός ἐστιν.

- The verb in the indirect statement *retains the tense of the original direct statement*, regardless of the introductory verb:

ὁ Σωκράτης εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ γέρων σοφώτατός ἐστιν.

English however changes the tense in the indirect statement if the introductory verb is past, so this sentence must be translated:

Socrates said that the old man was very wise (*rather than the literal translation is*).

On this principle, an original *present* tense (i.e. present tense in the direct statement, and in Greek retained as such in the indirect statement) comes out as an *imperfect* in English; an original *past* tense comes out as a *pluperfect* (*had ...*): notice in both these cases how we move back a tense. An original future comes out as a *would* or *was/were going to* (the so-called 'future in the past').

This principle of *retaining the tense of the original* applies to all three indirect statement constructions in Greek (as it does to the infinitive construction in Latin). It is more straightforward than it may seem: think what was said or thought at the time, then express the reported form of this in natural English.

When translating into Greek, likewise reconstruct what was said or thought at the time (i.e. unscramble the change English has made).

\* If the introductory verb is past tense, the verb in the indirect statement can be put into a form called the *optative*: see Chapter 11. The indicative (i.e. one of the normal tenses, used to express facts) is however commonly used to evoke in a strongly vivid way - as the rule about its tense also does - the original direct speech lying behind the reported version.

#### Exercise 10.1

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ ἄγγελος λέγει ὅτι οἱ σύμμαχοι προσέρχονται.
- 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς εἶπεν ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι φεύγουσιν.
- 3 αἱ γυναῖκες ἔλεξαν ὅτι πολλὰς βόας ἤκουσαν.
- 4 ὁ ναύτης λέγει ὅτι ἡ ναυμαχία παύσεται.
- 5 ἡ παῖς εἶπεν ὅτι ἔλυσε τὸν ἵππον.
- 6 οἱ γέροντες ἔλεξαν ὅτι βούλονται ἐν τῇ πόλει μένειν.
- 7 ὁ παῖς ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἔμαθε πάντας τοὺς λόγους.
- 8 ὁ βασιλεὺς ἠγγειλεν ὅτι ἡ πόλις τέλος ἐλήφθη.
- 9 οἱ ἄρχοντες εἶπον ὅτι πάντες οἱ φυγόντες διωχθήσονται.
- 10 οἱ δοῦλοι λέγουσιν ὅτι οὐδέποτε ἀδικοῦσιν.

#### Exercise 10.2

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 Socrates says that the boy is stupid.
- 2 The soldiers said that they had seen nothing.
- 3 The people on the island said that they were in danger.
- 4 The women said that they would send letters.
- 5 Did you say that the battle had ceased, messenger?

## Indirect statement (2): with infinitive

This version is particularly used with verbs of *thinking*, e.g. νομίζω. Here the *subject* of the original direct statement (assuming it is different from the subject of the introductory verb) is put in the accusative, and the verb is put in the infinitive. Hence:

*direct*     ὁ γέρων σοφώτατός ἐστιν.

*indirect*   ὁ Σωκράτης νομίζει τὸν γέροντα σοφώτατον εἶναι.

*literally*     Socrates thinks the old man to be very wise.

*or, in better English,*

Socrates thinks that the old man is very wise.

Notice again that, though the literal translation sounds odd when introduced by *thinks*, the infinitive version can more easily be retained in English after *believes* or *considers*.

- Just as with the 'that' clause construction, the infinitive *keeps the tense of the original*, where English makes the adjustment described above if the introductory verb is past:

ὁ Σωκράτης ἐνόμιζε τὸν γέροντα σοφώτατον εἶναι.

Socrates thought that the old man *was* very wise.

- An *aorist infinitive* therefore here represents an original *aorist indicative*, for a *statement*: the aorist infinitive is used *by tense*, meaning *to have done X* (rather than *by aspect*, meaning *to do X [once]*).

This follows the principle explained in Chapter 9: the aorist infinitive in indirect speech *behaves like what it is replacing*. In an indirect *statement* it replaces the *tense* of the aorist indicative in the direct statement (*did X*), whereas in an indirect *command* it replaces the *aspect* of the aorist imperative in the direct command (*do X [once]!*).

- The use of the aorist infinitive in indirect statement roughly corresponds to the use of the perfect infinitive in Latin:

ὁ διδάσκαλος ἐνόμιζε τὴν παῖδα εὖ ἀποκρίνασθαι.

*literally*     The teacher thought the girl to have answered well.

*or, in better English,*

The teacher thought that the girl had answered well.

(Compare Latin: *magister puellam bene respondisse putabat*.)

- The use of the various infinitives can be summarised as follows.

	<i>literally</i>	<i>normal English</i>
present introductory verb with:		
<i>present infinitive</i>	he thinks X to be ...	he thinks that X is ...
<i>aorist infinitive</i>	he thinks X to have ...	he thinks that X (has) ... -ed
<i>future infinitive</i>	he thinks X to be going to ...	he thinks that X will ...
past introductory verb with:		
<i>present infinitive</i>	he thought X to be ...	he thought that X was ...
<i>aorist infinitive</i>	he thought X to have ...	he thought that X had ...
<i>future infinitive</i>	he thought X to be going to ...	he thought that X would ...

- The infinitive construction is similar to the Latin accusative and infinitive. It may seem puzzling that a *subject* should be accusative. But notice how a sentence such as *Socrates considers the old man to be ...* could be cut short as *Socrates considers the old man*. Clearly *the old man* cannot here be nominative. A sentence can only introduce a *new* nominative

(after the main subject slot has been occupied, as here by Socrates) if there is a new *finite* verb (i.e. verb with a person ending): by definition the *infinitive* does not qualify (whereas the indicative of a 'that' clause of course does). Hence the natural case for *subject of an infinitive* (used, as we shall see, in other constructions as well as indirect statement) is *accusative*.

- If the infinitive in the indirect statement itself has an object, that too will be accusative. You can tell which is which by word order (as well as context) - the *subject* accusative almost invariably comes first:

ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐνόμιζε τοὺς συμμάχους πολλοὺς αἰχμαλώτους λαβεῖν.  
The general thought that the allies had captured many prisoners.

- The point about not being able to introduce a *new* nominative leads on to an important further feature (and difference from Latin). In Greek, if the subject of the infinitive is *the same* as the subject of the introductory verb, it is normally just left out:

ὁ νεανίας ἐνόμιζεν ἀνδρείως μαχέσασθαι.  
The young man thought that he had fought bravely.

But if it *is* put in (for emphasis), or is shown by an adjective or complement, it is *nominative*:

ὁ νεανίας ἐνόμιζεν αὐτὸς ἀνδρείως μαχέσασθαι.  
The young man thought that he himself (*implying* as distinct from others) had fought bravely.

ἡ παῖς νομίζει οἷά τ' εἶναι τὸν πατέρα πείθειν.  
The girl thinks that she can persuade her father.

ὁ Σωκράτης ἐνόμιζε πολίτης πιστὸς εἶναι.  
Socrates considered that he was (*literally* himself to be) a loyal citizen.

We call this version of the infinitive construction *nominative and infinitive* even though the nominative is often not actually there but just understood.

- This contrasts with Latin, where the indirect statement construction is always *accusative* and infinitive. If the subject of the indirect statement is the same as that of the introductory verb, it must be put in as a reflexive accusative:

*iuvenis se fortiter pugnasse putabat.*  
The young man thought that he (*himself*) had fought bravely.

The choice of pronoun distinguishes the reflexive from the non-reflexive accusative:

*iuvenis eum fortiter pugnasse putabat.*  
The young man thought that he (*someone else*) had fought bravely.

- The use of the nominative and infinitive, along with the use of the middle as a reflexive, explains why the reflexive pronouns *ἑαυτὸν* etc are much less common than their Latin equivalents.
- After an 'understood' nominative, there may still be an accusative as *object* of the infinitive (the sense and context normally avoiding ambiguity):

ὁ παῖς ἐνόμιζε τοὺς λόγους μαθεῖν.  
The boy thought that he had learned the words.



- The contrast between the nominative (for same subject, and for emphasis) and the accusative in the infinitive construction provides a good illustration of different uses of αὐτός:

ὁ γέρων νομίζει αὐτὸς σοφὸς εἶναι.

The old man thinks that he himself (*emphatic*) is wise.

ὁ γέρων νομίζει αὐτὸν σοφὸν εἶναι.

The old man thinks that he (*someone else*) is wise.

- The infinitive version of indirect statement (as we see from its use with *think*) carries the idea of *expressing an opinion*, where the 'that' clause states a fact. This difference in shade of meaning explains why there is a separate word for *say* used with the infinitive: φημί, implying *assert, express the opinion*. (You have already met the idiomatic use of part of this: ἔφη = *he/she said* with direct speech, usually - like Latin *inquit* - interrupting the quotation.) This is another example of an irregular verb which is also very common.

*present* say (assert, express the opinion)

<i>sg</i>	1	φημί	I say
	2	φῆς	you ( <i>sg</i> ) say
	3	φησί(ν)	he/she/it says

<i>pl</i>	1	φάμεν	we say
	2	φατέ	you ( <i>pl</i> ) say
	3	φασί(ν)	they say

*imperfect* (but normally used as simple past tense)

<i>sg</i>	1	ἔφην	I said
	2	ἔφησθα	you ( <i>sg</i> ) said
	3	ἔφη	he/she/it said

<i>pl</i>	1	ἔφαμεν	we said
	2	ἐφατε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) said
	3	ἔφασαν	they said

*infinitive* φάναι

*participle sg* φάσκων -ουσα -ον (stem φασκοντ-)\*

*pl* φάντες, φάσαι, φάντα (stem φαντ-)

*imperative sg* φάθι, *pl* φάτε

\* borrowed from φάσκω, an alternative present tense with similar meaning

- In an indirect statement using the infinitive construction, the negative is οὐ (as with a 'that' clause):

ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐνόμιζε τοὺς συμμάχους οὐκ ἀφίκεσθαι.

The general thought that the allies had not arrived.

But if the introductory verb used is φημί, that is negated instead of the infinitive:

ὁ διδάσκαλος οὐκ ἔφη τὴν βίβλον χρησίμην εἶναι.

*literally* The teacher denied that the book was useful.

*i.e.* The teacher said that the book was not useful.

The normal translation of οὐ φημί therefore is *say that ... not* (this corresponds to the use of *nego* in Latin). This idiom is linked to the idea of φημί being used to express an opinion.

Contrast with it:

ὁ διδάσκαλος οὐκ εἶπεν ὅτι ἡ βίβλος χρησίμη ἐστίν.  
The teacher did not say that the book was useful.  
(i.e. *he did not make a statement at all*)

### Exercise 10.3

*Translate into English:*

- 1 οἱ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐνόμιζον τὸν ποταμὸν ἔτι χαλεπώτατον εἶναι.
- 2 ἄρα νομίζετε τοὺς δούλους φυγεῖν;
- 3 ὁ κριτὴς ἔφη δικαιοτάτος εἶναι.
- 4 ἐνομίζομεν τὴν πόλιν ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ληφθήσεσθαι.
- 5 αἱ γυναῖκες οὐκ ἔφασαν τοὺς τοῦ ἀγγέλου λόγους ἀληθεῖς εἶναι.
- 6 ὁ στρατηγὸς νομίζει τὰς παῖδας ἀνδρείως τὰ τεῖχη φυλάξαι.
- 7 ὁ στρατηγὸς οὐκ ἔφη αὐτὸς τὸν δῆμον ἀδικῆσαι.
- 8 ἄρα νομίζεις τοὺς συμμάχους ἀφίξεσθαι;
- 9 αὕτη πάρεστι φάσκουσα τὸν υἱὸν ἀπελθεῖν.
- 10 ὁ παῖς οὐκ ἔφη αὐτὸς ἀλλὰ τὴν μητέρα φοβεῖσθαι.

### Exercise 10.4

*Translate into Greek (using the infinitive construction):*

- 1 The slave thought that his master had gone out.
- 2 The girl's mother says that the food is good.
- 3 Who thinks that that old man is wiser than me?
- 4 The boy thought that he had not acted unjustly.
- 5 Did you say that you were going to send a letter, father?

## Indirect statement (3): with participle

This version is used with verbs of *perceiving* (*hear, see, know, realise, find out*), e.g.

αἰσθάνομαι τὸν γέροντα σοφώτατον ὄντα.

*literally* I perceive the old man as being very wise.

*or, in better English,*

I perceive that the old man is very wise.

• Exactly the same rule about retaining the tense of the original (actual or implied: what was heard, or what someone thought) which we saw with the 'that' clause and infinitive constructions applies here too:

ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔγνω τοὺς πολεμίους προσβαίνοντας.

*literally* The general got to know the enemy (as) approaching.

*i.e.* The general got to know that the enemy were approaching.

- Exactly the same rule about the subject in the indirect statement being accusative if it is different from the subject of the introductory verb, but nominative if it is the same, applies here as with the infinitive. Because however the participle necessarily has a case ending, the nominative here is always shown rather than left to be understood:

ὁ δοῦλος γινώσκει διωκόμενος.  
The slave realises that he is being chased.

A pronoun can still be put in for extra emphasis:

ἡ παῖς ἔγνω αὐτὴ τὸν διδάσκαλον πείσασα.  
The girl realised that she herself had persuaded the teacher.

You have already met several verbs which take the participle construction:

αἰσθάνομαι	I perceive
ἀκούω	I hear
γινώσκω	I get to know, I realise
μανθάνω	I learn
πυνθάνομαι	I learn by enquiry, I find out

Also the irregular aorist:

εἶδον	I saw ( <i>the present tense I see occurs later in this chapter</i> )
-------	---

In addition there is the very common but highly irregular verb οἶδα = *I know*:

*present*

<i>sg</i>	<i>1</i>	οἶδα	I know
	<i>2</i>	οἶσθα	you ( <i>sg</i> ) know
	<i>3</i>	οἶδε(ν)	he/she/it knows

*pl*

<i>1</i>	ἴσμεν	we know
<i>2</i>	ἴστε	you ( <i>pl</i> ) know
<i>3</i>	ἴσασι(ν)	they know

*infinitive* εἰδέναι

*participle* εἰδώς -υῖα -ός (stem εἰδοτ-) [3-1-3 in declension: see page 216]

- Note that οἶδα is also sometimes used with a 'that' clause (to emphasise knowledge of a *fact*).

## Exercise 10.5

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἀκούω τὸν τῶν συμμάχων ἄγγελον ἤδη παρόντα.
- 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔγνω τοὺς ἐν τῇ νήσῳ φοβουμένους.
- 3 ἄρα εἶδετε τὸ τεῖχος διαφθειρόμενον;
- 4 ἡ γυνὴ οἶδεν οἶά τ' οὖσα τὸν στρατηγὸν πείθειν.
- 5 ὁ παῖς οὐ γινώσκει τὸν ποταμὸν εὐρὺν ὄντα.
- 6 ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπύθετο τοὺς στρατιώτας εὐ μαχεσασμένους.
- 7 οἱ παῖδες μανθάνουσι τὸ ἔργον χαλεπὸν ὄν.
- 8 ἡσθόμεθα πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν τέλος ἀφικόμενοι.
- 9 οἱ τὴν πόλιν φυλασσόντες ἴσασιν ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπέθανεν.
- 10 οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι οὐκ ἔγνωσαν τὴν νόσον γενησομένην.

## Exercise 10.6

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The king hears that all the citizens are amazed.
- 2 We heard that the enemy were running away.
- 3 Do you (sg) realise that this slave is very brave?
- 4 The girl knows that she is getting angry.
- 5 The old man did not find out that the boy had helped him.

---

### Indirect statement: summary

- For all three constructions ('that' clause, infinitive, participle) the indirect statement *retains the tense of the original*. English adjusts this if the introductory verb is past tense.
  - For all three constructions the negative is οὐ.
  - Each construction is associated with a particular type of verb:
    - 'that' clause verbs of *saying*, especially λέγω/εἶπον
    - infinitive construction verbs of *thinking* (plus φημί)
    - participle construction verbs of *perception*
  - With the infinitive and participle versions, a new subject in the indirect statement is *accusative*. If the subject is the same as that of the introductory verb, it is *nominative* or left out.
- 

## Exercise 10.7

### Helen in Egypt

*The ten-year Trojan War was fought to recover Helen, wife of Menelaus, who had been kidnapped by the Trojan prince Paris (after Aphrodite, inducing him to declare her winner in a beauty contest with the other goddesses Hera and Athene, promised him the most beautiful woman in the world). The reaction of Menelaus and the other Greeks when they finally found Helen again was a subject of considerable dramatic potential, of which there are various accounts (Homer's authoritative Iliad stopping before this point). A more radical retelling of the story (undercutting the whole purpose of the war) denied that Helen had ever been in Troy at all. This version of it is told by the fifth-century historian Herodotus.*

οἱ ἐν τῇ Αἰγύπτῳ ἱερεῖς τάδε τὰ θαυμάσια περὶ τῆς Ἑλένης λέγουσιν.  
ἐγὼ δὲ νομίζω καὶ τὸν Ὅμηρον τοῦτον τὸν μῦθον ἀκοῦσαι, οὐ μέντοι  
διηγῆσασθαι ὥς οὐκ εὐπρεπὴ τῇ Ἰλιάδι ὄντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς ἱερέας

	Αἰγυπτος -ου ἡ	Egypt
	ἱερεὺς -έως ὁ	priest
	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	remarkable
	Ἑλένη -ης ἡ	Helen
2	Ὅμηρος -ου ὁ	Homer
	διηγέομαι διηγησάμεν	I relate, I tell
	εὐπρεπής -ές	fitting
	Ἰλιάς -άδος ἡ	the Iliad

5 ἡρόμην· εἰ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀληθῶς λέγουσι τὰ περὶ τῆς Τροίας, εἶπον τάδε·  
 τῆς δὲ Ἑλένης ἀρπασθείσης, ἦλθεν εἰς τὴν Τροίαν στρατιὰ πολλὴ τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων τῷ Μενελάῳ βοηθοῦσα. ἐκβάντες δ' εἰς γῆν, ἐπεμψαν εἰς τὸ  
 Ἰλίον ἀγγέλους. οἱ δέ, ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλθον εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἀπήτουν τὴν τε  
 Ἑλένην καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἃ ὁ Πάρις ἔκλεψεν. οἱ δὲ Τρῶες αἰεὶ τὸν αὐτὸν  
 λόγον ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἔχουσιν οὔτε τὴν Ἑλένην οὔτε τὰ χρήματα· πάντων δὲ  
 10 τούτων ἐν τῇ Αἰγύπτῳ ὄντων, αὐτοὶ οὐκ ἄξιοί εἰσι κολάζεσθαι. οἱ δὲ  
 Ἕλληνες νομίζοντες ἐπισκώπτεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτῶν ἐπολιόρκουν τὴν πόλιν. τὴν  
 μέντοι Τροίαν μετὰ δέκα ἔτη ἐλόντες οὐχ εὗρον ἐκεῖ τὴν Ἑλένην, ἀλλὰ  
 τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον ἐτὶ καὶ νῦν ἤκουσαν. οὕτως οὖν τὸν Μενέλαον αὐτὸν  
 πρὸς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἀπέπεμψαν. ὁ δὲ ἐκεῖσε ἀφικόμενος εὗρε τὴν Ἑλένην,  
 15 καὶ ἀπαθῆ ἀέλαβεν.

	ἡρόμην	(irreg aor) I asked
	Ἕλλη-ν-ηνος ὁ	Greek
	Τροία -ας ἡ	Troy
	ἀρπάζω aor pass ἡρπάσθην	I seize, I snatch
6	Μενέλαος -ου ὁ	Menelaus
	Ἰλίον -ου τό	(the city of) Troy
	ἀπαιτέω imperfect ἀπήτουν	I demand back
	Πάρις -ιδος ὁ	Paris
	Τρῶες -ων οἱ	Trojans
11	ἐπισκώπτω	I make fun of
	πολιόρκέω	I besiege
	ἐκεῖσε	there, to that place
	ἀπαθῆς -ές	unharmd

## Background: Herodotus (1)

Herodotus (about 490-425 BC) was the first Greek historian, and is one of the world's great storytellers. Stories from Herodotus occupy most of the rest of this book. His *Histories* in nine books have as their climax the wars between Greece and Persia which were taking place in his early childhood. Herodotus was born and grew up in Halicarnassus, a Greek city on the edge of Persian territory (in modern western Turkey). He writes in the Ionic dialect of Greek (though the stories in this book are adapted into Attic). Because he sees the conflict between Greece and Persia as the expression of a fundamental cultural divide between east and west, more than half his work (forming a vast introduction) explores the Mediterranean and Near Eastern world in the century or so before his time. The account is loosely organized around the theme of the build-up of Persian power. Herodotus however has great interest in foreign cultures and customs for their own sake, and is happy to digress (most spectacularly with a whole book devoted to Egypt, which becomes relevant at the point when the Persians conquer it).

His colourful (and frankly often tall) stories ensured that 'the Father of History' came also to be called 'the Father of Lies'. But in fact Herodotus often distances himself from the stories he tells, and does not commit himself to their truth. And stories that may not be literally true often still have some symbolic point, or illustrate a wider theme.

Early in his work Herodotus makes a distinct change of gear from myth (stories like the seizing of Helen) to ascertainable history, which he takes from about 600 BC (150-175 years before he is writing). Yet his stories about characters from relatively recent history often have the characteristics of myth. Traditional epic poetry was going out of fashion. Herodotus wrote instead a prose epic, to show that recent wars had a heroic grandeur comparable to the wars of the mythic past.

The Greek world was changing rapidly during the period Herodotus covers. For about a hundred years (mid-seventh to mid-sixth century BC) many Greek city-states went through a stage of political evolution known as *tyranny*. It is important to stress that Greek tyrants were not necessarily (as the word now implies) cruel despots: many of them enjoyed strong popular support. The old hereditary monarchies had long since given way to the rule of aristocrats. A tyrant typically came from outside (or from the fringes of) this privileged group: he seized power for himself, promising benefits to the ordinary people. Although this might seem a backward step in the long-term process of spreading political power more widely, tyranny in fact usually functioned as a stimulus to further change. Few tyrannies lasted beyond a second generation: charismatic, often insecure, rule could not easily be passed on. The fact that the tyrant had been able to *seize* power inspired larger groups to do so, and tyrannies were typically followed at least by *oligarchies* (= rule of the few) more broadly-based than the earlier aristocracies, and in some cases (notably Athens) by *democracy* (= rule of the people, though in practice this meant adult male citizens).

The colourful figures of the tyrants (often very wealthy, attracting artists to their courts and spending lavishly to adorn their cities) provide Herodotus with many stories to illustrate his moral and theological beliefs: in particular that human prosperity does not abide long in one place, and that pride frequently comes before a fall.

## The verb *to give*

The important irregular verb *to give* has a present tense δίδωμι (similar in form to φημί *I say*, which we met earlier in this chapter) but only its future and aorist tenses, and their respective infinitives, are needed for GCSE.

		future	aorist
		I shall give	I gave
sg	1	δώσω	ἔδωκα
	2	δώσεις	ἔδωκας
	3	δώσει	ἔδωκε(ν)
pl	1	δώσομεν	ἔδομεν
	2	δώσετε	ἔδοτε
	3	δώσουσι(ν)	ἔδοσαν

future infinitive δώσειν      aorist infinitive δοῦναι

- The future is completely regular, like that of an ordinary verb. The aorist is more unusual and needs to be learned: the singular has the endings of a first (weak) aorist, though without sigma on the stem; the plural is more of a mixture, but note how the omega in the stem shortens to omicron.

- This vowel-shortening in the plural is characteristic of verbs ending in -μι: we saw it in the present and imperfect tenses of φημί (where eta shortened to alpha). These verbs (and the even more irregular -μι ones εἰμί *I am* and εἶμι *I shall go*) represent an older stratum of the language than the familiar ones ending in -ω.

## Exercise 10.8

Translate into English:

- 1 αὕτη ἡ παῖς ἔδωκε σῖτον τῷ δυστυχεῖ γέροντι.
- 2 οὐδὲν αὐτοῖς ἔδομεν διότι ἐκελεύσθημεν μηδὲν δοῦναι.
- 3 οἱ πολῖται ὑπέσχοντο χρήματα τῷ ἱατρῷ δώσειν.
- 4 τίς τιμὴν τοιούτῳ δώσει;
- 5 ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἔφη δῶρον τῇ γυναικί δοῦναι.

Exercise 10.9

Psammetichus

*The king of Egypt conducts an experiment, based on an analogy between the development of an individual and the development of human society.*

- οἱ δ' Αἰγύπτιοι, πρὸ τῆς τοῦ Ψαμμήτιχου ἀρχῆς, ἐνόμιζον πρῶτοι γενέσθαι πάντων ἀνθρώπων. νῦν δὲ νομίζουσι τὸ τῶν Φρυγῶν ἔθνος ἀρχαιότερον εἶναι τοῦ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. ὁ γὰρ Ψαμμήτιχος, ἐπεὶ βασιλεὺς τῶν Αἰγυπτίων ἐγένετο, ἐβούλετο τὸ ἀληθὲς εὐρεῖν. ἐζήτει οὖν πύθεσθαι τίνες οἱ πρῶτοι  
5 ἀνθρωποὶ ἐγένοντο, ἀλλ' οὐχ οἷός τ' ἦν τοῦτο μαθεῖν. λαβὼν οὖν δύο παῖδας νεογνοὺς ἐνοίκων τινῶν τῆς ἑαυτοῦ χώρας, τούτους ποιμένι τινὶ ἔδωκεν. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσε τὸν ποιμένα τοῖς παῖσι μηδὲν λέγειν ἄλλα φυλάσσειν αὐτοὺς ἐν καλύβῃ ἐρήμῃ, καὶ ἐκεῖ καθ' ἡμέραν αἶγας ἐναγαγόντα γάλακτι αὐτοὺς τρέφειν, καὶ δοῦναι παντὰ ἃ ἔδει.  
10 ταῦτα ἐποίησε καὶ ἐκέλευσεν ὁ Ψαμμήτιχος διότι ἐβούλετο ἀκοῦσαι τίνα λόγον οἱ παῖδες πρῶτον λέξουσιν, παυσάμενοι τῶν κνυζημάτων. μετὰ δὲ δύο ἔτη, τῷ ποιμένι εἰς τὴν καλύβην ποτὲ εἰσελθόντι προσέδραμον οἱ παῖδες "βέκος" ἅμα λέγοντες καὶ τὰς χεῖρας προτείνοντες. ὁ δὲ ποιμὴν τοῦτο ἀκουσας πρῶτον μὲν οὐδὲν ἐποίησεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ παῖδες πολλάκις  
15 τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον ἔλεγον, ὁ ποιμὴν τὰ γενόμενα τῷ βασιλεῖ ἡγγεilen. ὁ οὖν Ψαμμήτιχος τοὺς παῖδας εὐθὺς μεταπεμψάμενος καὶ αὐτὸς ἀκουσας, ἀγγέλους πρὸς πᾶσαν χώραν ἔπεμψεν ὥς πευσσομένους τίνες ἀνθρώπων "βέκος" τι καλοῦσιν. καὶ διὰ τούτους ἔγνω τοὺς Φρυγὰς τὸν ἄρτον οὕτω καλοῦντας. οἱ οὖν Αἰγύπτιοι ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου νομίζουσι τοὺς μὲν  
20 Φρυγὰς πρῶτους γενέσθαι πάντων ἀνθρώπων, αὐτοὶ δὲ δεῦτεροι.

	Αἰγύπτιοι -ων οἱ	Egyptians
	πρὸ	before (+ gen)
	Ψαμμήτιχος -ου ὁ	Psammetichus
	Φρυγῆς -ῶν οἱ	Phrygians (from Phrygia, in modern northern Turkey)
2	ἔθνος -ους τό	nation, tribe
	ἀρχαῖος -α -ον	old
	ζητέω	I seek
	νεογνός -όν	new-born
	ποιμὴν -ένος ὁ	shepherd
8	καλύβη -ης ἡ	hut
	ἐρήμος -η -ον	lonely, deserted
	καθ' ἡμέραν	every day
	αἶξ αἰγός ὁ	goat
	γάλα γάλακτος τό	milk
9	τρέφω	feed
	κνυζήματα -ων τά	baby-talk
	ἅμα	at the same time
	προτείνω	I stretch out
	μεταπέμπομαι μετεπεμψάμην	I send for
18	ἄρτος -ου ὁ	bread

## Polycrates and the Ring

*Herodotus has many stories illustrating the dangers of excessive prosperity and complacency. Tyrants often provide telling illustrations. The gods are shown as jealous, and prone to upset human calculations. This story (set in the sixth century BC) resembles many of the myths from an older Greek world in stressing that men cannot avoid what is fated.*

ὁ δὲ Πολυκράτης Σάμου τύραννος ἐγένετο ὧδε· ὀλίγους ἄνδρας ἔχων ἐν  
στάσει τῆς νήσου ἐκράτησε, καὶ πρῶτον μὲν μετὰ τῶν δυοῖν ἀδελφῶν  
ἐτυράννευεν (ἕκαστος γὰρ τρίτην μοῖραν εἶχεν). ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Πολυκράτης,  
τὸν μὲν τῶν ἀδελφῶν ἀπόκτεινας, τὸν δὲ ἐξέλασας, τύραννος πάσης τῆς  
5 Σάμου ἐγένετο. δυνατώτατος οὖν ἦδη ὢν, φιλίαν ἐποιήσατο πρὸς Ἀμασιν  
τὸν τῆς Αἰγύπτου βασιλέα, πέμπων τε δῶρα καὶ δεχόμενος ἄλλα παρ'  
αὐτοῦ.

ὁ οὖν Πολυκράτης ἔτι δυνατώτερός τε καὶ πλουσιώτερος ἐγίνετο. ἦσαν  
αὐτῷ νῆες ἑκατόν, τοξόται χίλιοι. πολλῶν νήσων καὶ πόλεων ἐκράτησε,  
10 καὶ πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους δούλους ἐποίησεν. τὸ ὄνομα αὐτοῦ μέγα ἐγένετο  
κατὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ἐπεὶ τῶν Λεσβίων ναυμαχία ἐκράτησε, τοὺς  
αἰχμαλώτους ἠνάγκασε τάφρον περὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πόλιν ὀρύσσειν. ὁ μὲντοι  
Ἀμασις ἄκουσας περὶ τῶν τοῦ Πολυκράτους πραγμάτων ἐφοβεῖτο διότι  
εὐτυχέστερος ἦν ὁ τύραννος ἢ ἀνθρώπῳ ἀγαθὸν ἔστιν.

	Πολυκράτης -ους ὁ	Polycrates
	Σάμος -ου ἡ	Samos (Greek island off modern Turkey)
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant
	ὧδε	in the following way
2	στάσις -εως ἡ	rebellion, civil war
	κρατέω ἐκράτησα	I gain control of (+ gen)
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	τυράννεύω	I am tyrant
	μοῖρα -ας ἡ	share, part
4	ἐξελαύνω ἐξήλασα	I drive out
	δυνατός -ῆ -όν	powerful
	φιλία -ας ἡ	friendship
	πρὸς	(+ acc) (here) with
	Ἀμασις -εως ὁ	Amasis
6	Αἴγυπτος -ου ἡ	Egypt
	παρ' (= παρὰ)	(+ gen) from (a person)
	ἑκατόν	100
	τοξότης -ου ὁ	archer
	χίλιοι -αι -α	1000
11	κατὰ	(+ acc) throughout
	Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ	Greece
	Λέσβιοι -ων οἱ	Lesbians, men of Lesbos (Greek island north of Samos)
	τάφρος -ου ἡ	moat
	ὀρύσσω	I dig
13	πράγματα -ων τά	affairs, doings



- 15 ἐπιστολὴν οὖν γράψας πρὸς τὴν Σάμον ἔπεμψεν. "Ἄμασις Πολυκράτει  
τάδε λέγει· ἀγαθὸν μὲν ἐστὶν ἀκούειν ἀνδρὰ φίλον εὖ πράσσοντα. ἐμοὶ δ'  
οὐ πάνυ ἀρέσκει ἡ σὴ μεγάλη εὐτυχία. εἰ γάρ τις εὐτυχὴς αἰεὶ ἐστίν, οἱ  
θεοὶ φθονοῦσιν. ἀμεινόν ἐστι καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ κακὸν ἐν τῷ βίῳ ἔχειν. δεῖ  
οὖν σὲ πειθόμενόν μοι ὥδε πράσσειν· τῶν σῶν κτημάτων ἀποβαλὲ τὸ  
20 πλείστον ἄξιον. οὕτως παύσεις τὸν τῶν θεῶν φθόνον."

τῷ δὲ Πολυκράτει τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δεξαμένῳ ἔδοξε τῷ βασιλεῖ πίθεσθαι.  
ἦν δ' αὐτῷ σφραγὶς τις χρυσοῦ, πλείστον ἄξια· καὶ ἐβουλεύσατο ταύτην  
ἀποβάλλειν. κελεύσας οὖν τοὺς ἐαυτοῦ ναῦν παρασκευάσαι, αὐτὸς τὴν  
σφραγίδα φέρων ἀπὸ γῆς ἐκάς ἀπέπλευσεν. ἔπειτα δὲ τὴν σφραγίδα εἰς  
25 τὴν θάλασσαν εἰσέβαλεν· καὶ πάντες οἱ ναῦται εἶδον τὸ γινόμενον.

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῇ πέμπτῃ ἢ ἕκτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀλιεύς τις ἰχθὺν μέγιστόν τε καὶ  
κάλλιστον ἔλαβεν. καὶ οὐκ ἤθελε πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν φέρειν τὸν ἰχθύν·  
δώρον γὰρ ἐφαίνετο ἄξιον τοῦ τυράννου εἶναι. εἰς δὲ τὴν τοῦ  
Πολυκράτους οἰκίαν ἀφικόμενος ὁ ἀλιεὺς εἶπε, "τοῦτον τὸν ἰχθύν τὸν  
30 μέγιστόν τε καὶ κάλλιστον λαβών, καίπερ πένης ὢν οὐκ ἐθέλω πρὸς τὴν  
ἀγορὰν φέρειν. ὁ γὰρ ἰχθὺς φαίνεται σοῦ ἄξιος εἶναι καὶ τῆς σῆς ἀρχῆς.  
βούλομαι δώρον δοῦναι σοι, καὶ αἰτῶ σε τὸν ἰχθύν δέξασθαι."

ὁ οὖν Πολυκράτης, τῷ τε δώρῳ καὶ τοῖς λόγοις ἡδόμενος, ἀπεκρίνατο,  
"ἀγαθόν ἐστι καὶ τὸ σὸν δώρον δέχεσθαι καὶ τοὺς σοὺς λόγους ἀκοῦειν.  
35 καλοῦμέν σε ἐπὶ δεῖπνον." οἱ δὲ τοῦ Πολυκράτους δοῦλοι, τὸν ἰχθύν  
διατέμνοντες, ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ τὴν σφραγίδα εὔρον. διὰ ταῦτα πολὺ ἡδόμενοι  
παρὰ τὸν Πολυκράτη ἔφερον τὴν σφραγίδα καὶ εἶπον πῶς εὔρον. ὁ δὲ  
τύραννος νῦν ἐφοβεῖτο. ἐπύθετο γὰρ τὸ ἔργον τῶν θεῶν ὄν. ἐπιστολὴν  
ἔγραψε περὶ τῶν γενομένων· γράψας δὲ πρὸς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἔπεμψεν.

	πάνυ	entirely
	ἀρέσκω	I please, I am pleasing to (+ dat)
	εὐτυχία -ας ἡ	good fortune
	φθονέω	I am jealous
18	ἀμεινον	better
	ὥδε	in the following way
	κτημα -ατος τό	possession
	πλείστος -η -ον	most
	φθόνος -ου ὁ	envy, jealousy
22	σφραγίς -ιδος ἡ	ring
	βουλεύομαι ἐβουλεύσάμην	I plan
	ἐκάς	far
	ἀλιεύς -έως ὁ	fisherman
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant
30	πένης -ητος ὁ	poor man
	ἡδομαι	I am pleased (by, + dat)
	διατέμνω	I cut open
	γαστήρ -τρός ἡ	stomach
	παρά	(+ acc) (here) to, into the presence of

- 40 ὁ οὖν Ἄμασις οὕτω περὶ τῶν τοῦ Πολυκράτους πραγμάτων ἄκουσας  
 ἠθύμῃσε, διότι οὐχ οἶός τ' ἦν σῶσαι τὸν φίλον ἀπὸ τοῦ τῶν θεῶν  
 φθόνου. ἄγγελον οὖν πέμψας διέλυσε τὴν φιλίαν. οὐκέτι γὰρ ἤθελε φίλος  
 εἶναι τοῦ Πολυκράτους, εἰ τὰ πράγματα αὐτοῦ αἰεὶ ἐστὶν εὐτυχῇ. καὶ  
 45 ὕστερον οὐ πολλῶ οἱ Πέρσαι τῆς Σάμου ἐκράτησαν καὶ τὸν τύραννον  
 ἀπέκτειναν. τῆς οὖν μεγάλης τοῦ Πολυκράτους εὐτυχίας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος  
 ἦν.

	πράγματα -ων τά	affairs
	ἀθυμέω ἠθύμῃσα	I am disheartened
	φθόνος -ου ὁ	jealousy
	διαλύω διέλυσα	I break off
42	φιλία -ας ἡ	friendship
	Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians
	κρατέω ἐκράτησα	I gain control of (+ gen)
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant
	εὐτυχία -ας ἡ	good fortune
45	τέλος -ους τό	(as noun) end

## Result clauses with infinitive

In Chapter 7 we saw that result clauses with ὥστε (e.g. *He is so clever that he always understands everything*) commonly have their verb in the indicative if the result is one which actually occurs.

Result clauses can however also have their verb in the infinitive. This version *must* be used if the result is only a *likely* or *expected* one, rather than one that actually occurs (but it *can* be used anyway, even if the result does actually occur). In the infinitive version, a *new* subject in the result clause is *accusative* (as with indirect statement; if the subject is the same as that of the main verb, it is just left out).

- With the infinitive version, a translation such as *so X as to ...* is often appropriate (avoiding the issue of whether the result does actually happen):

οὕτω σοφῶς λέγει ὥστε πείθειν πάντας τοὺς πολίτας.  
 He speaks so wisely as to (or wisely enough to) persuade all the citizens.

- As with indirect statement, you must distinguish (by context) an accusative which is a new subject for the infinitive from one which (understanding again the same subject) is its object:

οὕτως ἀνδρείοι εἰσιν ὥστε τοὺς πολεμίους φοβεῖσθαι.  
 They are so brave that the enemy (*accusative as new subject*) are afraid.

οὕτως ἀνδρείοι εἰσιν ὥστε τοὺς πολεμίους ἀποκτείνειν.  
 They are so brave that they (or as to) kill the enemy (*accusative as object*).

- The negatives used in the two constructions mirror the distinction in meaning. In the indicative version (dealing with *facts*) the negative is οὐ. In the infinitive version (with its *potential* flavour) the negative is μή. This is of course in line with the normal distinction between οὐ and μή.

## Exercise 10.11

Translate into English:

- 1 ἐκείνοι οἱ στρατιῶται οὕτως ἀνδρεῖοί εἰσιν ὥστε ἀεὶ εὖ μάχεσθαι.
- 2 ὁ γέρων οὕτω σοφός ἐστιν ὥστε πάντας θαυμάζειν αὐτόν.
- 3 τοσαύτη ἐστὶν ἡ βοή ὥστε τοὺς ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἀκούειν.
- 4 τὸ στρατόπεδον οὕτω ταχέως ἐλήφθη ὥστε οὐδεὶς ἔφυγεν.
- 5 ὁ ποταμός ἐστιν οὕτω χαλεπὸς ὥστε μηδὲν διαβαίνειν.
- 6 ὁ ῥήτωρ οὕτω σοφῶς λέγει ὥστε ἀεὶ πείθειν τοὺς πολίτας.
- 7 ἡ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ὕλη τοιαύτη ἐστὶν ὥστε μηδὲν ἐκεῖ εὐρίσκεισθαι.
- 8 οἱ πολέμιοι τέλος ἔφυγον ὥστε ἡ μάχη ἐπάύσατο.
- 9 ἡ ναὺς οὕτω ταχέως ἐπλευσεν ὥστε οὐχ οἷοί τ' ἦμεν λαβεῖν.
- 10 τοσοῦτός τε καὶ τοιοῦτος ἦν ὁ ἡμέτερος στρατὸς ὥστε τοὺς βαρβάρους φοβεῖσθαι.

## Exercise 10.12

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Few slaves are so foolish as to run away.
- 2 The sea was so dangerous that it was not possible to sail.
- 3 He speaks so wisely that those present learn everything.
- 4 The city was so big that we could not find the woman's house.
- 5 There were enough\* soldiers to capture the city

\* enough = so many (as to)

## Exercise 10.13

### Amasis and the Statue

*The canny prudence Amasis revealed in his dealings with Polycrates had also been shown at the beginning of his own reign.*

- ἐπεὶ ὁ Ἄμασις βασιλεὺς τῆς Αἰγύπτου ἐγένετο, πρῶτον μὲν οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι ὠλιγώρουν αὐτοῦ ὡς δημότου πρότερον ὄντος καὶ γένους οὐκ ἐπιφανοῦς, μετὰ δ' ὀλίγον χρόνον ὁ Ἄμασις οὕτω σοφῶς αὐτοὺς προσηγάγετο ὥστε ὑπὸ πάντων θαυμάζεσθαι. πολλὰ γὰρ κτήματα εἶχε καὶ θαυμάσια, ἐν δ' αὐτοῖς ποδανιπτῆρα χρυσοῦ ἐν ᾧ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἄμασις καὶ πάντες οἱ ξένοι τοὺς πόδας ἀπενίζοντο.

	Ἄμασις -εως ὁ	Amasis
	Αἴγυπτος -ου ἡ	Egypt
	Αἰγύπτιοι -ων οἱ	Egyptians
	ὠλιγώρεω	I despise (+ gen)
2	δημότης -ου ὁ	commoner
	ἐπιφανής -ές	distinguished
	προσάγομαι προσηγάομην	I win over
	κτήμα -ατος τό	possession
	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	wonderful
5	ποδανιπτῆρ -ήρος ὁ	bowl for washing feet
	ξένος -ου ὁ	(here) guest
	ἀπενίζομαι	I wash

τοῦτον οὖν κατακόψας ἄγαλμα θεοῦ τινος ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἐποιήσατο, καὶ τοῦτο ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἵδρυσεν. οἱ δ' Αἰγύπτιοι δι' ὀλίγου τὸ ἄγαλμα ἐσέβοντο πολὺ. ὁ δ' Ἄμασις, ἐπεὶ ἔμαθε ταῦτα, συγκάλεσας τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους εἶπε τάδε·

10 "τὸ ἄγαλμα ἐκ τοῦ ποδανιπτήρος ἐποιήθη· πρότερον μὲν πάντες ἐν τούτῳ τοὺς πόδας ἀπενίξεσθε, νῦν δὲ μάλιστα σέβεσθε. καὶ ἐγὼ ὁμοίως τῷ ποδανιπτῇρι ἔπαθον· πρότερον γὰρ δημότης ὦν, νῦν βασιλεὺς εἰμι. οὕτως οὖν ἄξιός εἰμι τῆς τιμῆς." καὶ τοιούτῳ τρόπῳ ὁ Ἄμασις προσηγάγετο τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους.

	κατακόπτω	κατέκοψα	(here) I melt (something) down
	ἄγαλμα	-ατος τό	statue
	ἵδρῳ	ἵδρυσα	I set up
	δι' (=δια)	ὀλίγου	soon, after a short time
8	σέβομαι		I revere, I worship
	πολὺ		(neuter as adv) greatly
	συγκάλέω	συνεκάλεσα	I call together
	μάλιστα		especially
	ὁμοίως		in the same way
13	τρόπος	-ου ὁ	way, method

## Verbs with alpha contraction

We saw in Chapter 9 the principle of epsilon contraction, and its application to verbs, adjectives and nouns. Contraction with alpha works in a broadly similar way, but is less common. In practice it affects only verbs, and there are relatively few of those. Again it is most economical of effort simply to learn the rules of contraction and apply them. For contraction with alpha the rules are:

α followed by an e sound (ε or η) becomes long α

α followed by an o sound (ο or ω) becomes ω

ι becomes subscript, and υ disappears

Hence:

τιμάω = I honour

<i>present active</i>			<i>present middle/passive:</i>	
sg	1	τιμῶ [τιμα-ω]	τιμῶμαι	[τιμα-ομαι]
	2	τιμᾷς [τιμα-εις]	τιμᾷ	[τιμα-η (or -ει)]
	3	τιμᾷ [τιμα-ει]	τιμᾶται	[τιμα-εται]
pl	1	τιμῶμεν [τιμα-ομεν]	τιμώμεθα	[τιμα-ομεθα]
	2	τιμᾶτε [τιμα-ετε]	τιμᾶσθε	[τιμα-εσθε]
	3	τιμῶσι(ν) [τιμα-ουσι(ν)]	τιμώνται	[τιμα-ονται]
<i>participle:</i>			<i>participle:</i>	
τιμῶν -ῶσα -ὼν (stem τιμωντ-)			τιμώμενος -η -ον	
[τιμα-ων -ουσα -ον (τιμα-οντ-)]			[τιμα-ομενος -η -ον]	
<i>infinitive:</i>			<i>infinitive:</i>	
τιμᾶν			τιμᾶσθαι	
[τιμα-ειν: iota disappears here]			[τιμα-εσθαι]	

<i>imperative:</i>			<i>imperative:</i>		
<i>sg τιμᾶ pl τιμᾶτε</i>			<i>sg τιμῶ pl τιμᾶσθε</i>		
[τιμα-ε, -ετε]			[τιμα-ου, -εσθε]		
<i>imperfect active</i>			<i>imperfect middle/passive</i>		
<i>sg</i>	1	ἐτίμων [ἐτιμα-ον]	ἐτιμώμην [ἐτιμα-ομην]		
	2	ἐτίμας [ἐτιμα-εσ]	ἐτιμῶ [ἐτιμα-ου]		
	3	ἐτίμα [ἐτιμα-ε]	ἐτιμᾶτο [ἐτιμα-ετο]		
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐτιμῶμεν [ἐτιμα-ομεν]	ἐτιμώμεθα [ἐτιμα-ομεθα]		
	2	ἐτιμᾶτε [ἐτιμα-ετε]	ἐτιμᾶσθε [ἐτιμα-εσθε]		
	3	ἐτίμων [ἐτιμα-ον]	ἐτιμώντο [ἐτιμα-οντο]		

For the regular pattern of alpha verbs, the first (weak) aorist and future are formed exactly as with epsilon verbs: the alpha (like the epsilon) is lengthened to eta before adding the sigma, but the endings after the sigma are normal. Hence:

<i>aorist</i>	<i>active</i>	ἐτίμησα
	<i>middle</i>	ἐτιμησάμην
	<i>passive</i>	ἐτιμήθην
<i>future</i>	<i>active</i>	τιμήσω
	<i>middle</i>	τιμήσομαι
	<i>passive</i>	τιμηθήσομαι

• Again it is conventional to quote these verbs in uncontracted form in a wordlist or dictionary (to make the formation clear), but to write them with the contraction in a sentence or passage.

Regular verbs with alpha contraction:

βοάω	I shout	ἔβόησα
ἑρωτάω	I ask (a question)	ἠρώτησα or ἠρόμην
κτάομαι (deponent)	I acquire	ἔκτησάμην
νικάω	I conquer, I win	ἐνίκησα

The following use alpha rather than eta before the sigma for the future and aorist:

γελάω	I laugh	ἐγέλασα
πειράομαι (deponent)	I try, I attempt	ἐπειρασάμην

In the case of ἑρωτάω (above), the second (strong) aorist form ἠρόμην is an alternative. The following verb however has only a second (strong) aorist (from a different stem), with which you are already familiar:

ὁράω	I see	εἶδον
------	-------	-------

Note that this verb changes the stem slightly in the imperfect: ἑώρων (α-ον)

Finally the following deponent verb contracts in a slightly different way: instead of alpha plus an *e* sound making long alpha (the normal rule), alpha plus an *e* sound here makes eta:

χράομαι	I use (+ <i>dat</i> )	ἐχρησάμην
---------	-----------------------	-----------

hence e.g. present tense third person singular *χρήται* (rather than *χράται*)

• Again, you should not worry too much about the minor irregularities. The common forms quickly become familiar, and the less common ones can be easily be checked in the *Reference Grammar*.

### Exercise 10.14

Translate into English:

- 1        ὁ Σωκράτης ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐτιμάτο.
- 2        οἱ ἐκεῖ οὐδὲν ἑώρων.
- 3        τοὺς τοῦ ἀγγέλου λόγους ἀκούσαντες πάντες ἐγέλασαν.
- 4        οἱ ἐκεῖ πολέμιοι ξίφεσι τε καὶ λίθοις ἐχρήσαντο.
- 5        τοὺς ἱππέας πολλὰ περὶ τῆς μάχης ἠρώτησα.
- 6        οἱ πολῖται πολὺν χρόνον βοήσαντες οὐκ ἔπεισαν τὸν στρατηγόν.
- 7        οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως στρατιῶται ἀφίκοντο ὡς τὸν χρυσὸν κτησόμενοι.
- 8        αἱ γυναῖκες ἐπειρῶντο τοὺς παῖδας τοὺς φεύγοντας διώκειν.
- 9        οἱ σύμμαχοι καίπερ νικώμενοι ἔτι μάχονται.
- 10       ἀρα ὁ διδάσκαλος ταύταις ταῖς βίβλοις χρῆται;

### Exercise 10.15

Translate into Greek:

- 1        Why are all the boys now shouting?
- 2        The girl was laughing on account of the strange old man.
- 3        After the war, the citizens acquired many islands.
- 4        Did you (pl) finally conquer those who had helped the enemy?
- 5        We often used to see the men who were trying to capture the ships.

### Exercise 10.16

## Arion and the Dolphin

Many tyrants attracted artists and musicians to their courts, which became important cultural centres. This story about a famous musician also illustrates how the colony cities of Italy and Sicily had become a major element in the wider Greek world.

- ἦν δὲ ποτε ἐν Κορίνθῳ κιθαρῳδός τις, Ἀρίων ὀνόματι. καὶ οὗτος ἄριστος ἦν, ὡς λέγουσι, τῶν τότε κιθαρῳδῶν. πολὺν χρόνον ἔμενε παρὰ τῷ Περιάνδρῳ, τῷ τῆς Κορίνθου τυράννῳ. ὕστερον δ' ἐβούλετο εἰς Ἰταλίαν τε καὶ Σικελίαν πλεῦσαι. πολλὰ δὲ χρήματα ἐκεῖ δεξάμενος διὰ τὴν τῆς
- 5 κιθάρας τέχνην, ἐβούλετο πρὸς Κόρινθον ἐπανελθεῖν.

	ποτε	once
	Κόρινθος -ου ἡ	Corinth (important city in south-central Greece)
	κιθαρῳδός -οῦ ὁ	lyre-player
	Ἀρίων -ονος ὁ	Arion
2	παρὰ	(+ dat) (here) at the court of
	Περιάνδρος -ου ὁ	Periander
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant
	Ἰταλία -ας ἡ	Italy
	Σικελία -ας ἡ	Sicily
5	κιθάρα -ας ἡ	lyre
	τέχνη -ης ἡ	skill
	ἐπανέρχομαι ἐπανήλθον	I return, I go back

εὔρεν οὖν ναὺν Κορινθίων τινῶν ἐν τῇ Ἰταλίᾳ ὄντων, πιστεύων οὐδένι  
 μάλλον ἢ τοῖς Κορινθίοις. καὶ ἀπέπλευσαν ἐκ Τάραντος. οἱ δὲ ναῦται,  
 ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς ἥδη ἐκὰς ὄντες, ἐβουλευσάντο τὸν Ἀρίονα ἐκβαλόντες τὰ  
 10 χρήματα κλέψαι. ὁ δέ, τοῦτο μαθὼν, ἤτησεν αὐτοὺς τὰ μὲν χρήματα  
 λαβεῖν, ἑαυτὸν δὲ σῶσαι. οἱ μέντοι ναῦται οὐδαμῶς ἐπείσθησαν, ἀλλ'  
 ἐκέλευσαν αὐτὸν ἢ ἑαυτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἢ εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐκπηδήσαι.  
 ὁ δ' Ἀρίων, "πρῶτον," ἔφη, "ἑάσατε με κιθαρίζειν." καὶ ὑπέσχετο τοῦτο  
 ποιήσας εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐκπηδήσειν. οἱ δὲ ναῦται, ἠδόμενοι διότι τοῦ  
 ἀρίστου κιθαρωδοῦ ἀκούσεσθαι ἔμελλον, ἐδέξαντο τοὺς λόγους· καὶ εἰς  
 15 μέσῃ τὴν ναὺν εἰσῆλθον ὡς ἀκουσόμενοι. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Ἀρίων, φορῶν  
 πᾶσαν τὴν σκευὴν καὶ τὴν κιθάραν λαβὼν, διεξῆλθε τὸν ὄρθιον νόμον.  
 καὶ τοῦτο ποιήσας εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐξεπήδησε σὺν πάσῃ τῇ σκευῇ. οἱ  
 δὲ ναῦται πρὸς τὴν Κόρινθον ἀπέπλευσαν.

τὸν δ' Ἀρίονα δελφίς τις, ὡς λέγουσιν, ὑπολαβὼν εἰς τὴν Ταίναρον  
 20 ἤνεγκεν. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ κιθαρωδός, πᾶσαν τὴν σκευὴν ἔτι ἔχων, πρὸς τὴν  
 Κόρινθον κατὰ γῆν ἐπορεύετο· καὶ ἀφικόμενος εἶπε τῷ Περιάνδρῳ πάντα  
 τὰ γενόμενα. ὁ δὲ τύραννος, τοῖς λόγοις οὐ πιστεύων, ἐκέλευσε τὸν  
 Ἀρίονα φυλάσσεσθαι, καὶ τοὺς ναύτας ἔμενεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρήσαν ὁ  
 Περιάνδρος ἠρώτησεν αὐτοὺς περὶ τοῦ Ἀρίονος. οἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι  
 25 ἔλιπον αὐτὸν εὖ πράσσοντα ἐν Ἰταλίᾳ. τῶν δὲ ναύτων ἔτι λεγόντων, ὁ  
 Ἀρίων, πᾶσαν τὴν σκευὴν ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἔχων, ἐπιφαίνεται\* αὐτοῖς. οἱ οὖν  
 ναῦται ὡμολόγησαν τί ἐγένετο.

	Κορίνθιοι -ων οἱ	Corinthians
	Τάρας -αντος ὁ	Tarentum ( <i>Greek city at southern tip of Italy</i> )
	ἐκάς	far
	βουλεύομαι ἐβουλευσάμην	I plot, I conspire
10	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
	ἐκπηδάω ἐξεπήδησα	I jump out
	ἑάω	I allow
	κιθαρίζω	I play the lyre
	ἠδομαι	I am delighted
15	μέσος -η -ον	middle (part of)
	φορέω	I wear
	σκευή -ης ἡ	gear
	διεξέρχομαι διεξῆλθον	I go through, I perform
16	ὄρθιος νόμος ὁ	the 'orthian [ <i>lit upright</i> ] chant' ( <i>a traditional stirring tune of very high pitch</i> )
	σύν	with (+ <i>dat</i> )
	δελφίς -ῖνος ὁ	dolphin
	ὑπολαμβάνω ὑπέλαβον	I scoop up
	Ταίναρος -ου ἡ	Taenarus ( <i>city at southern tip of Greece</i> )
21	κατά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) ( <i>here</i> ) by
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant
	ἐπιφαίνομαι	I appear ( <i>commonly used of gods, giving here a sense of the uncanny</i> )
	ὁμολογέω ὡμολόγησα	( <i>here</i> ) I confess

\* this is a 'historic present': a present tense used for vividness in a narrative taking place in the past

## Irregular comparatives and superlatives

In Chapter 7 we met the regular comparative and superlative of 2-1-2 adjectives:

<i>positive</i>		<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
σοφός	wise	σοφώτερος	σοφώτατος
δεινός	strange	δεινότερος	δεινότατος

In Chapter 9 we met the comparative of third declension (3-1-3 and 3-3) adjectives, which represent minor variations on the same pattern:

βραδύς	slow	βραδύτερος	βραδύτατος
ἀληθής	true	ἀληθέστερος	ἀληθέστατος

We have also however met some superlatives formed in a different way: ἄριστος (*best/very good*), κάκιστος (*worst/very bad*), κάλλιστος (*most beautiful/very beautiful*), μέγιστος (*greatest/very great*). Associated with these is a different way of forming the comparative:

μείζων = greater, bigger

	<i>masculine/feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i> <i>nom</i>	μείζων	μείζον
<i>acc</i>	μείζον-α	μείζον
<i>gen</i>	μείζον-ος	μείζον-ος
<i>dat</i>	μείζον-ι	μείζον-ι
<i>pl</i> <i>nom</i>	μείζον-ες	μείζον-α
<i>acc</i>	μείζον-ας	μείζον-α
<i>gen</i>	μείζόν-ων	μείζόν-ων
<i>dat</i>	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)

This is similar in declension to an active participle (e.g. πύων) but:

- (a) there is no separate feminine (it is 3-3, not 3-1-3)
- (b) the stem ends in -ον-, not -οντ-

The dative plural undergoes the telescoping (-οσι for -ονσι) which we have seen in many third declension words.

A number of very common adjectives (in most cases you have already met the positive) form their comparative like this, along with the associated superlative:

<i>positive</i>		<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
ἀγαθός	good	ἀμείνων	ἄριστος
αἰσχρός	shameful	αἰσχίων	αἰσχιστος
ἐχθρός	hostile	ἐχθίων	ἐχθιστος
ἡδύς	sweet	ἡδίων	ἡδιστος
κακός	bad	κακίων	κάκιστος
καλός	fine, beautiful	καλλίων	κάλλιστος
μέγας	great	μείζων	μέγιστος
ὀλίγος	small amount	ἐλάσσων	ἐλάχιστος
πολύς	much	πλείων	πλείστος
ῥάδιος	easy	ῥάων	ῥᾶστος
ταχύς	quick	θάσσων	τάχιστος



The following are more common in the plural:

ὀλίγοι	few	ἐλάχιστονες	ἐλάχιστοι
πολλοί	many	πλείονες	πλείστοι

As we have seen repeatedly, the commonest words are often the most irregular. This means they quickly become familiar. There is however a full list in the Reference Grammar (page 203), where forms can be checked.

- A very important idiom is the use of ὥς with a superlative (though this can be done with the adjective, it is normally found with the adverb):

ὥς τάχιστα as quickly as possible

- The rules about the formation of adverbs which we met in Chapter 3 (positive ending in -ως) and Chapter 7 (comparative = neuter singular, and superlative = neuter plural, of corresponding adjective) apply here too:

e.g.	ῥαδίως	ῥαον	ῥαστα
	easily	more easily	most easily

- Note the following adverbs (the positive is not needed for GCSE):

(μάλα)	μᾶλλον	μάλιστα
(very)	more, rather	especially, very much

- Note that the familiar adverbs ὕστερον = *later* and πρότερον = *earlier, previously* are in origin comparatives.

#### Exercise 10.17

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁδε ὁ ἵππος θάσσω ἐστὶν ἐκείνου.
- 2 ἄρα οἱ πολέμιοι ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ αἵσχιον ἐπραξαν ἢ οἱ ἡμέτεροι σύμμαχοι;
- 3 οἶδα τὴν τῆς κόρης φωνὴν ἡδίστην οὖσαν.
- 4 τὸ τοῦ δούλου ἔργον φαίνεται ῥαον εἶναι.
- 5 πλείονες στρατιῶται ἡμῖν εἰσιν ἢ τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις.
- 6 ὁ γέρον σῖτον ἐλάχιστον εἶχεν.
- 7 ἡ σὴ οἰκία μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ἐμῆς.
- 8 ὁ διδάσκαλος καλῶς μὲν λέγει, κάλλιστα δὲ γράφει.
- 9 τὸ τοῦ βασιλέως ναυτικὸν ἀμείνον ἐστὶ τοῦ ὑμετέρου.
- 10 τίς τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀριστός ἐστιν;

#### Exercise 10.18

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 This woman is more beautiful than all the others.
- 2 The boys ran away as quickly as possible.
- 3 The deeds done by those men were very shameful.
- 4 Those girls will hear the shouts more easily than the old man (will).
- 5 I know that you have the finest of the gifts, young man.

Exercise 10.19

## Periander and Thrasybulus

*Tyrants in different Greek cities had a network of connections for mutual benefit. The son of a tyrant often had a hard time when he succeeded his father: the original tyrant may have won and held power by personal qualities the son did not share, and to pass on power to him made the regime look uncomfortably like an old-fashioned hereditary monarchy. Many tyrannies therefore did not last beyond a second generation. Here Periander (whom we have already met as host to Arion) early in his reign receives some advice from the established tyrant of Miletus.*

- ὁ δὲ Κύψελος ὁ τῆς Κορίνθου τύραννος ἀπέθανεν ἄρξας πολλὰ ἔτη. ὁ δὲ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, Περίανδρος ὀνόματι, πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ πατρὸς ἡπιώτερος ἐφαίνετο εἶναι, ἔπειτα δὲ πολλῶ κακίων ἐγένετο. ἄγγελον γὰρ ὡς Θρασύβουλον τὸν τῆς Μιλήτου τύραννον πέμψας ἤρετο πῶς ἄριστα
- 5 τύραννός τις οἴός τ' ἐστὶ τὰ τῆς πόλεως πράσσειν. ὁ οὖν Θρασύβουλος τὸν παρὰ τοῦ Περίανδρου ἐλθόντα ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξήγαγεν εἰς ἀγρόν τινα ἐσπαρμένον. καὶ διὰ τοῦ ἀγροῦ βαδίζων, ὁ Θρασύβουλος ἔκοπτε τοὺς ὑπερέχοντας τῶν σταχύων, ὥστε πάντες διεφθάρησαν. οὐδὲν μέντοι λόγοις ἀπεκρίνατο.
- 10 ὁ οὖν ἄγγελος μάλιστα θαυμάζων εἰς τὴν Κόρινθον ἐπανήλθεν. καὶ ὁ Περίανδρος αὐτῷ ἀφικομένῳ "ἄρ' οὐκ, ὦ ἄνθρωπε," ἔφη, "ἀγαθὰ ἀγγελεῖς μοι;" ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι νομίζει τὸν Θρασύβουλον, ὡς τοὺς τε ἑαυτοῦ στάχυν διαφθεῖραντα καὶ οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενον, σαφῶς μαίνεσθαι. ὁ μέντοι Περίανδρος, ἄκουσας τὸν Θρασύβουλον ταῦτα τὰ δεινὰ πράξαντα,
- 15 καίπερ τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἀποροῦντος, εὐθύς αὐτὸς ἦσθετο τί χρὴ ποιεῖν. ὁ γὰρ Θρασύβουλος, ὡς ῥαδίως ἐπύθετο, ἐκέλευεν αὐτῷ φονεῦν τοὺς ὑπερέχοντας τῶν πολιτῶν, ὡς παύσοντι αὐτοὺς ὕστερον ἐχθροὺς γένεσθαι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Περίανδρος, τοῖς τοῦ Θρασυβούλου λόγοις πειθόμενος, ἐκείνους τοὺς πολίτας ὡς τάχιστα ἀπέκτεινεν.

	Κύψελος -ου ὁ	Cypselus
	Κόρινθος -ου ἡ	Corinth
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant
	Περίανδρος -ου ὁ	Periander
2	ἡπιος -α -ον	mild
	ὡς	(as prep + acc) to (a person)
	Θρασύβουλος -ου ὁ	Thrasybulus
	Μίλητος -ου ὁ	Miletus (Greek city in modern Turkey)
	παρὰ	(+ gen) from
7	ἐσπαρμένος -η -ον	with a standing crop
	βαδίζω	I walk
	ὑπερέχω	I stick up, I stand out
	στάχυν -υος ὁ	ear of corn
	ἐπανέρχομαι ἐπανήλθον	I return, I go back
11	ἄρ' (= ἄρα) οὐ(κ)	surely ... ?
	σαφῶς	clearly
	μαίνομαι	I am mad
	ἀπορέω	I am at a loss

## Prepositions

We have met a considerable number of prepositions since Chapter 1. The following points should be familiar:

- (a) prepositions take the accusative, genitive, or dative case (and some can take more than one of these)
- (b) prepositions make more specific a meaning or flavour which the case has already:
  - with the *accusative*                      - motion towards or through
  - with the *genitive*                         - separation, going away from
  - with the *dative*                            - rest, staying put
 (not every example fits this pattern neatly, but it is a good general guide)
- (c) many prepositions are also found as prefixes in compound verbs

• Some words can be either adverbs (with a verb, and telling you for example where or when something happened) or prepositions (with a noun). In this category is ἐγγύς = *near* (which we met in Chapter 5).

The following table shows the common meanings with the different cases of all the common prepositions (you have seen one or more usages of most of them already):

<i>preposition</i>	+ <i>acc</i>	+ <i>gen</i>	+ <i>dat</i>
ἀνά	up		
ἀνευ		without	
ἀπό		from, away from	
διά	on account of, because of	through	
ἐγγύς		near	
εἰς	into, to		
ἐκ, ἐξ		out of, from	
ἐν			in, among
ἐπί	against, onto, on, at		
κατά	according to, by, down, along	down (from)	
μετά	after	with	
παρά	contrary to	from (a person)	
περί	round, around	about, concerning	
πλήν		except	
πρό		before, in front of	
πρός	to, towards, against		
ὑπέρ		on behalf of	
ὑπό		by (a person)	under

• Note the following special prepositional phrases:

κατὰ γῆν	by land
δί' ὀλίγου	soon ( <i>literally</i> through or after a little [time])

• Note also that διότι = *because* is a combination of διά and ὅτι (*literally* on account of [the fact] that)

## Exercise 10.20

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ ἵππος πρὸς τὸν ἄγρὸν ταχέως προσέβη.
- 2 πολλοὶ τῶν παίδων διὰ νόσον οὐ παρήσαν.
- 3 αἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων νῆες περὶ τὴν νῆσον ἔπλεον.
- 4 οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπὶ τὰ ἡμέτρα τείχη ἔδραμον.
- 5 ἄρα κατὰ τὴν ἐμὴν βουλὴν ταῦτα λέγεις;
- 6 ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ εἰς τὴν ὕλην ἐπορευόμεθα.
- 7 οὐδὲν περὶ τῆς ἐκεῖ συμφορᾶς ἠκούσαμεν.
- 8 πρὸ τοῦ πολέμου οὐδεὶς ἠθελε κατὰ θάλασσαν μάχεσθαι.
- 9 ταῦτα ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως ἐποιήθη, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τοὺς νόμους.
- 10 αὐτὴ ἡ παῖς μετὰ πολλῶν φίλων ἀφίκετο.

## Compound verbs

We have met many compound verbs since Chapter 4. You are expected to be able to work out the meaning of compounds using common prefixes (equating to some of the prepositions listed above). In particular look out for the following:

ἀνα-	up
ἀπο-	from, away
δια-	through
εἰς-	into
ἐκ-	out, out of
ἐν-	in
κατα-	down
περι-	around
προς-	to, towards

• Remember that the augment in compound verbs comes after the prefix. It usually displaces a vowel on the prefix (hence ἀπέβαλον), but περί keeps the iota (hence περιέδραμον).

• As in other contexts, small adjustments are made in the interest of pronunciation: hence ἐν + βαίνω becomes ἐμβαίνω = *I go in* (but ἐνέβην in the aorist, where the change is not needed).

• Remember that the prefix of a compound may simply repeat for emphasis something also expressed by an adjacent preposition:

ἐκβαίνομεν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς      We go out of the marketplace.

Or it may give further information:

ἐκβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν ὁδόν      We go out (*implying e.g. of our house*) into the road.

• Sometimes the Greeks seem to have forgotten that a word was a compound (hence the aorist of καθίζω is ἐκάθισα), or to have forgotten some of the time (hence both ἐκάθευδον and καθηύδον are found as the imperfect of καθεύδω = *I sleep*).

• Note two important compounds of βάλλω, with meanings that extend their literal sense:

- (1) εἰσβάλλω can have its basic meaning *I throw into*, but often means *I invade* (usually followed by εἰς again as a preposition with the accusative)
- (2) προσβάλλω (instead of the literal *I throw towards*) usually means, as we saw in Chapter 8, *I attack* (followed by the dative)

• Some prefixes have further special uses: e.g. ἐκ- can mean *to a successful conclusion* (like English *work out* a problem), so ἐκφεύγω means *escape* (i.e. flee successfully, get away).

### Exercise 10.21

*Translate into English:*

- 1 πάντες οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ἐξέδραμον εἰς τὰς τῆς πόλεως ὁδοὺς.
- 2 διὰ τί ἀποβάλλετε ταύτας τὰς βίβλους;
- 3 οἱ τῶν συμμάχων ἱππεῖς πρὸ τῶν τῆς πόλεως πυλῶν μένουσιν.
- 4 ὁ δοῦλος εἰσέφερε τὸν σῖτον εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν.
- 5 οἱ στρατιῶται ἄνευ ὕδατος ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος ἀνέβησαν.
- 6 ἄρα ἔξεστι διὰ τῆς πύλης διελθεῖν;
- 7 οἱ πολέμιοι εἰς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν τέλος εἰσέβαλον.
- 8 ὁ Ζεὺς κατὰ τοῦ ὄρους κατέβη.
- 9 ὁ γέρον, ὑπὸ δένδρῳ καθίζων, δι' ὀλίγου ἐκάθευδεν.
- 10 οὐδὲν ὕδωρ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἔνεστιν.

### Exercise 10.22

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 All the girls ran out into the marketplace.
- 2 We went to the old man's house.
- 3 The soldiers attacked the walls of the city.
- 4 That woman is now going away.
- 5 Why did the men in the assembly not send out messengers?

## Direct and indirect questions

We first met direct questions in Chapter 3. Any sentence can be made into a question simply by adding a question mark (;), but we saw that *open* questions (asking whether a statement is **true**, so that the answer will be *yes* or *no*) are commonly signalled by ἄρα at the beginning of the sentence:

ἄρα ὁ παῖς μῶρός ἐστιν;  
Is the boy stupid?

We also in Chapter 3 met direct questions asking for specific information, introduced by one of a number of question words (mostly beginning with π-, where the equivalent Latin words often have *qu-* and the English ones *wh-*, all of which are historically related), for example:

πότε;	when?
ποῦ;	where?
πῶς;	how?

Greek is very accurate in expressing *where* - ποῦ means *where at*? In Chapter 5 we met:

πόθεν;	where from?
--------	-------------

Now note also:

ποῖ;	where to?
------	-----------

As well as these adverbs, we met in Chapter 5 the question (or *interrogative*) pronoun/ adjective τίς; τί; = *who? which? what?*

The following question adjectives also follow the pattern of beginning with π- :

	ποῖος -α -ον;	what sort of?
	πόσος -η -ον;	how big? how much?
pl	πόσοι -αι -α;	how many?

These *interrogatives* ask the questions answered by the *demonstrative* words we met in Chapter 7: ποῖος correlates with τοιοῦτος (*such, of such a kind*), πόσος with τοσοῦτος (*so great*) and πόσοι with τοσοῦτοι (*so many*). Be careful to distinguish between them: note throughout that the syllable -οι- refers to *type* or *quality*, -ος- to *size* or *quantity*.

• ποῖος and πόσος correspond to Latin *qualis* and *quantus*. But (as with the demonstratives - see page 30) there is a difference of use: the plural of *quantus* asks about the individual size of plural things, and a separate word *quot* asks *how many*.

Indirect (or *reported*) questions operate in a very similar way to indirect statements using a *that* clause: the tense of the original direct speech is retained (with adjustment of the English if the introductory verb is past tense). They are most commonly introduced by the verb ἐρωτάω = *I ask* (which we have met in this chapter), with its alternative aorists: the first (weak) aorist ἠρώτησα and the more common second (strong) middle-form aorist ἠρόμην.

• Note the distinction between ἐρωτάω = *I ask (a question)* and αἰτέω = *I ask (for something), I beg*.

Open questions (asking whether a statement is true) are normally introduced by εἰ:

ἠρωτήσω τὸν γέροντα εἰ ὁ παῖς μῶρός ἐστιν.  
I shall ask the old man if (*or whether*) the boy is stupid.

(εἰ is of course the normal Greek word for *if*, used in other contexts too; *if* is perfectly possible in English to represent an indirect question, but *whether* often sounds better).

• As with indirect statements using a *that* clause, if the introductory verb in an indirect question is past tense the verb in the indirect question can be put in a form called the *optative* - see Chapter 11. But here too the indicative is often kept, to give a sense of the vividness or immediacy of the original words.

• Although verbs such as ἐρωτάω and πυνθάνομαι commonly introduce indirect questions, many other verbs can do so. The question need not have been actually spoken, but may be only implied:

βούλομαι γνῶναι πῶς ἡ ναὺς ἐποιήθη.  
I want to know how the ship was made.

This means that indirect questions are less easy to spot than some constructions, but they translate naturally, and the presence of an interrogative word usually gives a clue.

## Exercise 10.23

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἀρα πάντα τὸν σῖτον ἐφάγετε, ὦ παῖδες;
- 2 οὗτος ὁ ἄγγελος ἐρώτα εἰ περὶ τῶν ἐκεῖ γενομένων ἴσμεν.
- 3 αἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἤρουντο πόθεν οἱ σύμμαχοι πέμπονται.
- 4 οὐκ οἶδα τίς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἐπεμψεν.
- 5 τοσοῦτοι τότε ἀφίκοντο ὥστ' οὐχ οἶοι τ' ἡμεν μαθεῖν πόθεν ἦλθον.
- 6 ποῖ φεύγεις, ὦ δοῦλε, καὶ διὰ τί;

- 7 αἰτήσω ἐκεῖνον τὸν πολίτην εἰπεῖν πῶς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ἔπεισεν.  
 8 ἄρα ἡ παῖς τοιαύτη ἐστὶν ὥστε ταῦτα πράσσειν;  
 9 χαλεπὸν ἐστὶ γινῶναι εἰ χειμῶνός ἐστιν ἀσφαλῆς ἡ ὁδός.  
 10 ἄρα οἱ νεανῖαι τοσαῦτα ἄθλα ἐκτήσαντο ὥστε ὑπὸ πάντων  
 θαυμάζεσθαι;

#### Exercise 10.24

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 Do the citizens trust that general?  
 2 This woman asked whether I had seen the slave running away.  
 3 What sort of food do you like, children?  
 4 Who are those slaves, and where are they running to?  
 5 The old man asked the stranger where the temple was.

#### Exercise 10.25

### Hippocleides dances away his marriage

*This story deals with another tyrant, typical in his lavish lifestyle, prestigious victories in the Olympic Games, and concern with marrying his daughter advantageously. But the intended son-in-law proves a rebel. His final words here became proverbial for a devil-may-care attitude.*

- ὁ Κλεισθένης τοῦ Σικυῶνος ἐτυράννευεν. ἦν δ' αὐτῷ θυγάτηρ καλλίστη,  
 Ἀγαρίστη ὀνόματι. ὁ οὖν πατὴρ ἐβούλετο τὸν ἄριστον πάντων τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων εὐρεῖν ὡς κηδεστήν. τῶν δ' Ὀλυμπίων τότε γενομένων, ὁ  
 Κλεισθένης ἐνίκησε τῷ ἄρματι τῷ τεθρίπῳ. τὸ οὖν ὄνομα αὐτοῦ ἔτι  
 5 μείζον κατὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐγένετο. καὶ ἤγγειλε τῷ πλήθει τῷ ἐν τοῖς  
 Ὀλυμπίοις παρόντι, "εἴ τις βούλεται κηδεστής μοι γένεσθαι, δεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς  
 τὸν Σικυῶνα ἀφικόμενον ἀγωνίζεσθαι." πολλοὶ οὖν νεανῖαι ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς  
 Ἑλλάδος πόλεων πρὸς τὸν Σικυῶνα προσήλθον. καὶ ὁ Κλεισθένης δρόμον  
 τε καὶ παλαίστραν τοῖς ἀγωνιζομένοις παρεσκεύασεν.

	Κλεισθένης -ους ὁ	Cleisthenes
	Σικυῶν -ῶνος ὁ	Sicyon (city in north Peloponnese)
	τυραννέω	I am tyrant
	Ἀγαρίστη -ης ἡ	Agariste
3	Ἕλλην -ηνος ὁ	Greek, Greek man
	κηδεστής -οῦ ὁ	son-in-law
	Ὀλύμπια -ων τά	Olympic games
	ἄρμα -ατος τό	chariot
	τέθριππος -ον	four-horse
5	κατὰ	(+ acc) (here) throughout
	Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ	Greece
	πλήθος -ους τό	crowd
	ἀγωνίζομαι	I take part in contests
	δρόμος -ου ὁ	running track
9	παλαίστρα -ας ἡ	wrestling ground

- 10 οἱ δὲ νεανίαί ἐν τῷ Σικυῶνι πολὺν χρόνον ἔμενον. καὶ ἤδοντο τοῦτο ποιοῦντες διότι ὁ Κλεισθένης τήν τε θυγατέρα καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα τῷ νικήσαντι ὑπέσχετο. ὁ δὲ τύραννος τοὺς νεανίας περὶ τοῦ γένους, τῆς παιδείας, τῶν τρόπων πολλὰ ἠρώτα, καὶ ἐσκόπει αὐτοὺς ἐν τοῖς ἀγῶσιν.
- 15 Κλεισθένει μάλιστα ἤρεσκεν. τέλος οὖν ὁ τύραννος ἔμελλεν ἀγγελεῖν τὸν νικήσαντα.

- καὶ βοῦς ἑκατὸν θύσας δεῖπνον μέγιστον τοῖς νεανίαις παρέσχεν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον πάντες οἱ παρόντες περὶ τῆς μουσικῆς διελέγοντο. τότε δὴ ὁ Ἴπποκλείδης, πολὺν οἶνον ἤδη πιὼν, ἐκέλευσε τὸν αὐλητὴν αὐλησαι. τοῦ
- 20 δ' αὐλητοῦ πειθομένου, ὁ Ἴπποκλείδης ὠρχήσατο.

- καὶ ἐφαίνετο μὲν ἑαυτῷ καλῶς ὀρχεῖσθαι· τῷ δὲ Κλεισθένει οὐδαμῶς ἤρεσκε ταῦτα πράσσω. καὶ δι' ὀλίγου ὁ Ἴπποκλείδης ἐκέλευσε τοὺς δούλους τράπεζαν εἰσενέγκαι. εἰσελθοῦσης δὲ τῆς τραπέζης πολλὰ σχήματα ὠρχήσατο. τέλος δέ, τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐπὶ τὴν τράπεζαν ἔρεισας,
- 25 τοὺς σκέλεσιν ἐχειρονόμησεν. ὁ δὲ Κλεισθένης, καίπερ οὐδαμῶς τῇ ὀρχήσει ἠδόμενος ἀλλὰ μάλιστα ὀργιζόμενος, πρῶτον μὲν οὐδὲν εἶπεν. ἐπεὶ δ' εἶδε τὸν Ἴπποκλείδην τοῖς σκέλεσιν χειρονομοῦντα, οὐκέτι ἑαυτὸν κατέχειν οἷός τ' ὦν, εἶπεν, "ἀπωρχήσω τὸν γάμον." ὁ δὲ Ἴπποκλείδης ἀπεκρίνατο, "οὐ φροντὶς Ἴπποκλείδην."

	ἡδομαι	I enjoy (+ participle, line 10; + dat, line 26)
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	tyrant
	παιδεία -ας ἡ	education
	τρόπος -ου ὁ	lit way, (pl here) lifestyle
13	σκοπέω	I watch
	Ἴπποκλείδης -ου ὁ	Hippocleides
	ἄρέσκω	I please, I am pleasing to (+ dat)
	βοῦς βοός ὁ	ox
	ἑκατόν	100
18	μουσική -ης ἡ	music
	διαλέγομαι	I have a discussion
	αὐλητής -ου ὁ	flute-player
	αὐλέω ηὔλησα	I play the flute
	ὀρχέομαι ὠρχησάμην	I dance
21	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
	τράπεζα -ης ἡ	table
	εἰσφέρω εἰσήνεγκα	I bring in
	σχῆμα -ατος τό	dance-figure
	ἐρείδω ἤρεια	I lean (something), I rest (something)
25	σκέλος -ους τό	leg
	χειρονομέω ἐχειρονόμησα	I gesticulate
	ὀρχησις -εως ἡ	dancing
	κατέχω	I restrain
	ἀπορχέομαι ἀπωρχησάμην	I dance away
28	γάμος -ου ὁ	marriage
	φροντὶς -ίδος ἡ	care, concern



## Vocabulary checklist for Chapter 10

αἰσχρός -ά -όν	shameful
αἷτιος -α -ον	to blame (for), responsible (for) (+ <i>gen</i> )
ἀμεινων -ον (ἀμεινον-)	better ( <i>comparative of</i> ἀγαθός)
ἀνά	up (+ <i>acc</i> )
ἄνευ	without (+ <i>gen</i> )
βοάω ἐβόησα	I shout
γελάω ἐγέλασα	I laugh
δί' ὀλίγου	after a short time, soon
(δίδωμι) <i>fut</i> δώσω <i>aor</i> ἔδωκα	I give
εἰσβάλλω ἐξέβαλον	I throw into; I invade
ἐκφεύγω ἐξέφυγον	I escape
ἐλάσσων -ον (ἐλασσον-)	less, weaker, inferior
<i>pl</i> ἐλάσσονες -α (ἐλασσον-)	fewer
ἐλάχιστος -η -ον	least, very little (of), weakest
<i>pl</i> ἐλάχιστοι -αι -α	fewest
Ἕλλην -ηνος ὁ	Greek, Greek man
ἐπί	(+ <i>acc</i> ) against, onto, on, at
ἐρωτάω ἠρώτησα <i>or</i> ἠρόμην	I ask (a question)
θάσσων -ον (θασσον-)	quicker, swifter ( <i>comparative of</i> ταχύς)
καθεύδω <i>imperfect</i> ἐκαθεύδον <i>or</i>	
καθηύδον	I sleep
κακίων -ον (κακιον-)	worse ( <i>comparative of</i> κακός)
κατά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) according to; by, down, along
κατὰ γῆν	(+ <i>gen</i> ) down, down from
κτάομαι ἐκτησάμην	by land
μάλιστα	I obtain, I acquire
μείζων -ον (μειζον-)	especially, most of all ( <i>adv</i> )
νικάω ἐνίκησα	greater, bigger ( <i>comparative of</i> μέγας)
νομίζω ἐνόμισα	I conquer, I win
οἶδα	I think, I consider
ὁράω εἶδον	I know
παρά	I see
πειράομαι ἐπειρασάμην	(+ <i>acc</i> ) contrary to
περί	(+ <i>gen</i> ) from (a person)
πλείων -ον (πλειον-)	I try
<i>pl</i> πλείονες -α	(+ <i>acc</i> ) around
πλείστος -η -ον	(+ <i>gen</i> ) about, concerning
<i>pl</i> πλείστοι -αι -α	more (of)
πλήν	more ( <i>comparative of</i> πολλοί)
ποῖ;	very much (of), very great
ποῖος; -α; -ον;	most, very many ( <i>superlative of</i> πολλοί)
	except (+ <i>gen</i> )
	where to?
	what sort of?

πόσος; -η; -ον;	how big?
pl πόσοι; -αι; -α;	how many?
πρό	before, in front of (+ <i>gen</i> )
ῥαδιος -α -ον	easy
τάχιστος -η -ον	fastest, very quick ( <i>superlative of ταχύς</i> )
ὥς τάχιστα	as quickly as possible
τιμάω ἐτίμησα	I honour
ὑπέρ	(+ <i>gen</i> ) on behalf of
φημί <i>imperfect</i> ἔφην	I say
χράομαι ἐχρησάμην	I use (+ <i>dat</i> )

Also note in advance for Chapter 11 the following words associated with particular constructions:

ἄν	( <i>makes clause indefinite or conditional e.g. would</i> )
ἐάν	if ( <i>a combination of εἰ and ἄν</i> )
ἵνα	in order to, so that ( <i>introducing purpose clause</i> )

(45 words)

You have now met all the vocabulary needed for GCSE.

# Chapter 11

## Present and aorist subjunctive

As well as the indicative (the ordinary forms used to express *facts*), verbs in Greek (like Latin and other languages) have a *subjunctive* form (or *mood*). This has a number of jobs, but essentially it expresses a *proposition* or *possibility*, often represented in English by a translation such as *may*.

The subjunctive is very simple. Only present and aorist forms are in common use (differentiated by *aspect*: present for something that may happen generally, aorist if the reference is to one occasion). There are just two sets of endings for all subjunctives. They are simply lengthened versions of the normal primary active and middle/passive endings (if the vowel is long already, it just stays the same). Hence:

		<i>active (and aorist passive)</i>		<i>middle/passive (except aorist passive)</i>	
		<i>indicative</i>	<i>subjunctive</i>	<i>indicative</i>	<i>subjunctive</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	-ω	-ω	-ομαι	-ωμαι
	2	-εις	-ης	-η*	-η
	3	-ει	-η	-εται	-ηται
<i>pl</i>	1	-ομεν	-ωμεν	-ομεθα	-ωμεθα
	2	-ετε	-ητε	-εσθε	-ησθε
	3	-ουσι(ν)	-ωσι(ν)	-ονται	-ωνται

\* the indicative has the alternative ending -ει, but the subjunctive must always be -η

- Note that (as also happens with the endings of contracted verbs) iota becomes subscript, and upsilon simply disappears.
- Ambiguous forms (where the indicative and subjunctive are the same) have to be worked from the context.
- The subjunctive forms are made up using these endings on the appropriate stem (by the familiar building-block method) in a predictable way. As indicated above, the aorist passive uses the active endings: this is of course consistent with its indicative (ἐπαύσθην, like a root aorist active such as ἔβην) and its participle (παυσθείς, 3-1-3 in declension like an active participle such as παύων). Hence:

### *present subjunctive*

		<i>active</i>	<i>middle/passive</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	παύ-ω	παύ-ωμαι
	2	παύ-ης	παύ-η
	3	παύ-η	παύ-ηται
<i>pl</i>	1	παύ-ωμεν	παυ-ώμεθα
	2	παύ-ητε	παύ-ησθε
	3	παύ-ωσι(ν)	παύ-ωνται

### aorist subjunctive

		active	middle	passive
sg	1	παύσ-ω	παύσ-ωμαι	παυσθ-ῶ
	2	παύσ-ης	παύσ-ῃ	παυσθ-ῇς
	3	παύσ-ῃ	παύσ-ηται	παυσθ-ῇ
pl	1	παύσ-ωμεν	παυσ-ώμεθα	παυσθ-ώμεν
	2	παύσ-ητε	παύσ-ησθε	παυσθ-ήτε
	3	παύσ-ωσι(ν)	παύσ-ωνται	παυσθ-ώσι(ν)

Verbs with a second (strong) aorist operate in just the same way, using the appropriate stem:

sg	1	λάβ-ω	λάβ-ωμαι	ληφθ-ῶ
	2	λάβ-ης	λάβ-ῃ	ληφθ-ῇς
	3	λάβ-ῃ	λάβ-ηται	ληφθ-ῇ
pl	1	λάβ-ωμεν	λαβ-ώμεθα	ληφθ-ώμεν
	2	λάβ-ητε	λάβ-ησθε	ληφθ-ήτε
	3	λάβ-ωσιν	λάβ-ωνται	ληφθώσι(ν)

- The forms of the first (weak) aorist active and middle subjunctive look at first sight like future tenses (and the active first person singular is actually the same as the future indicative), but this is simply because the first (weak) aorist and future have the same stem - and note that *there is no future subjunctive*.

The subjunctive of the verb *to be* is the endings alone, with a smooth breathing (compare the relation of its participle ὄν to παύων):

sg	1	ὦ
	2	ῆς
	3	ῇ
pl	1	ὦμεν
	2	ῆτε
	3	ῶσι(ν)

- The subjunctive forms of contracted verbs follow the rules explained above. With verbs involving alpha contraction (e.g. τιμάω), the present subjunctive forms are exactly the same as the equivalent indicative (because all the endings already involve long vowels, which cannot be lengthened further): whether the verb is subjunctive must be deduced from the context. With verbs involving epsilon contraction (e.g. φιλέω), the present subjunctive forms are exactly like those of an ordinary verb. In the aorist, contraction is not involved, so contracted verbs simply add the normal subjunctive endings to the aorist stem.

- Because the subjunctive expresses a possibility rather than a fact, the negative used with it is predictably μή.

## Use of the subjunctive (1): Prohibition

We saw in Chapter 9 that Greek has a range of imperatives (active and middle, and present and aorist differentiated by *aspect*). But in *negative* commands (technically called *prohibitions*), although μή is used with the *present* imperative for a *general* prohibition (*don't ever do X*), if the reference is to one occasion μή is used not (as you would expect) with the aorist imperative, but with the second person of the aorist subjunctive. Hence:

μὴ κολάζετε τοὺς δούλους, ὦ στρατιῶται.  
Don't (ever) punish slaves (*as a class*), soldiers! (μὴ + present imperative)

μὴ κολάσῃτε τοῦτον τὸν δούλον, ὦ στρατιῶται.  
Don't punish this slave (*on this occasion*), soldiers! (μὴ + aorist subjunctive)

### Exercise 11.1

*Translate into English:*

- 1 μὴ ἀκούσῃτε τοὺς τοῦ ἀγγέλου λόγους, ὦ πολῖται.
- 2 μὴ λίπῃς τὰ ὄπλα ἐγγὺς τῆς θύρας, ὦ φύλαξ.
- 3 μὴ δέξῃσθε τάδε τὰ δῶρα.
- 4 μὴ κρύψῃς τὸν χρυσόν, ὦ δοῦλε.
- 5 μὴ λάβῃτε τὰ τοῦ γέροντος χρήματα, ὦ παῖδες.

### Use of the subjunctive (2): Purpose clauses

We saw in Chapter 6 that the future participle preceded by ὥς can be used to express purpose: *they arrived (as) being about to do X = they arrived in order to do X*.

Purpose can also be expressed (and this in fact is the more common, standard method) by a clause introduced by ἵνα = *in order to*. The verb in this clause is commonly subjunctive.

e.g. οἱ ξένοι πάρεσιν ἵνα τὴν πόλιν ἴδωσιν.  
The foreigners are here in order to (*literally* in order that they may) see the city.

(notice again *aorist* subjunctive because the reference is to one occasion)

A negative purpose clause has ἵνα μὴ = *in order not to*:

οἱ ναῦται φεύγουσιν ἵνα μὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ γίγαντος ληφθῶσιν.  
The sailors are running away in order not to (*literally* in order that they may not) be captured by the giant.

The use of μὴ (rather than οὐ) here is in line with its general application to possibilities rather than facts.

• Note that Latin likewise uses the 'non-factual' negative *ne* rather than *non* in purpose clauses, but uses it instead of *ut* (= in order to). Greek uses μὴ as well as ἵνα.

• If the main verb of the sentence is in the present or future, the verb in the ἵνα clause will *always* be subjunctive. If the main verb is in the past, the verb in the ἵνα clause can instead be in a form called the *optative* (see below), but is often subjunctive here too, on the principle of *vividness*, of retaining the immediacy of the intention the people had at the time. Remember that the subjunctive is formed from the *primary* endings, i.e. those normally used for present and future tenses. This *primary* characteristic is part of its meaning (regardless of whether the subjunctive is present or aorist: the aorist, used by aspect, has of course no reference to the past here).

• A purpose clause with ἵνα and the subjunctive may have the same subject as the main clause, or a new one (of course in the nominative; but sometimes indicated simply by a change of person ending).

There is not much difference of meaning between the two constructions for expressing purpose (ὥς + future participle, and ἵνα + subjunctive), but the participle version tends to be

used for an *assumed* purpose, rather than one known for a fact:

ἤκουον ὥς χρήσιμόν τι μαθησόμενοι.

They were listening in order to learn something useful.

(*implying* at least I assume that is why they were doing it)

- Note that (contrary to what might be guessed from English) the infinitive is not normally used in Greek (or in Latin) to express purpose. *To* (or the fuller *in order to*) works as a translation if the subject of the purpose clause is the same as the subject of the main clause. If the subject changes, the purpose clause needs to be translated with *so that* or *in order that*.

## Exercise 11.2

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ πολῖται ἐνθάδε μένουσιν ἵνα τοῦ βασιλέως ἀκούσωσιν.
- 2 ἀεὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς λέγε, ὦ παῖ, ἵνα πάντες πιστεύωσί σοι.
- 3 τὸν ποταμὸν διέβημεν ἵνα ἐκ τοῦ κινδύνου φύγωμεν.
- 4 ὁ ἄγγελος ἀφίκετο ὥς τὰ περὶ τῆς συμφορᾶς ἔρων.
- 5 οἱ δοῦλοι πρὸς τὴν νῆσον πέμπονται ἵνα τὰ δένδρα κόψωσιν.

## Exercise 11.3

Translate into Greek (using ἵνα and the subjunctive):

- 1 We always listen in order to learn.
- 2 The slave went into the house in order to steal money.
- 3 I am sending these gifts in order to honour the god.
- 4 The enemy always wait in order to attack the walls of the city.
- 5 We are guarding the women so that they may be safe.

## Exercise 11.4

### Rhapsinitus and the Thieves (1)

*This is one of the best and most famous stories in Herodotus. It forms part of his long account of Egypt (introduced at the point when the Persians invade it). Herodotus is recounting what he says he heard from Egyptian priests about the history of their country: the story of Rhapsinitus comes immediately after the account of Helen never really going to Troy. Despite its ostensible source, the story shows an entirely Greek admiration for cunning intelligence (μητις), much in the spirit of the Odyssey.*

ὁ Ῥαμψίνιτος βασιλεὺς τῶν Αἰγυπτίων ποτὲ ἐγένετο. ἦν δὲ τούτῳ τοσοῦτος πλούτος ὅσος οὐδενὶ τῶν μετ' αὐτὸν βασιλέων. βουλόμενος δ' ἀσφαλῶς φυλάσσειν τὰ χρήματα, ἐκέλευσεν οἰκοδόμον τινα θησαυρὸν παρασκευάσαι. ὁ οὖν οἰκοδόμος τῷ βασιλεὶ ἐπίθετο. καὶ ὁ θησαυρὸς

	Ῥαμψίνιτος -ου ὁ	Rhapsinitus
	Αἰγύπτιοι -ων οἱ	Egyptians
	ποτε	once, long ago
	πλούτος -ου ὁ	wealth
2	ὅσος -η -ον	as (much as)
	οἰκοδόμος -ου ὁ	builder
	θησαυρός -οῦ ὁ	treasure house

- 5 μέγιστός τε και κάλλιστος ποιηθείς τῷ βασιλεῖ μάλιστα ἤρεσκεν. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Ῥαμψίνιτος τὰ χρήματα ἐν αὐτῷ ἔθηκεν. ἀλλὰ ὁ οἰκοδόμος ἔνα λίθον ἐξαιρετὸν ἐν τῷ τοῦ θησαυροῦ τείχει ἐποίησεν.
- καὶ μετὰ πολὺν χρόνον ὁ οἰκοδόμος ἦσθετο ἀποθανούμενος. ἐκάλεσεν οὖν τοὺς υἱοὺς, οὓς δύο εἶχε, καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς, "βουλόμενος μὲν ὑμᾶς
- 10 βίον ἀγαθὸν καὶ πλούσιον ἔχειν, αὐτὸς δὲ οὐ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχων, ἐγὼ ἐβουλευσάμην τάδε." καὶ σαφῶς ἐξηγήσατο αὐτοῖς πῶς ὁ θησαυρὸς ἐποιήθη, καὶ ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ λίθος ὁ ἐξαιρετός· τὰ μέτρα ταῦτα διαφυλάσσοντες, δεσπότες τῶν τοῦ βασιλέως χρημάτων ἔσονται. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ οἰκοδόμος ἀπέθανεν.
- 15 οἱ δὲ παῖδες οὐ πολὺν χρόνον μέιναντες πρὸς τὸν θησαυρὸν νυκτὸς προσήλθον. καὶ τὸν λίθον τὸν ἐξαιρετὸν ῥαδίως ἤρουν. ῥαδίως καὶ εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν εἰσελθόντες πολλὰ χρήματα ἐξέφερον. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ βασιλεὺς, εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν εἰσελθὼν, ἐθαύμασεν ἰδὼν τὰ μὲν ἀγγεῖα χρημάτων κατεδεῖν ὄντα, τὰ δὲ τῶν θύρων σήμαντρα οὐ διαφθαρέντα.
- 20 ἐπεὶ δ' αὐτῷ πολλάκις εἰσελθόντι αἰεὶ ἐλάσσω ἐφαίνετο τὰ ἀγγεῖα (οἱ γὰρ κλέπται πολλάκις ἀφήρουν), τότε δὴ ἐποίησε τάδε· πάγας τινὰς ἔθηκε περὶ τὰ ἀγγεῖα ἐν οἷς τὰ χρήματα ἐνῆν. οἱ δὲ κλέπται ἦλθον ὥσπερ καὶ πρότερον. καὶ ὁ μὲν αὐτῶν, εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν εἰσελθὼν, ἐπεὶ πρὸς τὸ πρῶτον ἀγγεῖον προσέβαινεν, εὐθὺς τῇ πάγῃ ἐνείχετο. ὥς δ' ἔγνω τὸ κακὸν
- 25 ποῖόν ἐστι, τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἐκάλεσε καί, τὰ πάροντα φαίνων, ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν ὡς τάχιστα τὴν κεφαλὴν ἀποτεμεῖν, ἵνα μὴ γνωρισθεὶς διαφθεῖρη καὶ ἐκείνων. ὁ οὖν ἕτερος εὐ τε λέγειν αὐτὸν ἐνόμισε καὶ πεισθεὶς ταῦτα ἐποίησεν. ἔπειτα δὲ καθαρμόσας τὸν λίθον οἴκαδε ἀπήλθε, φέρων τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ κεφαλὴν.

	ἀρέσκω <i>imperfect</i> ἤρεσκον	I please, I am pleasing to (+ <i>dat</i> )
	ἔθηκα	( <i>irreg aor</i> ) I placed, I put
	οἰκοδόμος -ου ὁ	builder
	ἐξαιρετός -όν	removable
11	βουλεύομαι ἐβουλευσάμην	I plan, I contrive
	σαφῶς	clearly
	ἐξηγέομαι ἐξηγησάμην	I explain
	μέτρον -ου τό	measurement
	διαφυλάσσω	I preserve, I keep in mind
18	ἀγγεῖον -ου τό	vessel, jar
	καταδεής -ές	not full, with some missing
	σήμαντρον -ου τό	seal
	κλέπτης -ου ὁ	thief
	πάγη -ης ἡ	trap
22	ὥσπερ	just as
	ἐνέχω	I catch, I hold
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	ἀποτέμνω ἀπέτεμον	I cut off
	γνωρίζω <i>aor pass</i> ἐγνωρίσθην	I recognise
27	ἕτερος -α -ον	the other (of two)
	καθαρμόζω καθήρμωσα	I fit in place
	οἴκαδε	home, homewards

## Conditional sentences: Introduction

The basic pattern for any conditional sentence is: *If X happens, (then) Y happens*. We have seen several already, using εἰ (the normal word for *if*). The simplest present tense ones translate naturally and need no explanation (εἰ τοῦτο λέγει, σοφῶς λέγει *If he says this, he speaks wisely*), but two other distinctive types are common, and required for GCSE.

### Conditional sentences (1): Future open

Consider this example:

If he says this, he will speak wisely.

Here we realise from the second half that the first half refers to the future: English here uses a 'hidden future'. Greek too has a distinctive idiom for the *if* half of a future condition, using a subjunctive (present or aorist, determined as usual by aspect, not tense) and a special word for *if* - ἐάν:

*future open condition*

ἐάν τοῦτο εἴπῃ, σοφῶς ἐρεῖ.

If he says this (in the future), he will speak wisely.

This use of the subjunctive (called *indefinite*) is in line with other constructions where it expresses a *possibility*: this construction emphasises that the future is by its nature indefinite.

The distinctive word for *if* is another signal of the same idea: it is a combination of the normal εἰ with ἄν, which is used to indicate a potential rather than an actual event (see below).

- The *if* half of any conditional sentence is technically called the *protasis* (literally *put forward* as a premise), and the main clause the *apodosis* (literally *giving back*, i.e. providing an answer). The protasis usually comes before the apodosis, but (in both Greek and English) can come after it.
- In any conditional sentence, the negative in the protasis is μή and in the apodosis is οὐ.

### Exercise 11.5 (Future open conditions)

*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἐάν μὴ ἀκούσῃτε, οὐ μαθησεσθε.
- 2 ἐάν ἀνδρείως μαχώμεθα, αἰεὶ νικήσομεν.
- 3 λύσομέν σε ἐάν πολλὰ χρήματα παράσχῃς.
- 4 ἐάν οἱ πολῖται μὴ ἔλθωσιν, ἀποπέμψομεν τὸν ἄγγελον.
- 5 ἐάν ταῦτα αὐθις εἴπῃς, ὁ διδάσκαλος ὀργίζεται.

### Exercise 11.6

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 If you capture that horse, you will receive a gift.
- 2 If you stop the battle, general, we shall never conquer the enemy.
- 3 If the boy finds the money, I shall not punish him.



- 4 If the king hears about these things, he will be angry.
- 5 We shall be safe if we sacrifice to the gods.

## Conditional sentences (2): Past closed

If a condition referring to the future is naturally *indefinite* (we do not yet know what is going to happen), one referring to the past normally refers to events whose outcome is already a known fact (we cannot go back and change things). Conditions of this type are called *past closed* (or *unfulfilled*: the possibility of fulfilment is already closed off). They envisage a situation already known not to be true: *If X had happened, X would have happened* (but X did not in fact happen, so Y did not happen either). A *past closed* condition has the aorist indicative in both halves (protasis and apodosis), uses the normal ward *εἰ* for *if* in the protasis, and inserts the word *ἄν* in the apodosis to give the sense *would have*.

*past closed condition:*

εἰ τοῦτο εἶπε, σοφῶς ἄν εἶπεν.

If he had said this, he would have spoken wisely.

- Past closed conditions do not involve any subjunctive (or optative, the other mood used for possibilities rather than facts, introduced later in this chapter): this may seem surprising, given the use of the subjunctive for the equivalent construction in Latin, but they rely instead on the indefinite particle *ἄν* with the indicative to give the flavour of *would have* (implying *but in fact did not*). We have seen in other contexts that the Greek aorist is often translated like a Latin pluperfect: the insertion of *ἄν* makes it equivalent to a Latin pluperfect subjunctive.

- Note that because the verb *to be* has no aorist, its imperfect form has to be used where an aorist would strictly be required:

εἰ σοφὸς ἦν, σοφῶς ἄν εἶπεν.

If he had been wise, he would have spoken wisely.

## Exercise 11.7 (Past closed conditions)

*Translate into English:*

- 1 εἰ μὴ ἤυρομεν τὴν διὰ τῶν ὁρῶν ὁδόν, πρὸς τὴν κώμην οὐδέποτε ἄν ἄφικόμεθα.
- 2 εἰ αἱ γυναῖκες ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας ἦλθον, εἶδομεν ἄν αὐτάς.
- 3 εἰ οἱ πολῖται μὴ ἐφύλαξαν τὰς πύλας, ἐλήφθη ἄν ἡ πόλις.
- 4 εἰ τὸν τῶν συμμάχων ἄγγελον ἀπεπέμψατε, τὰ περὶ τῆς μάχης οὐκ ἄν ἤκούσατε.
- 5 δεινότατα ἄν ἔπαθες εἰ τὸν ἄρχοντα ἠδίκησας.

## Exercise 11.8

*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 If I had heard their shouts, I would have helped the citizens.
- 2 If the doctor had arrived earlier, the old man would not have died.
- 3 If the slave had been brave, he would have received a prize.
- 4 We would have saved these women if we had found out what was happening.
- 5 If you had not obeyed the king, slave, you would have been punished.

---

## Summary table of conditionals

Future open (*if X happens [in the future], Y will happen*)

*protasis* εἰ + subjunctive

*apodosis* future indicative

Past closed (*if X had happened, Y would have happened*)

*protasis* εἰ + aorist indicative

*apodosis* aorist indicative + ἄν

---

### Exercise 11.9 (Assorted conditional sentences)

*Translate into English:*

- 1 εἰ ἂν τὰ χρήματα εὖρης, δῶρόν σοι δώσω.
- 2 εἰ οἱ σύμμαχοι πρότερον ἀφίκοντο, αὕτη ἡ συμφορὰ οὐκ ἂν ἐγένετο.
- 3 εἰ τοὺς λόγους ἐμάθετε, ῥᾶν τε καὶ θάσσον ἂν τὸ ἔργον ἐποιήσατε.
- 4 εἰ ἂν καύσης τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, οὐδεὶς γινώσκεται.
- 5 εἰ τοῦτω τῷ γέροντι ἐβοήθησας, ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων ἂν ἐτιμήθης.
- 6 εἰ ἂν μὴ ἀκούης, οὐδὲν μαθήσῃ.
- 7 εἰ ἔγνω τὸς φίλους ἀπίοντας, πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἂν ἔδραμον.
- 8 εἰ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ τότε ἦσθα, πῶς ἂν ἀπεκρίνω;
- 9 εἰ ἂν τὸν ἱατρὸν καλέσης, ταχέως ἀφίξεται.
- 10 εἰ οἱ πολῖται σοφοὶ ἦσαν, τοὺς τοῦ ξένου λόγους ἂν ἤκουσαν.

### Exercise 11.10

#### Rhampsinitus and the Thieves (2)

- ἡμέρας δὲ γενομένης, ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν εἰσελθὼν μάλιστα ἡπόρει ὁρῶν τὸ μὲν τοῦ κλέπτου σῶμα ἐν τῇ πάγῃ ἄνευ τῆς κεφαλῆς λειφθέν, τὸν δὲ θησαυρὸν οὐτ' εἴσοδον οὐτ' ἐξοδον ἔχοντα. πολὺν δὲ χρόνον ἀπορῶν τί χρὴ ποιεῖν, τέλος κατεκρέμασε τὸν τοῦ κλέπτου νεκρὸν
- 5 ἔξω τοῦ τῶν βασιλείων τείχους. ἔπειτα δὲ φύλακας ἐκεῖ τάξας ἐκέλευσεν, εἰ ἂν ἴδωσί τινα δακρύοντα, συλλαβόντας ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτόν. ἡ δὲ τῶν κλεπτῶν μήτηρ, ἰδοῦσα τὸν νεκρὸν οὕτως φαινόμενον, ἐκέλευσε τὸν

θησαυρός -οῦ ὁ	treasure house
ἀπορέω	I am at a loss
κλέπτῃς -ου ὁ	thief
πάγῃ -ης ἡ	trap
3 εἴσοδος -ου ἡ	entrance
ἐξοδος -ου ἡ	exit
κατεκρέμασα	(irreg aor) I hung up
ἔξω	outside (+ gen)
βασίλεια -ων τά	palace
5 τάσσω ἔταξα	I draw up, I station
συλλαμβάνω συνέλαβον	I seize, I arrest

περιόντα παῖδα κτησάμενον οἴκαδε κομίσαι τὸ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σῶμα. "ἐὰν μὴ τοῦτο ποιήσης," ἔφη, "ἐγὼ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἐλθοῦσα πάντα λέξω."

- 10 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ υἱὸς καίπερ πολλὰ λέγων οὐκ ἔπεισεν αὐτήν, τέλος  
 παρεσκεύασεν ὄνους καὶ ἄσκοὺς οἴνου πληρεῖς. ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς ἄσκοὺς  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς ὄνους ἔθηκε καὶ ἤγαγεν αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὴν πόλιν. ἰδὼν δὲ τοὺς  
 τὸν νεκρὸν φυλάσσοντας, λάθρα ἔλυσεν τοὺς ποδεῶνας δυοῖν ἢ τριῶν  
 ἄσκων. ἐκρέοντος δὲ τοῦ οἴνου, ἐβόα καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἔτυπεν, ὥσπερ  
 15 οὐκ εἰδὼς τί χρὴ ποιεῖν. οἱ δὲ φύλακες, ἰδόντες πολὺν οἶνον ρέοντα,  
συνέτρεχον εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἄγγεῖα ἔχοντες, καὶ ἐπειρώντο ὡς πλεῖστον  
 συλλέγειν.
- ὁ δὲ κλέπτης πρῶτον μὲν ὀργὴν προσποιούμενος ἐλοιδόρει τοὺς φύλακας.  
 ἔπειτα δέ, τῶν φυλάκων γελώντων καὶ κελευόντων αὐτὸν μὴ φροντίζειν,  
 20 προσεποιήσατο καὶ παύσασθαι τῆς ὀργῆς. τοὺς οὖν ὄνους ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ  
κινήσας ἄσκον ἕνα τοῖς φύλαξιν ἔδωκε, καὶ ὕστερον ἄλλον. πολὺν δ'  
 οἶνον πίνοντες οἱ φύλακες ἐμεθύσθησαν· καὶ τέλος ὑπνῷ ἐνικήθησαν. ὁ  
 οὖν κλέπτης, νυκτὸς ἤδη γενομένης, οὐ μόνον τὸ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σῶμα  
κατέλυσεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐξύρην ἐπὶ λύμῃ τὰς τῶν φυλάκων παρειάς τὰς  
 25 δεξιάς, καὶ οὕτως τὸν νεκρὸν ἐπὶ τινὰ τῶν ὄνων ἔθηκε καὶ οἴκαδε  
ἤλασε, τὰ ὑπὸ τῆς μητρὸς κελευσθέντα ποιήσας.

	περίειμι	I survive
	οἴκαδε	home, homewards
	κομίζω ἐκόμισα	I fetch
	ἀδελφός -ου ὁ	brother
11	ὄνος -ου ὁ	donkey
	ἄσκος -ου ὁ	wine-skin
	πληρής -ές	full
	ἔθηκα	(irreg aor) I placed, I put
	ποδεῶν -ῶνος ὁ	neck
14	ἐκρέω	I flow out
	τύπτω ἔτυπα	I hit, I strike
	ὥσπερ	as if
	ρέω	I flow
	συντρέχω	I run together
16	ἄγγεῖον -ου τό	vessel, jar
	κλέπτης -ου ὁ	thief
	προσποιέομαι	
	προσεποιήσάμην	I pretend
	λοιδορέω	I curse, I insult
19	φροντίζω	I worry
	κινέω	I move (something)
	μεθύω aor pass ἐμεθύσθην	I make drunk pass I get drunk
	καταλύω κατέλυσα	I cut down
	ξυράω ἐξύρην	I shave
24	ἐπὶ	(+ dat) (here) for
	λύμη -ης ἡ	insult
	παρεία -ας ἡ	cheek
	ἐλαύνω ἤλασα	I drive (something)

- ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ὁ Ῥαμψίνιτος, ὡς ἤκουσε τὸν νεκρὸν λάθρα κλεφθέντα, μάλιστα ὠργίσθη. καὶ ἔτι μάλλον ἐβούλετο εἰδέναι τίς ἐστὶν ὁ τοιαῦτα μηχανησάμενος. λέγεται δὲ καὶ τότε, εἰ δὴ πιστὸν ἐστίν, ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς
- 30 τὴν ἑαυτοῦ θυγατέρα εἰς πορνεῖον ἔπεμψεν. καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὴν πάντας ἄνδρας ὁμοίως δέχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ἐκάστῳ πρῶτον εἰπεῖν τάδε· "ἐγὼ σε φιλήσω ἂν λέγῃς μοι τὸ σοφώτατόν τε καὶ ἄνοσιώτατον τῶν σῶν ἔργων." ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς εἶπε τῇ θυγατρὶ ὅτι, ἂν τις τὰ περὶ τοῦ κλέπτου εἴπῃ, χρὴ συλλαβεῖν αὐτόν.
- 35 ἡ μὲν οὖν θυγάτηρ ἐποίησε τὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς κελευσθέντα. ὁ δὲ κλέπτης (ἤκουσε γὰρ διὰ τί ὁ Ῥαμψίνιτος ταῦτα ποιεῖ) ἐβούλετο καὶ αὐθις τέχναις περιγενέσθαι τοῦ βασιλέως. ἀποτεμὼν οὖν χεῖρα νεκροῦ τινος προσφάτου εἰς τὸ πορνεῖον εἰσῆλθε ταύτην ἔχων ὑπὸ τῷ ἱματίῳ κρυφθεῖσαν. καὶ ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως θυγάτηρ τὰ αὐτὰ ἠρώτησεν. ὁ δὲ
- 40 κλέπτης εἶπεν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἄνοσιώτατον ἔργον ἐποίησε τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ κεφαλὴν ἐν τῷ θησαυρῷ ἀποτεμὼν, τὸ δὲ σοφώτατον τοὺς τε φύλακας μεθύσας καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σῶμα λάθρα καταλύσας. ἡ δὲ τοῦ Ῥαμψίνιτου θυγάτηρ ταῦτα ἀκούσασα ἐπειράσατο συλλαβεῖν τὸν κλέπτην. ὁ δὲ προὔτεινε τὴν τοῦ νεκροῦ χεῖρα. ἡ δὲ παῖς, διὰ τὸν τε
- 45 σκότον καὶ τὴν σπουδὴν οὐ σαφῶς ἰδοῦσα, ταύτην συλλαβοῦσα ἐνόμισεν ἔχειν τὸν ἄνδρα. ὁ μέντοι κλέπτης αὐθις ἐξέφυγεν.
- ὁ οὖν βασιλεὺς, ἐπεὶ περὶ τούτων ἤκουσεν, ἐπαύσατο τῆς ὀργῆς. οὕτως γὰρ ἐθαύμασε τὴν τε σοφίαν καὶ τὴν τόλμαν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου. τέλος δὲ ἀγγέλους πρὸς πάσας τὰς πόλεις πέμψας ὑπέσχετο μέγαλα δῶρα παρέξειν
- 50 τῷ ταῦτα τὰ θαυμαστὰ ποιήσαντι· οὐκέτι γὰρ ἔδει τοῦτον κολάζεσθαι. ὁ οὖν κλέπτης, ταῦτα ἀκούσας, ἐπίστευσε καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ῥαμψίνιτον ἦλθεν. καὶ οὕτως ἐθαύμασε τὸν ἄνδρα ὁ βασιλεὺς ὥστ' ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ τὴν θυγατέρα.

	μηχανάομαι ἐμηχανησάμην	I contrive
	πιστός -ῃ -όν	(here) believable
	πορνεῖον -ου τό	brothel
	ὁμοίως	alike, in the same way
32	ἀνόσιος -ον	wicked
	κλέπτης -ου ὁ	thief
	συλλαμβάνω συνέλαβον	I seize
	τέχνη -ης ἡ	skill, trick
	περιγίγνομαι περιγενόμην	I get the better of (+ gen)
37	ἀποτέμνω ἀπέτεμον	I cut off
	πρόσφατος -ον	recently dead, recently killed
	ἱμάτιον -ου τό	cloak
	θησαυρός -οῦ ὁ	treasure house
	μεθύω ἐμέθυσα	I make (someone) drunk
42	καταλύω κατέλυσα	I cut down
	προτείνω προὔτεινα	I hold out
	σκότος -ου ὁ	darkness
	σπουδῇ -ῆς ἡ	haste
	σαφῶς	clearly
48	τόλμα -ης ἡ	daring
	θαυμαστός -ῃ -όν	wonderful

## Present, aorist and future optative

As well as the subjunctive, Greek verbs have a mood called the *optative*. In meaning and use this is similar to the subjunctive but 'more so': more remote in likelihood or time. The indicative states a fact (*we are doing X*), the subjunctive indicates an immediate possibility (*we may do X*) and the optative indicates a more remote possibility (*we might do X*). We saw that the subjunctive always has a *long vowel* in the ending. The optative has an even more distinctive form: it always has a *diphthong* (οι, αι or less commonly ει) in the ending. The form of the endings is slightly different from others you have met (though compare εἰμί, εἶμι, and φημί), but the distinctive diphthong makes it easy to recognise.

### present optative

		active	middle/passive
sg	1	παύ-οιμι	παυ-οίμην
	2	παύ-οις	παύ-οιο
	3	παύ-οι	παύ-οιτο
pl	1	παύ-οιμεν	παυ-οίμεθα
	2	παύ-οιτε	παύ-οισθε
	3	παύ-οιεν	παύ-οιντο

Notice that the middle/passive endings resemble the normal *historic* middle/passive ones (-ομην, -ου, -ετο, -ομεθα, -εσθε, -οντο), where in contrast both sets of subjunctive endings are variants of the normal *primary* ones.

The verb *to be* has its own distinctive optative form:

sg	1	εἶην
	2	εἶης
	3	εἶη
pl	1	εἶμεν
	2	εἶτε
	3	εἶεν

Aorist optatives of ordinary verbs are fairly predictable. The second (strong) aorist uses the same endings for the active and middle as the equivalent present optative, but added to the aorist stem. As in the indicative, middle and passive are differentiated in the aorist, and (as with all aorist passives) endings normally active are used to form the aorist passive - not however those of the present tense, but the optative of the verb *to be* used as a set of endings:

### second (strong) aorist optative

		active	middle	passive
sg	1	λάβ-οιμι	λαβ-οίμην	ληφθ-εἶην
	2	λάβ-οις	λάβ-οιο	ληφθ-εἶης
	3	λάβ-οι	λάβ-οιτο	ληφθ-εἶη
pl	1	λάβ-οιμεν	λαβ-οίμεθα	ληφθ-εἶμεν
	2	λάβ-οιτε	λάβ-οισθε	ληφθ-εἶτε
	3	λάβ-οιεν	λάβ-οιντο	ληφθ-εἶεν

• For the use of a tense of the verb *to be* as a building-block to form another tense of an ordinary verb, compare how in Latin *eram* etc (imperfect of *to be*) is used to form the pluperfect e.g. *portaveram*.

The first (weak) aorist changes *οι* in the active and middle endings to *αι* (this is of course consistent with its use of alpha in the indicative, participle, and elsewhere):

*first (weak) aorist optative*

		<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	παύσ-αιμι	παυσ-αίμην	παυσθ-είην
	2	παύσ-αις or -ειας*	παύσ-αιο	παυσθ-είης
	3	παύσ-αι or -ειε(ν)*	παύσ-αιτο	παυσθ-είη
<i>pl</i>	1	παύσ-αιμεν	παυσ-αίμεθα	παυσθ-εῖμεν
	2	παύσ-αιτε	παύσ-αισθε	παυσθ-εῖτε
	3	παύσ-αιεν or -ειαν*	παύσ-αιντο	παυσθ-εῖεν

\* the alternative forms (i.e. not exactly as would be deduced from converting *οι* to *αι*) are common

There is a future optative (though it is less common than the present and aorist), of entirely predictable form:

*future optative*

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
	παύσ-οιμι	παυσ-οίμην	παυσθησ-οίμην
	<i>etc</i>	<i>etc</i>	<i>etc</i>

The optative forms of contracted verbs are also largely predictable, but in the singular of the active use the endings:

<i>sg</i>	1	-οιην
	2	-οιης
	3	-οιη

(these seem like a cross between the -οιμι -οις -οι ones of a normal present optative, and the -ειην -ειης -ειη of the verb *to be* and the aorist passive). Applying the rules of contraction we therefore get:

*present optative*

		<i>active</i>	<i>middle/passive</i>	<i>active</i>	<i>middle/passive</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	φιλ-οίην	φιλ-οίμην	τιμ-ώην	τιμ-ώμην
	2	φιλ-οίης	φιλ-οῖο	τιμ-ώης	τιμ-ῶο
	3	φιλ-οίη	φιλ-οῖτο	τιμ-ώη	τιμ-ῶτο
<i>pl</i>	1	φιλ-οῖμεν	φιλ-οῖμεθα	τιμ-ῶμεν	τιμ-ῶμεθα
	2	φιλ-οῖτε	φιλ-οῖσθε	τιμ-ῶτε	τιμ-ῶσθε
	3	φιλ-οῖεν	φιλ-οῖντο	τιμ-ῶεν	τιμ-ῶντο

As usual, the aorist and future are completely regular as contraction is not involved, hence:

*aorist optative*

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
	φιλήσ-αιμι	φιλησ-αίμην	φιληθ-είην
	τιμήσ-αιμι	τιμησ-αίμην	τιμηθ-είην

*future optative*

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
	φιλήσ-οιμι	φιλησ-οίμην	φιληθησ-οίμην
	τιμήσ-οιμι	τιμησ-οίμην	τιμηθησ-οίμην

## Use of the optative (1): Sequence of tenses and moods in purpose clauses

We have seen that tenses are divided into *primary* (present and future) and *historic* (imperfect and aorist). *Sequence* (literally *following on*) refers to the process by which the form of the verb in a clause that *follows on* from the main clause is determined by whether the main or introductory verb is *primary* (when we say the sentence is in *primary sequence*) or *historic* (so the sentence is in *historic sequence*). This principle is seen in very formal English:

I am going to London in order that I *may* see the Queen. (*primary sequence*)  
I went to London in order that I *might* see the Queen. (*historic sequence*)

In a sentence involving a purpose clause, if the rule of sequence is followed strictly, a *primary* main verb is followed by a *subjunctive* in the purpose clause, and an *historic* main verb by an *optative* in the purpose clause. Notice that this corresponds to the *formation* of these moods: the subjunctive is based on the primary endings throughout, and some parts at least of the optative (its present middle/passive) are based on the historic ones.

Hence:

πάρεσμεν ἵνα μαθάνωμεν.

We are here in order to learn. (*primary sequence, with subjunctive*)

ἐμάχοντο ἵνα τιμῶντο.

They used to fight in order to be honoured. (*historic sequence, with optative*)

However as we saw earlier, it is possible to use the subjunctive in *any* purpose clause, i.e. to regard it as if it were in primary sequence even after a past tense main verb: the justification of this is the familiar principle of vividness. If we wrote

ἀφίκοντο ἵνα μάχωνται.

They arrived in order to fight. ('vivid' construction using subjunctive, rather than following strict rule of sequence)

we would in effect be entering the minds of the people at the time.

• In Latin, the principle of sequence differentiates between *different tenses of the subjunctive* (present subjunctive in primary sequence, imperfect subjunctive in historic sequence; and the rule is followed strictly). In Greek, the principle of sequence differentiates between *moods*: the *subjunctive* (by nature primary) in primary sequence, and the *optative* (by nature historic) in historic sequence. Sequence determines whether the subjunctive or the optative is used; whether that subjunctive or optative is present or the aorist is determined entirely by *aspect* (general or one occasion, without reference to tense).

Hence (showing examples following the strict rule of sequence):

ἐσθίομεν ἵνα ἰσχυροὶ ᾤμεν.

We eat in order to be strong.

(*primary sequence and general, with present subjunctive*)

μένομεν ἵνα τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἀκούσωμεν.

We are waiting in order to hear the messenger.

(*primary sequence and particular, with aorist subjunctive*)

ὁ παῖς ἔτρεχεν ἵνα ἄθλα κτῶτο.  
The boy used to run in order to gain prizes.  
(historic sequence and general, with present optative)

οἱ σύμμαχοι τότε ἀφίκοντο ἵνα μαχέσαιντο.  
The allies arrived at that time in order to fight.  
(historic sequence and particular, with aorist optative)

#### Exercise 11.11

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ στρατηγὸς ἤγαγε τοὺς στρατιώτας ἵνα τοὺς ἐκεῖ λάβοιεν.
- 2 οἱ νεανῖαι ἐπέμψθησαν ἵνα τὰ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ δένδρα κόψαιεν.
- 3 οἱ πολῖται ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔμενον ἵνα τὸν βασιλέα ἴδοιεν.
- 4 ἐκεῖνοι οἱ δοῦλοι ἔφυγον ἵνα μὴ αὖθις ληφθεῖεν.
- 5 οἱ γέροντες ἀπεπέμψθησαν ἵνα ἀσφαλεῖς εἶεν.

#### Exercise 11.12

Translate into Greek (using the optative according to strict rule of sequence):

- 1 I sent the letter in order to persuade my father.
- 2 All the women ran into the road to see what had happened.
- 3 We were waiting in silence in order to hear the words of the messenger.
- 4 The Athenians marched quickly in order to attack the enemies' city.
- 5 These men died so that we might be free.

### Use of the optative (2): Indirect statement and question

As we briefly noted in Chapter 10, there is another important context where the optative can (and according to strict rules should) be used in historic sequence, but often is not because of the 'vividness' principle: indirect statement using a 'that' clause, and the equivalent construction for indirect question, in both cases when the introductory verb is historic. Note that the optative here (unlike its other uses) has no sense of *might*, *could*, or *were to*. Hence:

ὁ Σωκράτης εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ γέρων σοφώτατος εἴη.  
Socrates said that the old man was very wise.  
(optative because historic sequence, but ἐστίν could be used for vividness)

ὁ ἄγγελος ἠρώτησεν ὅστις λύσειε τὸν ἵππον.  
The messenger asked who had released the horse.  
(optative because historic sequence, but ἔλυσε could be used for vividness)

As we saw in Chapter 10, indirect speech constructions keep the tense of the original direct speech: *The old man is very wise* (present), *Who released the horse?* (aorist), but English adjusts the tense after a past introductory verb. All this *remains true if the verb is optative*: in this construction the optative operates *not* (as it usually does elsewhere) by *aspect*, but by *tense*, i.e. the aorist here refers to the *past* (not simply to a single act regardless of time). The



explanation for this is the principle of *behaving like what it is replacing* in the original direct speech: the original was an aorist indicative operating by tense (*Who released?*), so the optative does likewise.

• We saw this same principle in Chapter 9 with the aorist infinitive: in an indirect *command* it operates by aspect because it replaces an original imperative (*Do this immediately!* becomes *He ordered him to do this immediately*), but in an indirect *statement* it operates by tense because it replaces an original indicative (*They won a victory* becomes - literally - *I believe them to have won a victory*, or in better English *I believe that they ...*).

The use of the optative by tense in indirect statement and question explains why there is a future optative (whereas there is no future subjunctive, because the subjunctive always operates by aspect):

ἡ γυνὴ εἶπεν ὅτι οἱ σύμμαχοι δι' ὀλίγου νικήσοιεν.

The woman said that the allies would (or were going to) soon win.

She said at the time *The allies will soon win*: the future tense of that original is retained, and so in strict historic sequence the future optative is used (but the future indicative νικήσουσιν could be used for vividness).

#### Exercise 11.13

*Translate into English:*

- 1 οἱ τὰ τεῖχη φυλάσσοντες εἶπον ὅτι οὐδὲν ἴδοιεν.
- 2 ἡ μήτηρ ἠρώτησε τὸν παῖδα πόθεν ἔλθοι.
- 3 ὁ γέρων εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδέποτε δεξαίτο τὴν ἐπιστολήν.
- 4 ἔπεισα τὸν ἄγγελον εἰπεῖν πότε ἡ ναυμαχία γένοιτο.
- 5 ἡ γυνὴ εἶπεν ὅτι ἡ τῶν συμμάχων ναὺς προσπλέοι.\*

\* as we saw in Chapter 9, verbs with epsilon stem where that stem is a single syllable behave more like ordinary uncontracted verbs: hence the optative is -οιμι etc, not -οιην etc

#### Exercise 11.14

*Translate into Greek (using optatives according to the strict rule of sequence):*

- 1 The girls said that they were waiting in the house.
- 2 I asked the sailor what had happened.
- 3 The slave said that he had heard no shout during the night.
- 4 The old man asked when the messenger had arrived.
- 5 All the citizens said that they were afraid of the storm.

#### Revision checkpoint:

*Make sure you know:*

- present and aorist subjunctive
- use of the subjunctive in prohibitions, and in purpose clauses (primary sequence/vivid)
- future open and past closed conditions
- present, future and aorist optative
- use of the optative in purpose clauses, and in indirect statements and questions (historic sequence)

---

## Tense and aspect in the aorist: a summary

Indicative	<i>always by tense (on one occasion in the past)</i> οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐνίκησαν. The Athenians won a victory.
Imperative	<i>always by aspect (on one occasion - nothing to do with the past)</i> λαβὲ τοῦτον τὸν ἵππον. Take this horse!
Participle	<i>nearly always by tense (for one single action that precedes another)</i> ἀφικόμενοι ἐκάθισαν. Having arrived they sat down.  but: γελάσας ἔφη He said with a laugh ( <i>momentary, but not necessarily before he started speaking</i> ) <i>This use purely by aspect applies only to a few idioms, though see note below. *</i>
Infinitive	<i>usually by aspect, but by tense in indirect statement (replacing indicative)</i> οἱ πολῖται ἐπείσθησαν φυγεῖν. The citizens were persuaded to run away.  but: ὁ ἄγγελος ἐνόμιζε τοὺς πολίτας φυγεῖν. The messenger believed the citizens to have run away.
Subjunctive	<i>always by aspect</i> οἱ πολῖται ἐνθάδε μένουσιν ἵνα τὸν βασιλέα ἴδωσιν. The citizens are waiting here in order to see the king.
Optative	<i>usually by aspect, but by tense in indirect statement/question in historic sequence (replacing indicative) - the tense here being that of the speaker's original words</i> ἐλύσαμεν τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἵνα ὁ πόλεμος παύσαιοτο. We released the prisoners so that the war might cease  but: ὁ ἄγγελος εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ πόλεμος παύσαιοτο. The messenger said that the war had ceased.

---

### \* Note also:

(a) Use of an aorist participle still logically counts as *by tense* even if one action precedes the other only by a split second - this does not stop it *also* stressing the single and instantaneous character of the action.

(b) Greek often uses an aorist participle when a present one would be equally acceptable (and the aorist is translated like a present):

νομίσαντες τὸν ποταμὸν χαλεπὸν εἶναι, ἄλλην ὁδὸν εἰλόμεθα.

Believing the river to be dangerous, we chose another road.

Here choice of the aorist stresses the moment of coming to the belief, or the moment when it becomes relevant.

(c) Even where the aorist participle clearly *is* used by tense, English can often *represent* it by a present participle:

ἀκούσας τοὺς τοῦ βασιλέως λόγους, ὁ ἄγγελος ἔφυγεν.

Hearing the king's words, the messenger fled.

In this case *hearing* implies *on/after hearing* them (not *whilst hearing*, which would translate a present participle).

---

Coverage of all grammar and language requirements for GCSE is now complete. The rest of this chapter consists of reading passages, and the remainder of the book contains revision and reference material.

## Background: Herodotus (2)

At the very beginning of his work, Herodotus traces the origin of the quarrel between East and West (in effect, Asia and Europe) to a series of tit-for-tat snatchings of women (of which Helen is the most famous) by one side then the other. Though 'Persian learned men' are cited as the source for some of these stories, they are in fact typically Greek myths. Herodotus tells them in a tongue-in-cheek way: here as often, he does not commit himself to the truth of everything he records. As we noticed in Chapter 10, he has a clear sense of the difference between traditional tales of this kind and real historical events. In the following short passage 'the first man I myself *know* wronged the Greeks' (as distinct from some hazy figure in a myth) is Croesus, king of Lydia (in modern Turkey) in the mid-sixth century BC.

Croesus was proverbial for his wealth. He clearly fascinated the Greeks. His treatment of them and their attitude to him were both ambiguous. Herodotus introduces him initially as the first eastern aggressor against the Greeks, and thus the forerunner of the Persians (above all their king Xerxes, who led the great expedition against Greece soon after Herodotus was born). It is true that Croesus subdued a number of the Greek cities on the Asia Minor (Turkish) coast. But in many respects he showed favour to the Greeks, and made rich offerings at Greek shrines (especially Delphi). And Croesus was himself eventually the victim of Persian aggression.

Herodotus was strongly influenced by tragic drama (as well as by Homeric epic). Croesus is seen as a real-life equivalent of the main character in a tragedy, who at the beginning of the story is happy and successful (though often in a dangerously self-satisfied, fate-tempting way), then is brought low (sometimes by his own faults or mistakes or unwitting actions, sometimes by the jealous intervention of a god, sometimes by apparently arbitrary happenings - or by any combination of these things). Herodotus, like many Greek writers, has a strong sense of the instability of human prosperity: things may seem to be going well now, but you can never be sure what is round the corner. Alongside this sense of almost random unpredictability however he also seeks to show that the gods punish wrongdoing sooner or later.

### Exercise 11.15

#### Human Prosperity

- οἱ μὲν οὖν μῦθοι οἱ τῶν Περσῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων πολλοὶ καὶ παντοῖοι εἰσιν· ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ τούτων οὐκετι λέξω ὅτι οὕτως ἢ ἄλλως πως ἐγένετο τὰ λεγόμενα. τὸν μέντοι ἄνθρωπον σημήνας δὴ αὐτὸς οἶδα πρῶτον τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀδικήσαντα, προβήσομαι ἐς τὸ πρόσω τοῦ λόγου, 5 καὶ μεγάλα καὶ μικρὰ ἄστη ἀνθρώπων ἐξηγούμενος. τῶν γὰρ ἄστων ἃ πάλαι μεγάλα ἦν, τὰ πολλὰ μικρὰ γέγονε· τὰ δὲ ἄστη ἐπ' ἐμοῦ μεγάλα ὄντα πρότερον ἦν μικρά. τὴν οὖν τῶν ἀνθρώπων εὐδαιμονίαν εἰδὼς οὐδέποτε ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ τόπῳ μένουσαν, περὶ ἀμφοτέρων ὁμοίως λέξω.

	Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians
	παντοῖος -α -ον	of all kinds
	ἄλλως πως	otherwise, in some other way
	σημαίνω ἐσήμηνα	I indicate, I point out
4	προβαίνω <i>fui</i> προβήσομαι	I proceed, I go on
	ἐς (= εἰς) τὸ πρόσω	forwards
	ἄστυ -εως τό	town, city
	ἐξηγέομαι	I describe
	γέγονε	have become
6	ἐπ' ἐμοῦ	in my time
	εὐδαιμονία -ας ἡ	prosperity, happiness
	ἀμφότεροι -αι -α	both
	ὁμοίως	in the same way

## Gyges and Candaules

After introducing Croesus, king of Lydia from about 560 until 546 BC, Herodotus plunges further back five generations to Croesus' ancestor Gyges, telling how he seized the throne from Candaules, last of the previous dynasty. Croesus will in due course pay the penalty for the actions of Gyges. (Plato's story of the Magic Ring in Chapter 8 seems to refer to the same Gyges - and to make a similar point - though the details are very different. Both Herodotus and Plato have perhaps elaborated for their own purposes on historical tradition about the real Gyges.)

Κροῖσος ἦν Λυδὸς μὲν γένος,\* τύραννος δὲ πάντων τῶν ἔθνων ἐντὸς τοῦ Ἑλίου ποταμοῦ, ὃς ῥέων ἀπὸ μεσημβρίας ἐκρεῖ εἰς τὸν Εὐξείνιον πόντον. οὗτος ὁ Κροῖσος πρῶτος τῶν βαρβάρων περὶ ὧν ἡμεῖς ἴσμεν τοὺς μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατεστρέψατο εἰς φόρου ἀπαγωγὴν, τοὺς δὲ ἐποιήσατο φίλους. πρὶ δὲ τῆς τοῦ Κροίσου ἀρχῆς πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐλεύθεροι ἦσαν.

ἡ τῶν Λυδῶν ἀρχή, ὑπ' ἄλλων πρότερον ἐχόμενη, εἰς τὸ τοῦ Κροίσου γένος ὧδε ἦλθεν. οἱ Ἡρακλίδαι, τοῦ Ἡρακλέους ἐκγονοὶ ὄντες, πεντακόσια ἔτη τῆς Λυδίας ἐβασίλευον, μέχρι τοῦ Κανδαύλου. οὗτος γὰρ ὁ Κανδαύλης τὴν ἑαυτοῦ γυναῖκα μάλιστα φιλῶν ἐνόμιζε πολλῶ καλλίστην πασῶν εἶναι. ἦν δὲ τῷ Κανδαύλῃ αἰχμοφόρος τις, Γύγης

\* 'accusative of respect': *literally* with respect to his race/birth *i.e.* by ~

	Κροῖσος -ου ὁ	Croesus
	Λυδός -ου ὁ	Lydian (man of Lydia)
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	ruler ( <i>the Greek word was originally borrowed from Lydian, to describe a distinctive type of ruler</i> )
1	ἔθνος -ους τό	tribe, nation
	ἐντὸς	<i>lit</i> within (+ <i>gen</i> ) <i>here</i> on this ( <i>i.e.</i> the western) side of
	Ἑλίου -υος ὁ	Halys
	ῥέω	I flow
	μεσημβρία -ας ἡ	south
2	ἐκρέω	I flow out
	Εὐξείνιος	Euxine ( <i>literally</i> hospitable, <i>probably</i> as 'apotropaic euphemism' for a wild and hostile place in fact feared: = modern Black Sea)
	πόντος -ου ὁ	sea (word used for particular named seas)
4	καταστρέφω καταστρεψάμην	I subdue
	φόρος -ου ὁ	tribute, tax
	ἀπαγωγὴ -ῆς ἡ	bringing, payment
	ὧδε	in this way, in the following way ( <i>adverb</i> from ὅδε)
	Ἡρακλίδαι -ων οἱ	Heraclidae ( <i>lit</i> children of Heracles)
8	Ἡρακλῆς -έους ὁ	Heracles
	ἐκγονος -ου ὁ	descendant
	πεντακόσιοι -αι -α	500
	Λυδία -ας ἡ	Lydia
	βασιλεύω	I am king
9	μέχρι	until (+ <i>gen</i> )
	Κανδαύλης -ου ὁ	Candaules
	αἰχμοφόρος -ου ὁ	spear-carrier, bodyguard
	Γύγης -ου ὁ	Gyges

- ονόματι. τούτω δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπέτρεπε τὰ σπουδαιότατα τῶν πραγμάτων, καὶ τὸ τῆς γυναικὸς κάλλος ποτὲ ἐπήνεσεν. οὐ δὲ πολλῶ ὕστερον (χρῆν γὰρ τῷ Κανδαύλῃ γενέσθαι κακῶς) ἔλεξε πρὸς τὸν Γύγην τάδε: "ὦ
- 15 Γύγη, οὐ δοκεῖς πιστεύειν μοι περὶ τοῦ τῆς γυναικὸς κάλλους λέγοντι. τὰ γὰρ ὅτα τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἀπιστότερα ἐστὶ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. δεῖ οὖν σε ἰδεῖν αὐτὴν γυμνὴν." ὁ δὲ Γύγης ἐβόησεν, "ὦ δέσποτα, τίνα λόγον λέγεις, κελεύων με τὴν δέσποιναν ἰδεῖν γυμνὴν; ἅμα γὰρ τῷ χιτῶνι καὶ ἡ αἰδῶς ἐκδύεται. ἐγὼ πιστεύω σοι περὶ τῆς γυναικὸς λέγοντι. μηδαμῶς κελεύσης
- 20 με ἄδικα πράσσειν."
- ὁ μὲν οὖν Γύγης ταῦτα εἶπε, μάλιστα φοβούμενος. ὁ δὲ Κανδαύλης ἀπεκρίνατο τάδε: "θάρσει, ὦ Γύγη· μήτ' ἐμὲ μήτε τὴν γυναῖκα φοβοῦ. οὐ γὰρ λέγω ὥς πειρασόμενός σου. πάντα μηχανήσομαι ἵνα ἡ γυνὴ μᾶθῃ ὑπὸ σου ὀρώμενη. δεῖ δέ σε ἐν τῷ ἡμετέρῳ δωματίῳ ὀπισθε τῆς
- 25 ἀνοικτοῦ θύρας μένειν. μετὰ δ' ἐμὲ εἰσελθόντα πάρεσται καὶ ἡ γυνή. ἐστὶ δ' ἐγγὺς τῆς θύρας θρόνος τις. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦτον τὰ ἱμάτια καθ' ἐν ἑκαστον ἐκδύνουσα θήσει. καὶ ἐξεστὰι σοι καθ' ἡσυχίαν θεάσθαι. τῆς δὲ γυναικὸς ἀποτρεπομένης καὶ ἐπὶ τὴν εὐνὴν ἰούσης, δεῖ σε λάθρα ἐξελθεῖν." ἐπεὶ οὖν ὁ Γύγης οὐχ οἰός τ' ἦν ἐκφυγεῖν, ἐτοῖμος ἦν ταῦτα
- 30 πράττειν. ὁ δὲ Κανδαύλης, ἐπεὶ φαίνεται καιρὸς εἶναι, ἤγαγε τὸν Γύγην εἰς

	ἐπιτρέπω	I entrust something ( <i>acc</i> ) to someone ( <i>dat</i> )
	σπουδαῖος -α -ον	serious
	πράγματα -ων τά	affairs
	κάλλος -ους τό	beauty
13	ποτέ	once
	ἐπαινέω ἐπήνεσα	I praise
	ὅτα -ων τα	ears
	ἀπιστος -ον	untrustworthy
	γυμνός -ή -όν	naked
18	δέσποινα -ης ή	mistress
	χιτῶν -ῶνος ὁ	dress
	αἰδῶς -οὺς ή	shame, modesty
	ἐκδύω	I take off
	μηδαμῶς	in no way
22	θαρσέω	I take heart, I cheer up
	μηχανάομαι	I arrange, I contrive
	δωμάτιον -ου τό	bedroom
	ὀπισθε	behind (+ <i>gen</i> )
	ἀνοικτος -ον	open
26	θρόνος -ου ὁ	chair
	ἱμάτιον -ου τό	garment
	καθ' ἐν ἑκαστον	one by one
	ἐκδύνω	I take off
	θήσω	( <i>irreg fut</i> ) I shall place
27	καθ' ἡσυχίαν	at leisure
	θεάομαι	I watch
	ἀποτρέπομαι	I turn away
	εὐνή -ης ή	bed
	καιρός -οῦ ὁ	right time

τὸ δωμάτιον. καὶ δι' ὀλίγου ἐπανῆλθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν ἡ γυνή. καὶ ὁ Γύγης ἐθεᾶτο αὐτὴν εἰσελθούσαν καὶ ἐκδύνουσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ νώτου ἦν τῆς γυναικὸς ἐπὶ τὴν εὐνὴν ἰούσης, εὐθὺς ἐξήλθεν· ἡ δὲ εἶδεν αὐτὸν ἐξιόντα.

- 35 πρῶτον μὲν οὖν ἡ γυνὴ οὐδὲν εἶπε, καίπερ γνοῦσα τὸν Κανδαύλην τοῦ ἔργου αἷτιον ὄντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, τοὺς πιστοτάτους τῶν δούλων μεταπεμψάμενη, ἐκάλεσε τὸν Γύγην. ὁ δὲ εὐθὺς ἦλθε κληθείς, οὐδὲν κακὸν ὑποπεύων. ἐπειδὴ μέντοι ἀφίκετο, ἡ γυνὴ εἶπε τάδε· "νῦν δυοῖν ὁδῶν παρουσῶν παρέχω σοι αἵρεσιν. ἡ γὰρ τὸν Κανδαύλην ἀποκτείνας
- 40 ἐμέ τε καὶ τὴν τῆς Λυδίας ἀρχὴν ἔχε, ἡ δεῖ σε ἀποθανεῖν. οὕτως γὰρ οὐδέποτε αὐθις ὄψῃ τὰ ἀπόρρητα, τῷ Κανδαύλῃ ἄγαν πειθόμενος. δεῖ οὖν ἓνα ἀποθανεῖν, ἡ ἐκείνον τὸν ταῦτα μηχανησάμενον ἢ σε τὸν ἐμὲ γυμνὴν ἰδόντα καὶ παρὰ νόμον ποιήσαντα." ὁ δὲ Γύγης πρῶτον μὲν ἐθαύμασε τὰ λεγόμενα, ἔπειτα δ' ἤτησε τὴν γυναῖκα μὴ ἀναγκάσαι
- 45 τοιαύτην αἵρεσιν. οὐδαμῶς μέντοι πείσας αὐτὴν ἔγνω ἡ τὸν Κανδαύλην ἀποθανούμενον ἢ αὐτός· καὶ εἴλετο περιεῖναι. τὴν οὖν γυναῖκα ἠρώτησε τάδε· "ἐπεὶ ἀναγκάζεις με τὸν δεσπότην ἀποκτείνειν, εἰπέ μοι τίνι τρόπῳ τοῦτο ποιήσω". ἡ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο, "ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ τόπῳ ἔσται καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον· δεῖ γὰρ σε ἀποκτείνειν αὐτὸν καθεύδοντα".
- 50 ἐπεὶ οὖν ταύτην τὴν βουλὴν παρεσκεύασαν, νυκτὸς γενομένης ὁ Γύγης (οὐ γὰρ ἐξῆν αὐτῷ ἀποφυγεῖν) τῇ γυναικὶ εἰς τὸ δωμάτιον ἔσπετο. καὶ ἐκείνη, ἐγχειρίδιον παρέχουσα, ἔκρυπεν αὐτὸν ὀπισθε τῆς αὐτῆς θύρας. καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν Κανδαύλην καθεύδοντα ἀποκτείνας ἔσχε καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὴν τῆς Λυδίας ἀρχὴν.
- 55 πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν Λυδῶν, ὀργισθέντες διὰ τὸν τοῦ Κανδαύλου θάνατον, ἐν ὅπλοις ἦσαν· ἄλλοι δὲ τὸν Γύγην ἐτίμων. τέλος δ' ἐπὶ τούτοις

	ἐπανέρχομαι ἐπανῆλθον	I return
	θεάομαι	I watch
	ἐκδύνω	I undress
	κατὰ	(+ <i>gen</i> ) ( <i>here</i> ) behind
33	νώτον -ου τό	back
	εὐνή -ῆς ἡ	bed
	μεταπέμπομαι μετεπεμψάμην	I send for
	ὑποπεύω	I suspect
	αἵρεσις -εως ἡ	choice
41	ἀπόρρητος -ον	forbidden
	ἄγαν	too much, excessively
	μηχανάομαι ἐμηχανησάμην	I arrange, I contrive
	γυμνός -ῆ -όν	naked
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
46	αἰρέομαι εἰλόμην	I choose
	περίεμι	I survive
	τρόπος -ου ὁ	way, method
	δωμάτιον -ου τό	bedroom
	ἐγχειρίδιον -ου τό	dagger
52	ὀπισθε	behind (+ <i>gen</i> )
	ἐπὶ τούτοις	on these terms

60 ὁμολόγησαν· τῷ ἐν Δελφοῖς χρηστηρίῳ χρήσασθαι, καὶ τοῖς τοῦ θεοῦ  
 λόγοις πείθεσθαι. καὶ ὁ θεὸς τὸν Γύγην εἵλετο· οὕτως οὖν τῆς Λυδίας  
 ἐβασίλευσεν ὁ Γύγης. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις εἶπεν ἡ Πυθία ὅτι τίσις ἔσται τοῖς  
 Ἡρακλείδαις μετὰ πέντε γενεάς. τούτου μέντοι τοῦ λόγου οἱ τε Λυδοὶ καὶ  
 οἱ βασιλεῖς ὀλιγώρουν, ἕως δὲ ἐτελέσθη.

	ὁμολογέω ὁμολόγησα	I come to an agreement
	Δελφοί -ων οἱ	Delphi
	χρηστήριον -ου τό	oracle
	χράομαι ἐχρησάμην	(of an oracle) I consult (+ dat)
58	αἰρέομαι εἰλόμην	I choose
	βασιλεύω ἐβασίλευσα	(in aorist here) I become king
	πρὸς	(+ dat) in addition to
	Πυθία -ας ἡ	the Pythia (priestess of Apollo at Delphi)
	τίσις -εως ἡ	vengeance, retribution
60	γενεά -ας ἡ	generation
	ὀλιγώρῃω	I ignore, I take no notice of (+ gen)
	τελέω aor pass ἐτελέσθην	I fulfil

#### Exercise 11.17

### Solon and Croesus

*This passage sums up many of Herodotus' leading themes: the contrast between the Athenian wise man and legislator Solon (about 640-560 BC) and the wealthy eastern despot Croesus; the unpredictability of fortune. The choice of ways of life is also a traditional Greek theme, already important in Homer: the Athenian Tellus (whose life Solon considers enviable) represents a resolution of the stark choice offered to Achilles (hero of the Iliad) between a short glorious life and a long inglorious one. But although the story of the meeting of Solon and Croesus is rich in symbolic meaning, it is unlikely to be historical: Solon probably did live just into the reign of Croesus, but other evidence puts his travels earlier in his career. Solon perhaps acts in this story as the voice of Herodotus.*

5 ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος, βασιλεὺς ὢν τῶν Λυδῶν, πόλεων πλείστων ἐκράτησεν, ὧν  
 αἱ μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων, αἱ δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν. πλουσιώτατος οὖν  
 ἐγένετο ὁ Κροῖσος. καὶ πολλοὶ πρὸς τὰς Σάρδεις, τὴν πόλιν αὐτοῦ,  
 ἀφίκοντο. ἐν δὲ τούτοις ἦσαν σοφισταὶ ἄλλοι τε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ  
 δὴ ὁ Σόλων. οὗτος δὲ νομοθέτης τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἦν. βουλευόμενοι γὰρ οἱ  
 Ἀθηναῖοι νόμους νέους ἔχειν, ἐκέλευσαν τὸν Σόλωνα νόμους ἑαυτοῖς  
 ποιῆσαι. τοῦτο οὖν πράξας ὁ Σόλων ἀπεδήμησε δέκα ἔτη, ἵνα οἱ τε  
 Ἀθηναῖοι χρῶνται τῇ πολιτείᾳ τῇ νέᾳ, καὶ μὴ αὐτὸς ἀναγκάσθῃ

	Κροῖσος -ου ὁ	Croesus
	Λυδοί -ων οἱ	Lydians (in modern western Turkey)
	κρατέω ἐκράτησα	I gain control of (+ gen)
	Σάρδεις -εων αἱ	Sardis (capital of Lydia)
4	σοφιστής -ου ὁ	(here) wise man
	Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ	Greece
	Σόλων -ωνος ὁ	Solon
	νομοθέτης -ου ὁ	lawgiver
	ἀποδημέω ἀπεδήμησα	I go abroad, I am abroad
8	πολιτεία -ας ἡ	constitution

- λύσαι τινα τῶν νόμων οὕς ἔθηκεν. οἱ γὰρ Ἀθηναῖοι ὑπέσχοντο τούτους  
 10 τοὺς νόμους δέκα ἔτη φυλάξειν τοῦ Σόλωνος ἀπόντος. ὁ οὖν Σόλων,  
 πρόφασιν ἔχων τὴν θεωρίαν, ἐξέπλευσε καὶ εἰς τε τὴν Αἴγυπτον ὡς  
 τὸν βασιλέα τὸν Ἀμασιν καὶ δὴ καὶ εἰς τὴν Λυδίαν ὡς τὸν Κροῖσον  
 ἀφίκετο.
- ἀφικόμενος δὲ ὁ Σόλων εἰς τὰς Σάρδεις ἐξενίζετο ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις ὑπὸ  
 15 τοῦ Κροῖσου. τῇ οὖν τρίτῃ ἢ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ δοῦλοι ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως  
 κελευσθέντες περιήγαγον τὸν Σόλωνα περὶ τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως θησαυρὸν  
 καὶ ἔφηναν πάντα ὀλβια ὄντα.
- ἔπειτα δὲ τὸν Σόλωνα πάντα ἰδόντα ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κροῖσος τάδε· "ὦ ξένε  
 Ἀθηναῖε, πολλὰ ἀκούων περὶ τῆς τε σοφίας τῆς σῆς καὶ τῆς θεωρίας νῦν  
 20 βούλομαι ἐρωτῆσαι εἰ τινα εἶδες πάντων ὀλβιώτατον." ὁ γὰρ βασιλεὺς  
 ἐνόμιζεν ὀλβιώτατος εἶναι, καὶ διὰ ταῦτα ἠρώτησεν. ὁ μέντοι Σόλων  
 οὐδαμῶς ἐθώπευσε τὸν Κροῖσον ἀλλὰ τὸ ἀληθὲς ἔλεξεν· "ὦ βασιλεῦ,  
 Ἀθηναῖόν τινα Τέλλον ὀνόματι ὀλβιώτατον κρίνω."
- ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος θαυμάσας τοὺς λόγους, "διὰ τί," ἔφη, "κρίνεις τὸν Τέλλον  
 25 ὀλβιώτατον εἶναι;" ὁ δὲ Σόλων ἀπεκρίνατο, "διότι ἡ πόλις αὐτοῦ καλῶς  
 εἶχεν. ἦσαν δ' αὐτῷ υἱοὶ καλοὶ καὶ ἀγαθοί, καὶ υἱοὶ τοῖς υἱοῖς αὐτοῖς·  
 καὶ πάντες περιεγένοντο. πλοῦτον δὲ ἱκανὸν εἶχε, ὥς γε ἡμεῖς κρίνομεν.  
 καὶ τὸ τοῦ βίου τέλος λαμπρότατον ἦν. μάχης γὰρ τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις  
 γενομένης πρὸς τοὺς Μεγαρέας, ὁ Τέλλος πολλοὺς τῶν πολεμίων τρέψας  
 30 κάλλιστα ἀπέθανεν. καὶ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι δημοσίᾳ ἔθαψαν αὐτὸν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ  
 οὗ ἔπεσεν, καὶ ἐτίμησαν μεγάλως."

	ἔθηκα	(irreg aor) (here) I put in place
	πρόφασις -εως ἢ	pretext, excuse
	θεωρία -ας ἢ	sight-seeing
	Αἴγυπτος -ου ἢ	Egypt
11	ὡς	(+ acc) to (a person)
	Ἀμασις -εως ὁ	Amasis
	καὶ δὴ καὶ	and what is more
	Λυδία -ας ἢ	Lydia
	ξενίζω	I entertain
14	βασίλεια -ων τά	palace
	θησαυρός -οῦ ὁ	treasury
	ὀλβιος -α -ον	prosperous/happy
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
	θωπεύω ἐθώπευσα	I flatter
23	Τέλλος -ου ὁ	Tellus
	κρίνω	I judge
	ἔχω	(+ adv) I am
	περιγιγνομαι περιγενόμεν	I survive
	πλοῦτος -ου ὁ	wealth
28	τέλος -ους τό	(as noun) end
	λαμπρός -ά -όν	distinguished
	Μεγαρεῖς -έων οἱ	Megarians (Megara borders Attica to the west)
	τρέπω ἔτρεψα	(here) I rout
	δημοσίᾳ	publicly



ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Σόλων τὰ περὶ τοῦ Τέλλου εἶπεν, ὁ Κροῖσος ἠρώτησε τίνα  
 δεύτερον μετὰ τοῦτον κρίνει· ἤλπιζε γὰρ ἄθλόν γε δεύτερον δέξεσθαι.  
 ὁ μὲντοι Σόλων εἶπεν, "ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὃ τε Κλέοβις καὶ ὁ Βίτων δεύτεροι ἐν  
 35 ὄλβῳ εἰσίν, ὥς ἔγω γε κρίνω. οὗτοι γὰρ Ἀργεῖοι ὄντες βίον ἱκανὸν εἶχον  
 καὶ μεγάλην ῥώμην σώματος, περὶ οὗ ὁδε ὁ λόγος λέγεται. ἑορτὴ ποτε  
 τῆς Ἥρας ἦν τοῖς Ἀργείοις, καὶ ἔδει τὴν τῶν παίδων μητέρα πρὸς τὸ  
 ἱερὸν ἐν ἀμάξῃ κομίζεσθαι· ἱέρεια γὰρ ἦν. οἱ μὲντοι βόες ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς  
 ἀπόντες οὐκ εἰς καιρὸν παρήσαν. οἱ οὖν παῖδες αὐτοὶ ὑπὸ τὸ ζυγὸν  
 40 εἴλκυσαν τὴν ἀμαξάν. καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀμάξῃ ἦν ἡ μήτηρ.  
 "στάδια δὲ πέντε καὶ τεσσαράκοντα τὴν ἀμαξάν ἐλκύσαντες εἰς τὸ  
 ἱερὸν ἀφίκοντο. καὶ τοῖς παισὶ τοῦτο ποιήσασιν καὶ ὑπὸ πάντων  
 ὀφθεῖσι, τὸ τοῦ βίου τέλος ἄριστον ἐγένετο. καὶ οὕτως ἔφηναν οἱ θεοὶ  
 ὅτι ὁ θάνατος ἀμείνων ἐστὶν ἀνθρώπῳ ἢ ὁ βίος. οἱ γὰρ Ἀργεῖοι οἱ  
 45 παρόντες ἐπῆνεσαν τὴν τῶν νεανιῶν ῥώμην, καὶ αἱ Ἀργεῖαι αἱ παρούσαι  
 τὴν μητέρα αὐτῶν διότι τοιούτους υἱοὺς ἔχει. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, ἡδομένη τῷ τε  
 ἔργῳ καὶ τοῖς λόγοις, πρὸς τὸ τῆς Ἥρας ἄγαλμα προσελθοῦσα ἤτησε τὴν  
 θεὰν τοῖς παισὶ παρέχειν τὸ κάλλιστον δῶρον. ὁ οὖν Κλέοβις καὶ ὁ  
 Βίτων, θύσαντές τε καὶ φαγόντες, ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ κατεκοίμησαν καὶ οὐκέτι  
 50 ἀνέστησαν, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο τὸ τοῦ βίου τέλος εἶχον. καὶ οἱ Ἀργεῖοι  
 ἀγάλματα αὐτῶν ποιησάμενοι ἱδρυσαν ἐν τοῖς Δελφοῖς ὥς ἀνδρῶν  
 ἀγαθῶν γενομένων."

	κρίνω	I judge
	Κλέοβις ὁ	Cleobis
	Βίτων ὁ	Biton
	ὄλβος -ου ὁ	prosperity/happiness
35	Ἀργεῖοι -ων οἱ	Argives
	βίος -ου ὁ	(here) livelihood
	ῥώμη -ης ἡ	strength
	ἐορτή -ῆς ἡ	festival
	ποτε	once
37	Ἥρα -ας ἡ	Hera (goddess, wife of Zeus)
	ἀμαξα -ης ἡ	wagon
	κομίζω	I bring, I transport
	ἱέρεια -ας ἡ	priestess
	βόες -ῶν οἱ	oxen
39	εἰς καιρὸν	in time
	ὑπὸ	(+ acc) going under
	ζυγόν -οῦ τό	yoke
	ἐλκω εἴλκυσα	I drag
	στάδιον -ου τό	stade (about 180 metres)
41	τεσσαράκοντα	forty
	τέλος -ους τό	(as noun) end
	ἐπαινέω ἐπῆνεσα	I praise
	ἡδομαι	I am pleased (by, + dat)
	ἄγαλμα -ατος τό	statue
49	κατακοιμάω κατεκοίμησα	I lie down to sleep
	ἀνέστην	(irreg aor) I stood up, I got up
	ἱδρύω ἱδρυσά	I set up, I dedicate
	Δελφοί -ῶν οἱ	Delphi

- ὁ οὖν Σόλων τὸ δεύτερον τῆς εὐτυχίας ἄθλον τούτοις ἐνειμεν. ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος μάλιστα ὀργιζόμενος εἶπεν, "ὦ ξένη Ἀθηναίε, οὕτως καταφρονεῖς τοῦ ἐμοῦ ὄλβου ὥστε κρίνεις με οὐδαμῶς ἀμείνονα τούτων τῶν ιδιωτῶν καὶ οὐτιδανῶν;" ὁ δὲ Σόλων εἶπεν, "ὦ Κροῖσε, οἶδα τοὺς θεοὺς φθονερούς τε καὶ ταραχώδεις ὄντας, καὶ ἐρωτᾷς με περὶ τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πραγμάτων. ἐν γὰρ τῷ μακρῷ τοῦ βίου χρόνῳ δεῖ ἰδεῖν τε καὶ παθεῖν πολλὰ κακὰ. τὸν δὲ τοῦ βίου ὅρον ἐβδομήκοντα ἔτη νομίζω εἶναι. καὶ ἐν 55 τούτοις τοῖς ἔτεσιν ἐνεισιν ἡμέραι πλείονες ἢ δισμύριοι καὶ 60 πεντακισχίλιοι. καὶ πασῶν τούτων τῶν ἡμέρων, ἡ μὲν οὐδὲν ὅμοιον τῇ δὲ προσάγει. οὕτως οὖν, ὦ Κροῖσε, ὁ ἄνθρωπος συμφορά ἐστίν.
- "σὺ δὲ φαίνῃ μοι πλουσιώτατος εἶναι καὶ βασιλεὺς πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων. τοῦτο μέντοι δ' ἐρωτᾷς οὐπω οἷός τ' εἰμὶ λέγειν, οὐπω ἀκούσας σε 65 καλῶς τελευτήσαντα τὸν βίον. ὁ γὰρ πλούσιος οὐκ ἔστιν εὐτυχέστερος τοῦ ἱκανὸν ἔχοντος εἰ μὴ τὴν τύχην ἔχει καὶ καλῶς τελευτᾷ τὸν βίον. δεῖ γὰρ παντὸς πράγματος τὸ τέλος σκοπεῖν, πῶς ἀποβήσεται. πολλοῖς γὰρ ἀνθρώποις ὁ θεὸς πρῶτον μὲν ὄλβον ἔφηνεν, ἔπειτα δὲ παντελῶς διέφθειρεν."
- 70 ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος οὐπω ᾔδετο τοῖς τοῦ Σόλωνος λόγοις. ἐνόμιζε γὰρ αὐτὸν μῶρον εἶναι, περὶ τοῦ τέλους παντὸς πράγματος ἀεὶ λέγοντα, καὶ τῶν παρόντων ἀγαθῶν ἀμελοῦντα. καὶ ἀπέπεμψεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Σόλωνα.

	εὐτυχία -ας ἡ	good fortune
	νέμω ἐνειμα	I allocate
	καταφρονέω	I despise (+ <i>gen</i> )
	ὄλβος -ου ὁ	prosperity/happiness
55	κρίνω	I judge
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
	ιδιώτης -ου ὁ	private citizen
	οὐτιδανός -οῦ ὁ	nonentity, insignificant person
	φθονερός -ᾶ -όν	jealous
57	ταραχώδης -ες	trouble-causing
	ἀνθρώπινος -η -ον	human
	πρᾶγμα -ατος τό	affair
	ὅρος -ου ὁ	limit, boundary
	ἐβδομήκοντα	seventy
60	δισμύριοι -αι -α	20,000
	πεντακισχίλιοι -αι -α	5,000
	ὅμοιος -α -ον	similar, of the same sort
	συμφορά -ᾶς ἡ	( <i>here</i> ) chance
	οὐπω	not yet
65	τελευτάω ἐτελεύτησα	I end, I complete
	ἱκανός -ῆ -όν	enough, sufficient
	πρᾶγμα -ατος τό	thing, affair
	τέλος -ους τό	( <i>as noun</i> ) end
	σκοπέω	I look at
67	ἀποβαίνω <i>fui</i> ἀποβήσομαι	( <i>of events</i> ) turn out
	παντελῶς	entirely
	ἡδομαι	I am pleased (by, + <i>dat</i> )
	ἀμελέω	I do not care about (+ <i>gen</i> )

## Exercise 11.18

## Croesus and Adrastus

*The downfall of Croesus now begins. Many motifs echo myth, and tragic drama: the ominous dream, and the way (as we saw in the story of Acrisius and Perseus in Chapter 9) the steps taken to avert a prophesied disaster are the very things that bring it about. The ominously named Adrastus (meaning 'that cannot be run away from') is a figure familiar in a world before legal systems: a killer who goes into voluntary exile, then throws himself on the mercy of a powerful man in another country as a suppliant seeking protection and sanctuary. The grim scene at the end echoes the close of many tragic plays, where a procession comes on stage bringing a body home.*

- τοῦ δὲ Σόλωνος ἀπελθόντος, οὐ πολλῶ ὕστερον νέμεσις μεγάλη ἐκ τῶν  
θεῶν ἔλαβε τὸν Κροῖσον διότι (ὡς φαίνεται) ἐνόμιζεν ὀλβιώτατος εἶναι  
πάντων ἀνθρώπων. τῷ γὰρ Κροίσῳ καθεύδοντι ἦλθεν ὄνειρος ὃς ἔφηνε  
τὸ ἀληθὲς τῶν κακῶν τῶν μελλόντων γενήσεσθαι περὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ. ἦσαν δὲ  
5 τῷ Κροίσῳ δύο παῖδες ὧν ὁ μὲν κωφός ἦν, ὁ δὲ μακρῶ πρῶτος τῶν τότε.  
τὸ δ' ὄνομα τούτῳ Ἄτυς. περὶ δὲ τοῦ Ἄτυος τούτου ἐσήμαινεν ὁ ὄνειρος  
τῷ Κροίσῳ, ὅτι ἀποθανεῖται αἰχμῇ σιδήρου βληθείς. ὁ οὖν Κροῖσος ἐπεὶ  
ἡμέρα ἐγένετο μάλιστα ἐφοβεῖτο διὰ τὸν ὄνειρον καὶ ἐφρόντιζεν πῶς  
ἄριστα φεύξεται τὴν συμφορὰν. ἤρρε δὲ γυναῖκα τῷ νεανίᾳ καὶ ἐπεὶ  
10 ἔγχε ταύτην οὐκέτι εἶασεν αὐτὸν τῆς τῶν Λυδῶν στρατιᾶς στρατηγεῖν.  
πρότερον γὰρ ὁ Ἄτυς στρατηγὸς αἰεὶ ἦν καὶ καλὰ ἔργα ἔπρασσεν.  
ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Κροῖσος ἐξεκόμισε πάντα τὰ δοράτια καὶ ἄλλα ὄπλα, ἃ ἐν  
τοῖς τῶν βασιλείων τείχεσι κρεμαστὰ ἦν, καὶ ἐν θαλάμῳ τινὶ ἔθηκε, μή  
τι τῶν κρεμαστῶν τῷ παιδί ἐμπέσῃ.

	νέμεσις -εως ἡ	retribution
	ὀλβιος -α -ον	happy/prosperous
	ὄνειρος -ου ὁ	dream
	κωφός -ή -όν	deaf and dumb
5	μακρῶ	by far
	Ἄτυς -υος ὁ	Atys
	σημαίνω ἐσήμηνα	I indicate, I signal
	αἰχμῇ -ῆς ἡ	spear-point
	σίδηρος -ου ὁ	iron
8	φροντίζω	I consider
	γαμέω ἔγχεμα	I marry
	ἔαω εἶασα	I allow
	Λυδοί -ων οἱ	Lydians
	στρατηγέω	I am general, I am commander (of, + gen)
12	ἐκκομίζω ἐξεκόμισα	I take out
	δοράτιον -ου τό	spear
	βασιλεία -ων τά	palace
	κρεμαστός -ή -όν	hung up
	θάλαμος -ου ὁ	store-room
13	ἔθηκε	(irreg aor) I placed, I put
	μή	(here) in case, for fear that
	ἐμπίπτω ἐνέπεσον	I fall on (+ dat)

- 15 μετὰ δὲ τὸν τοῦ παιδὸς γάμον ἀφίκετο εἰς τὰς Σάρδεις ἀνὴρ τις συμφορᾷ  
 ἐχόμενος καὶ οὐ καθαρὸς τὰς χεῖρας. οὗτος δὲ Φρύξ ἦν, καὶ τοῦ  
 βασιλικοῦ γένους. εἰσελθὼν δ' εἰς τὴν τοῦ Κροῖσου οἰκίαν ἤτησε τὸν  
 βασιλέα καθαίρειν αὐτὸν κατὰ τὸν νόμον. καὶ ὁ Κροῖσος ἐκάθηρεν  
 αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἔπραξεν, ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κροῖσος τάδε· "ὦ ξέने, τίς ὦν  
 20 καὶ πόθεν ἐλθὼν ικέτης μοι ἐγένου; τίνα ἀπέκτεινας;" ὁ δ' ἄνηρ  
 ἀπεκρίνατο, "ὦ βασιλεῦ, τοῦ Γορδίου τοῦ Μίδου παῖς ὦν ὀνομάζομαι  
Ἄδραστος, καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἄκων ἀποκτείνας ἐνθάδε πάρειμι, ὑπὸ τοῦ  
 πατρὸς ἐκβληθεὶς καὶ οὐδὲν ἔχων." ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος ἀπεκρίνατο τάδε· "τὸ  
 σὸν γένος οἶδα, καὶ ἐν φίλοις εἰ. οὐδαμῶς οὖν ἀπορήσεις ἐν τῇ ἐμῇ  
 25 οἰκίᾳ μένων· πάντα γὰρ παρέξω σοι. συμφορὰν δὲ δεινὴν παθόντα χρή σε  
 φέρειν ὡς κουφότατα." καὶ ὁ Ἄδραστος ἐν τῇ τοῦ Κροῖσου οἰκίᾳ ἔμενε.

- περὶ δὲ τοῦ αὐτοῦ χρόνου ἐν τῷ Ὀλύμπῳ ὄρει τῷ τῆς Μυσίας ἐγένετο  
 μέγα χρήμα ὑός. οὗτος δὲ πολλάκις κατὰ τοῦ ὄρους καταβαίνων τοὺς  
 30 τῶν Μυσῶν ἀγροὺς διέφθειρεν. πολλάκις καὶ δὴ οἱ Μυσοὶ ἐπὶ τὸν ὕν  
 ἐξηλθον· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦν μὲν οὐδὲν κακόν, ἔπασχον δὲ πρὸς αὐτοῦ.  
 τέλος δ' ἄγγελοι τῶν Μυσῶν πρὸς τὸν Κροῖσον ἀφικόμενοι εἶπον τάδε·  
 "ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὑὸς χρήμα μέγιστον ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ χώρᾳ ἀναφηνάμενον τὰ  
 τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἔργα διαφθείρει. τοῦτο δὲ βουλόμενοι ἐλεῖν οὐδαμῶς  
 35 οἰοί τ' ἐσμέν. νῦν οὖν αἰτοῦμέν σε τόν τε υἱὸν καὶ νεανίας ἐξαιρέτους  
συμπέμψαι ἡμῖν, ἵνα ἐξέλωμεν τὸν ὕν ἐκ τῆς χώρας." οἱ μὲν οὖν

	γάμος -ου ὁ	marriage
	Σάρδεις -ων αἱ	Sardis ( <i>capital of Lydia</i> )
	καθαρός -ά -όν	clean ( <i>here followed by 'accusative of part affected'</i> )
	Φρύξ Φρυγός ὁ	Phrygian ( <i>Phrygia is north-east of Lydia</i> )
17	βασιλικός -ή -όν	royal
	καθαίρω ἐκάθηρα	I purify
	ικέτης -ου ὁ	suppliant
	Γορδίας -ου ὁ	Gordias
	Μίδας -ου ὁ	Midas
21	ὀνομάζω	I call, I name
	Ἄδραστος -ου ὁ	Adrastus
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	ἄκων -ουσα -ον (ἀκοντ-)	unwillingly, unintentionally
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
24	ἀπορέω <i>fut</i> ἀπορήσω	( <i>here</i> ) I am in need
	κούφος -η -ον	light
	Ὀλύμπος -ου ὁ	Olympus
	Μυσία -ας ἡ	Mysia ( <i>north-west of Lydia, west of Phrygia</i> )
	χρήμα -ατος τό	thing
29	ὅς ὑός ὁ	boar ( <i>idiom a big thing of a boar = a very big boar</i> )
	Μυσοί -ων οἱ	Mysians
	πρός	(+ <i>gen</i> ) from, at the hands of
	ἀναφαίνομαι ἀνεφηνάμην	I appear
	ἐξαιρέτος -ον	chosen
36	συμπέμπω συνέπεμψα	I send X ( <i>acc</i> ) with Y ( <i>dat</i> )
	ἐξαίρω ἐξεῖλον	I remove, I get rid of

ἄγγελοι ταῦτα εἶπον, ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος τοὺς τοῦ ὄνειρου λόγους  
 μνημονεύων ἀπεκρίνατο τάδε· "περὶ τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦ ἐμοῦ μήκετι λέγετε.  
 οὐ γὰρ ἐθέλω συμπέμψαι αὐτὸν ὑμῖν. νεόγαμος γὰρ ἐστὶ καὶ  
 40 ταῦτα νῦν μέλει αὐτῷ. ἄνδρας μέντοι ἐξαίρετους τῶν Λυδῶν καὶ πᾶν τὸ  
 κυνηγέσιον συμπέμψω, καὶ κελεύσω τοὺς ἰόντας ὡς προθυμότερα  
 συνεξελεῖν ὑμῖν τὸ θηρίον ἐκ τῆς χώρας."

ταῦτα ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Κροῖσος, καὶ οἱ Μυσοὶ ἡρέσκοντο τοῖς λόγοις. ὁ δὲ  
 τοῦ Κροίσου υἱὸς νῦν εἰσῆλθεν, ἀκούσας πάντα τὰ λεχθέντα. ἐπεὶ  
 45 οὖν ὁ Κροῖσος οὐκ ἤθελε πέμψαι αὐτὸν ὡς τοῖς Μυσοῖς βοηθήσοντα,  
 ὁ Ἄτυς εἶπε τάδε· "ὦ πάτερ, πρότερον μὲν κάλλιστόν τε καὶ  
 γενναϊότατον ἦν μοι εἰς πόλεμον καὶ εἰς ἄγρην ἰόντα δόξαν κτᾶσθαι.  
 νῦν δὲ κωλύεις με πάντων τούτων, καίπερ ἰδὼν με οὔτε φοβούμενον οὔτ'  
 ἄθυμούντα. ποῖος μὲν τις τοῖς πολίταις φανοῦμαι, ποῖος δέ τις τῇ  
 50 γυναικί; ἐμὲ οὖν ἡ ἕασον εἰς τὴν ἄγρην ἰέναι, ἡ πείσον διὰ τί ἁμεινόν  
 ἐστὶ τοῦτο οὕτω ποιούμενον."

ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος ἀπεκρίνατο τάδε· "ὦ παῖ, οὔτε δειλίαν σοι οὔτ' ἄλλο τι  
 κακὸν ἰδὼν τοῦτο ποιῶ, ἀλλ' ὄνειρος ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἔφη σε ὀλιγοχρόνιον  
 ἔσεσθαι· αἰχμῇ γὰρ σιδήρου σε ἀποθανεῖσθαι. κατὰ οὖν ταῦτα τὰ  
 55 ἀγγελθέντα ἡδύρὸν τε γυναικῶ σοι καὶ οὐκέτι εἰς κίνδυνόν σε πέμπω,  
 ἀλλὰ φυλάσσω σε, ἐλπίζων ἐπὶ γε τοῦ ἐμοῦ βίου ἀπὸ θανάτου σε  
 ἀποκλέψειν. εἰς μόνος υἱὸς μοι εἶ· τὸν γὰρ ἕτερον κωφὸν ὄντα οὐκ εἶναί  
 μοι νομίζω." ὁ δὲ νεανίας ἀπεκρίνατο, "συγγνώμη μὲν ὦ πάτερ ἐστὶ σοι,

	ὄνειρος -ου ὁ	dream
	μνημονεύω	I remember
	μήκετι	no longer, no more
	συμπέμψω συνέπεμψα	I send X (acc) with Y (dat)
39	νεόγαμος -ον	newly married
	μέλω	I am a concern
	ἐξαίρετος -ον	chosen
	κυνηγέσιον -ου τό	hunting pack
	πρόθυμος -ον	eager
42	συνεξαιρέω συνεξεῖλον	I join in removing
	θηρίον -ου τό	beast
	ἀρέσκομαι	I am satisfied (with, + dat)
	γενναῖος -α -ον	noble
	ἄγρα -ας ἡ	hunt
47	δόξα -ης ἡ	glory
	ἀθυμέω	I am disheartened
	ἔαω εἶασα	I allow
	δειλία -ας ἡ	cowardice
	ὀλιγοχρόνιος -ον	short-lived
54	αἰχμῇ -ῆς ἡ	spear-point
	σίδηρος -ου ὁ	iron
	ἐπὶ	(+ gen) in the time of
	ἕτερος -α -ον	the other
	κωφός -ῆ -όν	dumb, unable to speak
58	συγγνώμη -ης ἡ	pardon

- τοιοῦτον ὄνειρον ἰδόντι, φυλάσσειν με. τόδε γὰρ περὶ τοῦ ὄνειρου οὐ  
60 μανθάνεις· δεῖ με αἰχμῇ σιδήρου ἀποθανεῖν, ὥς ὁ ὄνειρος λέγει· ἀλλὰ  
ποῖαι χεῖρες, ποῖα αἰχμῇ σιδήρου (ἦν συ φοβῇ) ἐστὶν ὅτι; οὐ γὰρ ὀδόντι  
λέγει με ἀποθανεῖσθαι ἢ τοιοῦτω τινί, ὥστε σε δικαίως ταῦτα πράσσειν,  
ἀλλ' αἰχμῇ σιδήρου. ἐπεὶ οὖν οὐκ ἐπ' ἄνδρας ἡ μάχη ἐσται, ἑασόν με  
ἰέναι."
- 65 ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Κροῖσος, "ὦ παῖ," ἔφη, "τὴν περὶ τοῦ ὄνειρου γνώμην  
ἀποφαίνων νικᾷς με. ἔξεστί σοι εἰς τὴν ἄγρην ἰέναι." λέξας δὲ ταῦτα  
μετεπέμψατο τὸν Ἄδραστον. ἀφικόμενος δ' αὐτῷ εἶπεν, "Ἄδραστε, ἐγώ  
σε συφορὰν δεινὴν παθόντα ἐκάθηρα, καὶ εἰς τὴν ἐμὴν οἰκίαν ἐδεξάμην,  
καὶ σίτον καὶ πάντα παρέχω. νῦν δὲ δεῖ σε, ἀγαθὰ δεξάμενον, ἀγαθὰ καὶ  
70 πράσσειν. βούλομαι σε φύλακα τοῦ ἐμοῦ υἱοῦ γενέσθαι εἰς ἄγρην ἰόντος,  
μὴ κλέπται τινὲς ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ κακὸν ποιήσωσιν. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἐξέσται  
σοι καλὰ ἔργα πράσσοντι δόξαν φέρεισθαι. τοῦτο γὰρ πατρῶον ἐστί σοι,  
καὶ ἡ ῥώμη πάρεστιν."
- ὁ δ' Ἄδραστος ἀπεκρίνατο, "ὦ βασιλεῦ, καίπερ ἄλλως οὐκ ἐθέλων τοῦτο  
75 ποιῆσαι (οὐ γὰρ πρέπει ἀνδρὶ συφορὰν παθόντι μετὰ τῶν εὖ  
πρασσόντων ἰέναι), ἐπεὶ σὺ βούλῃ καὶ δεῖ με χαρίζεσθαι σοι, ἐτοῖμος  
εἰμί. καὶ ἔλπισον τὸν παῖδα ὃν κελεύεις με φυλάξαι ἀπήμονα διὰ τὸν  
φυλάσσοντα ἐπανελεῖν."
- ἐπεὶ οὖν ὁ Ἄδραστος ταῦτα τῷ Κροίσῳ ἀπεκρίνατο, ἐξήλθον μετὰ  
80 νεανιῶν ἐξαιρέτων καὶ κυνῶν. ἀφικόμενοι δ' εἰς τὸ Ὀλυμπον ὄρος

	ὄνειρος -ου ὁ	dream
	αἰχμῇ -ῆς ἡ	spear-point
	σίδηρος -ου ὁ	iron
	ὅς ὅς ὁ	boar
61	ὀδοῦς -όντος ὁ	(here) tusk
	ἔαω εἶασα	I allow
	γνώμη -ης ἡ	message, meaning
	ἀποφαίνω	I reveal
	ἄγρα -ας ἡ	hunt
67	μεταπέμπομαι μετεπεμψάμην	I send for
	καθαίρω ἐκάθηρα	I purify
	μή	(here) in case, for fear that (+ subjunctive)
	κλέπτης -ου ὁ	robber
	πρὸς	(+ dat) in addition to
72	δόξα -ης ἡ	glory
	φέρομαι	I win (something) for myself
	πατρῶος -α -ον	ancestral, in accordance with family tradition
	ῥώμη -ης ἡ	strength
	ἄλλως	otherwise
75	πρέπει	it is appropriate (for, + dat)
	χαρίζομαι	I gratify (+ dat)
	ἀπήμων -ον (-ονος)	unharmd
	ἐπανέρχομαι ἐπανήλθον	I return
	ἐξαιρέτος -ον	chosen
80	κύων κυνός ὁ/ἡ	dog

ἐζήτουν τὸ θηρίον, εὐρόντες δὲ καὶ κύκλῳ περιστάντες εἰσηκόντιζον.  
 τότε δὴ ὁ ξένος, οὗτος ὁ καθαρθεὶς τον φόνον, καλούμενος δ' Ἄδραστος,  
 ἀκοντίζων τὸν ὕν τοῦ μὲν ἁμαρτάνει, τυγχάνει δὲ τοῦ Κροίσου παιδός.  
 ἐκείνος μὲν δὴ βληθεὶς τῇ αἰχμῇ ἐξέπλησε τοὺς τοῦ ὀνείρου λόγους. καὶ  
 85 ἔδραμέ τις ἀγγελῶν τῷ Κροίσῳ τὰ γενόμενα· ἀφικόμενος δ' εἰς τὰς  
 Σάρδεις τὴν τε μάχην καὶ τὸν τοῦ υἱοῦ θάνατον ἔλεξεν αὐτῷ.

ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος τῷ τοῦ παιδὸς θανάτῳ ταραχθεὶς ἔτι μάλλον ἠθύμει διότι  
 ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτὸν ὁ ὕψ' ἑαυτοῦ καθαρθεὶς. καὶ χαλεπῶς φέρων τὴν  
 συμφορὰν τρίς ἐκάλει τὸν Δία, τὸν τοῦ τε καθαρμοῦ καὶ τῆς ξενίας καὶ  
 90 τῆς ἐταιρείας θεόν. ὁ γὰρ ξένος ὁ καθαρθεὶς καὶ φιλίῳς δεχθεὶς μάλιστα  
 ἠδίκησεν αὐτόν, καὶ λάθρᾳ ἐξένιζεν ὁ Κροῖσος τὸν τοῦ υἱοῦ φονέα.

παρήσαν δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ Λυδοὶ φέροντες τὸν νεκρόν. εἶπετο δ' αὐτοῖς  
 ὁ φονεὺς. οὗτος δὲ πρὸ τοῦ νεκροῦ παρῶν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Κροῖσον  
 ἀποκτεῖναι, λέγων ὅτι ὁ βίος οὐκέτι ἀνάσχετός ἐστιν αὐτῷ, πρὸς τῇ  
 95 προτέρᾳ συμφορᾷ τὸν καθήραντα νῦν διαφθεύραντι. ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος ταῦτα  
 ἀκούσας, "ὦ ξένε," ἔφη, "πᾶσαν δίκην ἀπὸ σου ἔχω, ἐπεὶ θάνατον  
 σεαυτοῦ καταδικάζεις. οὐ γὰρ σύ μοι τοῦδε τοῦ κακοῦ αἴτιος ἀλλὰ θεός  
 τις ὃς πάλαι ἔφη ταῦτα γενήσεσθαι." ὁ μὲν οὖν Κροῖσος ἔθαψε τὸν  
 ἑαυτοῦ παῖδα. ὁ δ' Ἄδραστος ὁ τοῦ Γορδίου τοῦ Μίδου, ὃς ἀπέκτεινε  
 100 τὸν τε ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφὸν καὶ τὸν τοῦ καθήραντος υἱόν, ἐπεὶ πάντες ἀπὸ

	ζητέω	I seek, I look for
	θηρίον -ου τό	wild animal, beast
	κύκλος -ου ὁ	circle
	περιστάντες	(irreg aor participle) standing around
81	εἰσακοντίζω	I throw a spear at
	καθαρθεὶς	(aor pass participle of καθαίρω = I purify, here followed by 'accusative of respect')
	φόνος -ου ὁ	murder, homicide
	ἀκοντίζω	I throw a spear
83	ὕς ὕός ὁ	boar
	ἁμαρτάνω	I miss (+ gen)
	τυγχάνω	I hit (+ gen)
	βληθεὶς	(aor pass participle of βάλλω)
	αἰχμή -ης ἡ	spear-point
84	ἐξέπλησα	(irreg aor) I fulfilled
	ὀνειρος -ου ὁ	dream
	ταράσσω aor pass ἐταράχθην	I disturb, I trouble
	ἀθυμέω	I am disheartened
	τρίς	three times
89	καθαρμός -οῦ ὁ	purification
	ξενία -ας ἡ	hospitality
	ἐταιρεία -ας ἡ	companionship
	ξενίζω	I entertain
	φονεὺς -έως ὁ	murderer
94	ἀνασχετός -όν	bearable, tolerable
	πρότερος -α -ον	previous, former
	δίκη -ης ἡ	justice, recompense.
	καταδικάζω	I condemn X (gen) to Y (acc)

τοῦ τάφου ἀπήλθον, συγγινωσκόμενος ἀνθρώπων οὓς ᾔδει  
βαρυσυμφορώτατος ἀπέκτεινεν ἑαυτὸν παρὰ τῷ τάφῳ.

τάφος -ου ὁ	tomb
συγγινώσκομαι	I acknowledge
βαρυσύμφορος -ον	heavily oppressed by misfortune
παρά	(+ <i>dat</i> ) beside

## Exercise 11.19

### Croesus and Cyrus

*This is the conclusion of the story of Croesus. The Delphic oracle plays a prominent role, though despite the lavish gifts Croesus had earlier made to it, he is here given a famously ambiguous response. In the battle over the city of Sardis, Croesus' deaf and dumb second son comes into his own (earlier he was dismissed with a callousness shocking to modern readers: ancient attitudes to disability were not enlightened). As often with stories in Herodotus, historical events have been overlaid with elements that recall myth: this is particularly true in the account of Croesus on the pyre. But underlying the whole story is the historical fact of the conquest of Lydia by the expansionist power of Persia in the middle of the sixth century BC.*

μετὰ δὲ τὸν τοῦ Ἄττος θάνατον ὁ Κροῖσος δύο ἔτη ἐν πένθει δεινῷ ἦν.  
ἔπειτα δ' ἐλέχθη αὐτῷ περὶ Κύρου τοῦ Πέρσου ὅτι αὐξάνοιτο ἤδη τὰ  
βασιλέως πράγματα. ἤλπιζεν οὖν τὴν δυνάμιν αὐτοῦ καθαιρῆσιν οὐπω  
5 πολλὰ πρὸς τοὺς Δελφοὺς ἐπεμψε, καὶ τὸν θεὸν ἡρώτησεν εἰ εὐτυχὴς  
γενήσοιτο ἢ στρατεία. μαντεῖον δὲ ὁ Κροῖσος ἐδέξατο τόδε: "ἐὰν ὁ  
Κροῖσος ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας στρατεύσῃ, μεγάλην ἀρχὴν καταλύσει."

τούτοις οὖν τοῖς λόγοις πεισθεὶς ὁ Κροῖσος τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Ἄλυν διέβη  
(οὗτος γὰρ τὴν τῶν Περσῶν χώραν ὀρίζει), καὶ μάχη ἐγένετο δεινὴ τε καὶ  
10 καρτερὰ. ὥς δὲ πολλῶν πεσόντων οὐδέτεροι ἐνίκησαν, ὁ μὲν Κροῖσος  
οἴκαδε ἐπανήλθεν, μέλλων συμμάχων πολὺ πλῆθος συλλέξειν, ἵνα  
αὐθις ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας στρατεύσειεν. ὁ δὲ Κύρος ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο τὸν

πένθος -ους τό	grief
Κύρος -ου ὁ	Cyrus (king of Persia 559-529 BC)
Πέρσης -ου ὁ	Persian
αὐξάνομαι	I increase, I get bigger
3 πράγματα -ων τά	affairs
δύναμις -εως ἡ	power
καθαίρω	I destroy
οὐπω	not yet
Δελφοί -ων οἱ	Delphi
6 στρατεία -ας ἡ	expedition
μαντεῖον -ου τό	oracular response
καταλύω	I destroy
Ἄλυσ -υος ὁ	Halys
ὀρίζω	I border, I form the boundary of
10 καρτερός -ά -όν	strong, violent
οὐδέτεροι	neither side
οἴκαδε	home, homewards
ἐπανέρχομαι ἐπανήλθον	I return, I go back



15 Κροῖσον ἀπελθόντα, ἐπορεύθη ὡς τάχιστα πρὸς τὰς Σάρδεις, οὗ ἦν τὰ τοῦ Κροῖσου βασιλεία· εὐρὼν δ' αὐτὸν ἀπαράσκευον (διελύθη γὰρ ἡδη τὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς πλεῖστον μέρος) μάχῃ τ' ἐνίκησε καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν καθεῖρξεν.

ἦν δὲ τῷ Κροίσῳ (ὡς καὶ πρότερον ἐλέχθη) ἄλλος υἱός, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἐπεικῆς, ἄφωνος δέ. πρὸ τοῦ ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας πολέμου ὁ Κροῖσος πολλάκις ἔλεγεν, "εἴθε λέγοι ὁ ἐμὸς παῖς." καὶ διότι μάλιστα ἐβούλετο 20 τοῦτον ἀκείσθαι, ἀγγέλους πρὸς τοὺς Δελφοὺς αὐθις ἐπεμψεν. μαντεῖον δ' ἐδέξατο τόδε· "ἄμεινόν ἐστι τὸν παῖδα ἄφωνον εἶναι. πρῶτον γὰρ λέξει ἡμέρᾳ ἀνόλβῳ." καὶ δὴ αἰρουμένης τῆς τοῦ Κροῖσου πόλεως Πέρσης τις τὸν Κροῖσον οὐκ ἐπιγινώσκων προσέδραμεν ὡς ἀποκτενῶν αὐτόν. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κροῖσος τοῦτον ἰδὼν ἡμέλει, διὰ τὴν παρούσαν συμφορὰν τὸν βίον 25 οὐκ ἐτι βιωτὸν νομίζων· ὁ δὲ παῖς ὁ ἄφωνος ἐπεὶ εἶδε τὸν Πέρσῃ ἐπιόντα μάλιστα φοβούμενος μεγάλη φωνὴ εἶπεν, "ὦ ἄνθρωπε, μὴ ἀποκτείνῃς τὸν Κροῖσον." οὗτος μὲν δὴ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἔλεξε, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἔλεγε πάντα τὸν τοῦ βίου χρόνον. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι τὰς τε Σάρδεις ἔλαβον καὶ τὸν Κροῖσον αὐτὸν ἐζώγρησαν, ἄρξαντά τε τέσσαρα καὶ δέκα ἔτη, καὶ 30 ἡμέρας τέσσαρας καὶ δέκα πολιορκηθέντα, καὶ κατὰ τὸ μαντεῖον ἀρχὴν μεγάλην καταλύσαντα, τὴν ἐαυτοῦ.

ὁ δὲ Κύρος πυρὰν μεγάλην συννήσας τὸν Κροῖσον ἀνεβίβασε, μέλλων ζῶντα κατακαύσειν. τῷ δὲ Κροίσῳ ἐπὶ τῆς πυρᾶς ἡδη ὄντι λέγεται εἰσελθεῖν τὸν τοῦ Σόλωνος λόγον, ὅτι οὐδεὶς τῶν ἐτι ζώντων ὄλβιος

	οὐ	where
	βασιλεία -ων τά	palace
	ἀπαράσκευος -ον	unprepared
	διαλύω <i>aor pass</i> διελύθην	I disband, I dismiss
15	μέρος -ους τό	part
	καθεῖργω καθεῖρξα	I confine, I shut in
	ἐπεικῆς -ές	capable
	ἄφωνος -ον	dumb, unable to speak
	εἴθε	if only ... would (+ <i>optative</i> )!
20	ἀκέω	I cure
	μαντεῖον -ου τό	oracular response
	ἀνολβός -ον	unlucky, unfortunate
	ἐπιγινώσκω	I recognise
	ἀμελέω	I do not care
25	βιωτός -όν	worth living
	ζωγρέω ἐζώγρησα	I take prisoner
	πολιορκέω	
	<i>aor pass</i> ἐπολιορκήθη	I besiege
	καταλύω κατέλυσα	I destroy
32	πυρά -ας ἡ	pyre
	συννέω συνένησα	I heap up
	ἀναβιβάζω ἀνεβίβασα	I make (someone) go up, I put (someone) up
	ζάω	I live, I am alive
	κατακαίω <i>fut</i> κατακαύσω	I burn
33	ἐπὶ	(+ <i>gen</i> ) on
	ὄλβιος -α -ον	happy

- 35 ἐστιν. καὶ τούτου τοῦ λόγου μνήμων ὁ Κροῖσος "Σόλων" τρίς ἐβόησεν.  
ὁ δὲ Κύρος ἀκούσας ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἑρμηνέας τὸν Κροῖσον ἐρωτήσαι  
τίς εἶη ὁ Σόλων. ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος πρῶτον μὲν ἐσίγησεν. ἔπειτα δέ,  
τοῦ Κύρου πολλάκις ἐρωτήσαντος, εἶπεν ὅτι δέοι πάντα τύραννον τῷ  
Σόλωνι διαλέγεσθαι, τῷ νομίζοντι πάντα τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ὄλβον οὐδὲν εἶναι.  
40 ὁ δὲ Κύρος νῦν μετέγνω, ἐννοήσας ὅτι αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ὢν μέλλει ἄλλον  
ἄνθρωπον, ὄλβω οὐκ ἐλάσσονα ἑαυτοῦ γενόμενον, ζῶντα κατακαύσειν.  
τοὺς οὖν δούλους ἐκέλευσε τό τε πῦρ σβέσαι καὶ τὸν Λυδὸν εὐθὺς  
καταβιβάσαι. τὰ μέντοι τῆς πυρᾶς ἔσχατα ἤδη ἔκαιεν, ὥσθ' οἱ δούλοι  
(καίπερ τοῦ Κύρου πολλάκις κελεύοντος) οὐχ οἰοί τ' ἦσαν τοῦ πυρὸς  
45 ἐπικρατήσαι. ἐν ταύτῃ δὴ τῇ ἀπορίᾳ οἱ Λυδοὶ τὸν Κροῖσόν φασιν  
'Απόλλωνα ἐπικαλέσασθαι, εἴ τι ἀγαθὸν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ὁ θεὸς ἐδέξατο,  
σῶσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ παρόντος κινδύνου· ἐξαίφνης δ' ἐξ αἰθρίας γενέσθαι  
ὑετὸν πολὺν, καὶ τὸ πῦρ παντελῶς σβέσαι.
- ἐκ δὲ τούτου ὁ Κύρος ἔμαθε τὸν Κροῖσον ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν τε καὶ θεοφιλῆ  
50 ὄντα. ἠρώτησεν οὖν αὐτὸν διὰ τί ἐπὶ τὴν τῶν Πέρσων γῆν ἐστράτευσεν.  
ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο, "ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὐδεὶς οὕτως ἀνόητός ἐστιν ὥστε τὸν  
πόλεμον ἀντὶ τῆς εἰρήνης αἰρεῖσθαι. ἐν μὲν γὰρ ταύτῃ, οἱ παῖδες τοὺς  
πατέρας θάπτουσιν· ἐν δ' ἐκείνῳ, οἱ πατέρες τοὺς παῖδας. ἀλλὰ  
ἐπείσθην στρατεῦσαι ὑπὸ τοῦ τῶν Ἑλλήνων θεοῦ· τοῖς γὰρ θεοῖς φίλον  
55 ἦν σε μὲν εὖ πράσσειν, ἐμὲ δὲ κακῶς."

	μνήμων -ον (μνημον-)	mindful (of), remembering (+ gen)
	τρίς	three times
	ἑρμηνεύς -έως ὁ	interpreter
	σιγάω ἐσίγησα	I am silent
38	τύραννος -ου ὁ	ruler
	διαλέγομαι	I have a conversation (with, + dat)
	ὄλβος -ου ὁ	prosperity/happiness
	μεταγινώσκω μετέγνω	I repent, I change my mind
	ἐννοέω ἐννόησα	I consider, I bear in mind
41	ζάω	I live, I am alive
	κατακαίω κατακαύσω	I burn
	σβέσαι	(irreg aor inf) to extinguish
	καταβιβάζω καταβίβασα	I bring down
	πυρά -ας ἡ	pyre
43	ἔσχατος -η -ον	lit furthest, n pl here edges
	ἐπικρατέω ἐπεκράτησα	I gain control of (+ gen)
	ἀπορία -ας ἡ	difficulty, crisis
	Ἀπόλλων -ωνος ὁ	Apollo
	ἐπικαλέομαι ἀπεκαλεσάμην	I call upon
47	ἐξαίφνης	suddenly
	αἰθρία -ας ἡ	clear sky
	ὑετός -οῦ ὁ	rain
	παντελῶς	entirely, completely
	θεοφιλής -ές	loved by the gods
51	ἀνόητος -ον	foolish, senseless
	αἰρέομαι	I choose

## Exercise 11.20

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

### The Power of Custom

*This story sums up much in Herodotus. Darius was king of Persia 521-486 BC. He reorganised and strengthened the empire: he seems to have been impressed by its great size, and conscious of the difficulties of ruling the diverse peoples it contained. As told by Herodotus, this account of cultural relativism is perhaps influenced by the ideas of thinkers like Protagoras (whom we met in Chapter 7) in his own day.*

- ἕκαστοι νομίζουσι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν νόμους πολλῶ καλλίστους εἶναι. τοῦτο δὲ πολλοῖς τε ἄλλοις τεκμηρίοις ἔξεστι γνῶναι καὶ δὴ τῷδε. ὁ γὰρ Δαρεῖος ἐπὶ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἀρχῆς καλέσας Ἑλληνάς τινας ἤρετο ἐφ' ὅπόσῳ χρυσῷ ἂν ἐθέλοιεν τοὺς πατέρας ἀποθανόντας φαγεῖν· οἱ δὲ ἐπ' οὐδενὶ
- 5 ἔφασαν τοῦτο ποιήσιν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Δαρεῖος ἐκάλεσεν Ἰνδοὺς τινας οἱ τοὺς ἀποθανόντας ἐσθίουσιν· καὶ οὗτοι οἱ ἄνθρωποι Καλλαταῖαι καλοῦνται. ἔπειτα δὲ βασιλεὺς τοὺς Καλλατίας ἤρετο (τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρόντων καὶ διὰ ἑρμηνέως τὰ λεγόμενα μανθανόντων) ἐφ' ὅπόσῳ χρυσῷ ἂν ἐθέλοιεν τοὺς πατέρας ἀποθανόντας καίειν. οἱ δέ, ἀναβοήσαντες μέγα,
- 10 σιγῆσαι αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσαν. οὕτως οὖν ὀρθῶς δοκεῖ μοι ὁ Πίνδαρος ἐν τῷ μέλει λέγειν ὅτι νόμος πάντων βασιλεὺς.

	νόμος -ου ὁ	(here) custom
	τεκμήριον -ου τό	piece of evidence, proof
	Δαρεῖος -ου ὁ	Darius (King of Persia 521-486 BC)
	ἐπὶ	(+ gen) in the time of
3	ἐφ' ὅπόσῳ	(+ dat) (here) for how much
	ἂν ἐθέλοιεν	they would be willing
	ἐπ' οὐδενὶ	for none, for no amount
	Ἰνδοί -ων οἱ	Indians
	Καλλαταῖαι -ων οἱ	Callatae (an Indian tribe)
8	ἑρμηνεύς -έως ὁ	interpreter
	ἀναβοάω ἀνεβόησα	I cry out
	σιγάω ἐσίγησα	I am silent
	ὀρθῶς	rightly
	Πίνδαρος -ου ὁ	Pindar (lyric poet, about 518-446 BC)
11	μέλος -ους τό	poem

- (1) What are we told that all men believe (line 1)? (3)
- (2) What did Darius ask some Greeks (lines 2-4)? (4)
- (3) What was their reply (lines 4-5)? (2)
- (4) Whom did Darius summon next, and what custom did they have (lines 5-7)? (3)
- (5) What did Darius ask them (lines 7-9)? (3)
- (6) How could the Greeks understand this conversation (line 8)? (1)
- (7) What was the reaction to Darius' question (lines 9-10)? (3)
- (8) What was said in Pindar's poem (line 11)? (2)
- (9) Does this story in fact illustrate complete relativism, or was there any underlying agreement between the two sides? (4)

25 marks

# Chapter 12

## (i): Practice passages

These passages continue to follow the main narrative of Herodotus, to its climax in his description of the wars between Greece and Persia in 490-479 BC.

Exercise PP.1

### Darius and Intaphrenes' Wife

*Darius was king of Persia 521-486 BC. The devotion of the woman in this story to her brother is expressed in very similar terms to that of Antigone (whom we met in Chapter 8) in Sophocles' play about her: one may have influenced the other, or they may have a common source.*

- ὁ δὲ Δαρεῖος συνέλαβε τὸν τε Ἰνταφρένη καὶ τοὺς παῖδας αὐτοῦ καὶ τοὺς συγγενεῖς· ἐνόμιζε γὰρ τὸν Ἰνταφρένη ἐπιβουλεύειν ἑαυτῷ. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο πάντας δῆσας, ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ἂν ἀπέκτεινεν, εἰ μὴ ἐγένετο τόδε δεινόν. ἡ γὰρ τοῦ Ἰνταφρένου γυνὴ πρὸς τὰς τῶν βασιλείων θύρας
- 5 ἐλθοῦσα τοσοῦτον χρόνον ἐδάκρυεν ὥστε τέλος βασιλεὺς ᾤκτειρεν αὐτήν. ἄγγελον οὖν πέμψας εἶπε τάδε· "ὦ γύναι, βασιλεὺς Δαρεῖος δίδωσί σοι ἕνα τῶν συγγενῶν σῶσαι δν βούλῃ ἐκ πάντων." ἡ δὲ βουλευσαμένη εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιο βασιλέα λύειν τὸν ἑαυτῆς ἀδελφόν. ὁ δὲ Δαρεῖος ταῦτα ἀκούσας ἐθαύμασεν· καὶ ἄλλον ἄγγελον πέμψας ἠρώτησεν, "ὦ
- 10 γύναι, διὰ τί τὸν τε ἄνδρα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας παραλιποῦσα αἰρῇ τὸν ἀδελφὸν σῶσαι;" ἡ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, "βούλομαι πάντας σῶσαι, ὦ βασιλεῦ. ἐπεὶ μέντοι τοῦτο οὐδαμῶς ἔξεστί μοι, τὸν ἀδελφὸν αἰροῦμαι, ὥδε λογιζομένη· ἔξεσται μοι ἄνδρα ἄλλον κτήσασθαι καὶ ἄλλους παῖδας, ἐὰν οὗτοι πάθωσι τι καὶ ἐὰν ἐθέλωσιν οἱ θεοί· πατρὸς μέντοι καὶ μητρὸς
- 15 οὐκέτι μοι ζῶντων, οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ἔξεστι ἀδελφὸν ἄλλον ἔχειν."

	Δαρεῖος -ου ὁ	Darius
	συλλαμβάνω συνέλαβον	I arrest, I seize
	Ἰνταφρένης -ους ὁ	Intaphrenes (a Persian nobleman)
	συγγενεῖς -ων οἱ	relatives
2	ἐπιβουλεύω	I plot against (+ dat)
	δέω ἔδησα	I bind, I tie up
	βασιλεία -ων τά	palace
	οἰκτεῖρω imperf ᾤκτειρον	I pity
	δίδωσι	(here) grants permission
7	βουλεύομαι ἐβουλευσάμην	I consider, I think over
	ἀδελφός -ου ὁ	brother
	παραλείπω παρέλιπον	I leave aside
	αἰρέομαι	I choose
	οὐδαμῶς	in no way
12	ὥδε	in the following way
	λογίζομαι	I reason, I calculate
	οὐκέτι	no longer
	ζάω	I live, I am alive
	τρόπος -ου ὁ	way

Exercise PP.2

## Darius and Democedes

*Democedes was a Greek doctor from southern Italy who fell on hard times and became a slave in the Persian empire.*

καὶ οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον Δαρεῖος, ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς θηρεύων, ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ἀπέπεσεν. τὸν δὲ πόδα στρέψας Αἰγυπτίους τινὰς μετεπέμψατο, ὧν τῇ τέχνῃ πρότερον ἐχρήσατο, νομίζων αὐτοὺς ἰατροὺς ἀρίστους ἐν τῇ τῶν Περσῶν ἀρχῇ εἶναι. οὗτοι οὖν τὸν βασιλέως πόδα στρεβλοῦντες  
 5 ἵνα ὀρθὸς γένηται, τῷ ὄντι πολλὰ κακίονα ἐποίησαν. διὰ δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Δαρεῖος ἑπτα μὲν ἡμέρας οὐχ οἷός τ' ἦν καθεύδειν· τῇ δὲ ὀγδόῃ, ἡγγεῖλέ τις ὅτι Δημοκῆδης ἀριστος εἶη περὶ τῆς ἱατρικῆς ἐν πασῇ τῇ ἀρχῇ. καὶ βασιλεῖ προθύμως ἐρωτῶντι ποῦ τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα εὐρήσει, οἱ φίλοι ἀπεκρίναντο τάδε· "εὐρήσεις αὐτόν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐν τοῖς δούλοις."

	Δαρεῖος -ου ὁ	Darius
	θηρεύω	I hunt
	στρέφω ἔστρεψα	(here) I twist
	Αἰγύπτιοι -ων οἱ	Egyptians
2	μεταπέμπομαι	I send for
	τέχνη -ης ἡ	skill
	Πέρσαι -ῶν οἱ	Persians
	στρεβλόω	I wrench
	ὀρθός -ή -όν	straight
5	τῷ ὄντι	really, in fact
	ὀγδοός -η -ον	eighth
	Δημοκῆδης -ους ὁ	Democedes
	ἱατρική -ῆς ἡ	medicine, medical skill
	προθύμως	eagerly

Read the rest of this passage on the next page and answer the questions that follow.

- 10 ἐκέλευσεν οὖν ὁ Δαρεῖος τὸν δοῦλον πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια ἄγεσθαι. καὶ ὁ Δημοκῆδης ἀφίκετο μάλιστα φοβούμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἐρωτήθη εἰ πολλὰ οἶδε περὶ τῆς ἱατρικῆς, πρῶτον μὲν οὐκ ἔφη τοῦτο ἀληθὲς εἶναι· ἔπειτα δὲ (αὐθις ἐρωτηθεὶς, καὶ ἀνδρειότερος γενόμενος) ὡμολόγησε τὴν τέχνην πρότερον μαθεῖν. ταῦτα οὖν ἀκούσας βασιλεὺς ἐπέτρεψεν
- 15 ἑαυτὸν τῷ δούλῳ. ὁ οὖν Δημοκῆδης, τέχνη τε Ἑλληνικῇ καὶ ἰάμασιν ἡπίοις χρώμενος, δι' ὀλίγου βασιλέα ὑγιῇ ἐποίησεν. ὁ οὖν Δαρεῖος, πρότερον οὐκ ἐλπίσας αὐθις οἷός τ' ἔσεσθαι βαδίζειν, μάλιστα ἡσθη. καὶ ἀπέπεμψε τὸν Δημοκῆδην πρὸς τὰς ἑαυτοῦ γυναῖκας, ὧν ἑκάστη πολὺν χρυσὸν αὐτῷ ἔδωκεν.

	basíleia -ων τά	palace
	ἱατρική -ῆς ἡ	medicine, medical skill
	ὁμολογέω ὡμολόγησα	I admit, I confess
	τέχνη -ης ἡ	skill
14	ἐπιτρέπω ἐπέτρεψα	I entrust X (acc) to Y (dat)
	Ἑλληνικός -ῆ -όν	Greek
	ἰαμα -ατος τό	cure, treatment
	ἡπιος -α -ον	gentle
	ὑγιής -ές	healthy
17	βαδίζω	I walk
	ἡδομαι ἡσθην	I am delighted

- (1) What order did Darius give (line 10)? (2)
- (2) How did Democedes feel (line 11)? (2)
- (3) What was he asked by the king, and what was his initial reply (lines 11-13)? (4)
- (4) Why and to what did he change his reply (lines 13-14)? (4)
- (5) What did Darius do as a result (lines 14-15)? (2)
- (6) What methods did Democedes use, and with what result (lines 15-16)? (3)
- (7) What was Darius' reaction, and why (lines 16-17)? (4)
- (8) What happened to Democedes as a result (lines 17-19)? (4)

---

25 marks

## Exercise PP.3

### Miltiades becomes ruler of the Dolonci

*This story describes a time (the sixth century BC) when Athens was just beginning to expand her interests overseas. The Dolonci were a tribe in the Thracian Chersonese, a peninsula (separated from Asia by the Hellespont) important for its natural resources and because it lay on the route to the Black Sea. The response of the Delphic oracle follows a typical folktales pattern (the first person to do X will be the one destined or prophesied).*

οἱ δὲ Δόλογχοι, τῶν πολεμίων ἀεὶ προσβαλλόντων, ἀγγέλους ἔπεμψαν  
εἰς Δελφοὺς ἐρωτήσαντας τὸν θεὸν περὶ τοῦ πολέμου. ἡ δὲ Πυθία  
ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς αἰτεῖν τὸν ἄνδρα ὃς πρῶτος αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ  
οἰκίαν καλεῖ, τύραννον γενέσθαι. οἱ δὲ Δόλογχοι, ἐκ Δελφῶν ἐξελθόντες  
5 ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Βοιωτίας· ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν ἐκέλευεν  
εἰσιέναι, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς πρὸς Ἀθήνας προσιέναι. ἦν τότε ἐν τῇ πόλει  
ἄνθρωπος πλούσιος, Μιλτιάδης ὀνόματι, ὃς καθίζων ἐν τοῖς προθύροις καὶ  
ὄρων τοὺς Δολόγκους προσιόντας, σκευὴν ἔχοντας οὐχ Ἑλληνικὴν, εἰς  
τὴν οἰκίαν ἐκάλεσεν. οἱ δὲ εἰσελθόντες ἐξηγήσαντο πάντα τὰ ὑπὸ τῆς  
10 Πυθίας κελευσθέντα. τέλος δ' αἰσθόμενοι τὸν Μιλτιάδην πλούσιον καὶ  
δυνατὸν ὄντα ἤτησαν αὐτὸν τύραννον τῶν Δολόγκων γενέσθαι. ὁ δὲ  
Μιλτιάδης ὃς ἐχαλέπαινε τῇ τοῦ Πεισιστράτου τυραννίδι καὶ ἐβούλετο ἐκ  
τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἀπελθεῖν, λαβὼν τῶν Ἀθηναίων πάντας τοὺς βουλομένους  
ἑαυτῷ ἔπεσθαι, ἔπλει μετὰ τῶν Δολόγκων καὶ τύραννος τῆς χώρας  
ἐκείνοις ἐγένετο.

	Δόλογχοι -ων οἱ	Dolonci
	Δελφοί -ων οἱ	Delphi
	Πυθία -ας ἡ	Pythia (priestess of Apollo at Delphi)
	τύραννος -ου ὁ	ruler
5	Βοιωτία -ας ἡ	Boeotia (region of central Greece)
	Ἀθηναί -ων αἱ	Athens
	Μιλτιάδης -ου ὁ	Miltiades
	πρόθυρα -ων τά	porch
	σκευή -ης ἡ	clothes
8	Ἑλληνικός -ή -όν	Greek
	ἐξηγέομαι ἐξηγησάμην	I explain
	δυνατός -ή -όν	powerful
	χαλεπαίνω	I am discontented (with, + dat)
	Πεισίστρατος -ου ὁ	Peisistratus (ruler of Athens in the mid-sixth century)
12	τυραννίς -ίδος ἡ	tyranny, rule

## Exercise PP.4

### Athens appeals for help

*In 490 BC the Persians attacked Athenian territory (landing at Marathon), in revenge for help Athens had earlier given to the Greeks of the Ionian (now Turkish) coast in their attempt to rebel from the Persian empire to which they were subject. The distance between Athens and Sparta covered by Pheidippides is about 125 miles. (The 26 miles of the modern Marathon race is the distance between Athens and Marathon; an unreliable story says that, after returning from Sparta, Pheidippides ran from Athens to Marathon to join in the battle; afterwards ran back with news of the victory; then dropped dead from his exertions.) The influence of superstition on Spartan policy was notorious, and perhaps sometimes a cover for Sparta's reluctance to get involved outside the Peloponnese.*

Read the passage and answer the questions below.

- οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἐπλευσαν πρὸς κώμην τινὰ τῆς Ἀττικῆς Μαραθῶνα  
 ὀνόματι. οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι, ὡς ἐπύθοντο, ἐστράτευσαν εἰς τὸν Μαραθῶνα.  
 οἱ δὲ στρατηγοί, ἔτι ὄντες ἐν τῇ πόλει, ἀπέπεμψαν εἰς Σπάρτην ἄγγελον  
 Φειδιππίδην (τάχιστα γὰρ τρέχειν οἷός τ' ἦν). οὗτος, πεμθὲς ὑπὸ τῶν  
 5 στρατηγῶν, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀφίκετο εἰς Σπάρτην. ἀφικόμενος δὲ τοῖς  
 ἄρχουσιν ἔλεγε τάδε· "ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ὑμᾶς αἰτοῦσι  
 βοηθῆσαι. κωλύσατε τὴν πόλιν τὴν ἀρχαιοτάτην ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλήσι  
 διαφθεῖρεσθαι ὑπ' ἀνδρῶν βαρβάρων." ὁ μὲν δὴ ἡγγελεν αὐτοῖς τὰ  
 10 κελευσθέντα. καὶ τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐδόκει μὲν βοηθεῖν τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις,  
 ἀδύνατον δ' ἐνόμιζον εἶναι τοῦτο εὐθὺς πράσσειν. δεισιδαιμονία  
 γὰρ ἐκωλύοντο, οὐκ ἐθέλοντες λύειν τὸν νόμον καθ' ὃν ἔδει τὴν  
 πανσέληνον μένειν.

	Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians
	κώμη -ης ἡ	village
	Ἀττική -ῆς ἡ	Attica (territory of Athens)
	Μαραθῶν -ῶνος ὁ	Marathon
2	στρατεύω	I march
	Σπάρτη -ης ἡ	Sparta
	Φειδιππίδης -ου ὁ	Pheidippides
	τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ	on the next day
	ἀρχαῖος -α -ον	ancient
10	ἀδύνατος -ον	impossible
	δεισιδαιμονία -ας ἡ	superstition
	πανσέληνος -ου ἡ	full moon

- (1) Where did the Persians sail to (lines 1-2)? (2)
- (2) How did the Athenians react when they found out (line 2)? (2)
- (3) What did the generals do while still in Athens, and why (lines 3-4)? (3)
- (4) When did Pheidippides reach Sparta (line 5)? (1)
- (5) Summarise the message he delivered to the Spartan authorities (lines 6-8). (6)
- (6) What was the Spartans' initial reaction (line 9)? (2)
- (7) What prevented them from acting immediately (lines 10-12)? (4)

20 marks



## Exercise PP.5

### Athenian generals at Marathon divided

*Callimachus as polemarch (a high-ranking magistrate) was in overall command of the Athenian army, but Miltiades (one of the ten annually elected generals) was responsible for the plan of the campaign. Some of the other generals were unwilling to rush into action, because the Athenians (helped only by a detachment from Plataea: see passage PP.7) were vastly outnumbered. Here Miltiades persuades Callimachus to give his casting vote in favour of fighting.*

- τοῖς δὲ τῶν Ἀθηναίων στρατηγοῖς ἐγίνοντο δῖχα αἱ γνώμαι· οἱ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ᾔθελον μάχεσθαι, ὥς εἰδότες αὐτοῖ μὲν ὀλίγοι ὄντες, τοὺς δὲ Πέρσας πολλῷ πλείονας, οἱ δὲ ἐκέλευον ὥς τάχιστα προσβαλεῖν τοῖς πολεμίοις. καὶ ἐν τούτοις ἦν ὁ Μιλτιάδης. τότε δὲ πολέμαρχος ἦν ὁ Καλλίμαχος, 5 ἰσόψηφος ὢν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς. τοῦτω οὖν εἶπεν ὁ Μιλτιάδης, "σὺ νῦν, ὦ Καλλίμαχε, οἶος τ' εἰ ποιῆσαι τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἢ δούλους ἢ ἐλευθέρους. νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἐν μεγίστῳ κινδύνῳ εἰσίν. ἐὰν γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν Περσῶν νικῶνται, πολλὰ κακὰ πείσονται· ἐὰν δὲ περιγένηται αὕτη ἡ πόλις, πρώτη τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πόλεων γενήσεται. νῦν οὖν λέξω σοι πῶς τοῦτο γενήσεται· 10 ἡμῶν τῶν στρατηγῶν ὄντων δέκα δῖχα γίνονται αἱ γνώμαι, τῶν μὲν κελευόντων μάχεσθαι, τῶν δὲ οὐ. ἐὰν μὲν μὴ εὐθὺς συμβάλωμεν, εἰς στάσιν πεσοῦνται οἱ ἡμέτεροι πολῖται· ἐὰν δὲ πρὸ τούτου συμβάλωμεν, ἔτι οἰοί τ' ἐσμεν νικῆσαι. ταῦτα οὖν πάντα ἐν σοὶ ἐστίν." ταῦτα οὖν λέγων ὁ Μιλτιάδης ἔπεισε τὸν Καλλίμαχον· προσγενομένης δὲ τῆς τοῦ 15 πολεμάρχου γνώμης, ἔδοξε μάχεσθαι.

	δίχα	at odds, inclining different ways
	γνώμη -ης ἡ	opinion
	Πέρσαι -ῶν αἱ	Persians
4	Μιλτιάδης -ου ὁ	Miltiades ( <i>nephew of the Miltiades who became ruler of the Dolonci in passage PP.3</i> )
	πολέμαρχος -ου ὁ	polemarch
	Καλλίμαχος -ου ὁ	Callimachus
	ἰσόψηφος -ον	having an equal vote
8	περιγίγνομαι περιγεγνόμεν	I survive
	Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ	Greece
	συμβάλλω συνέβαλον	I join battle
	στάσις -εως ἡ	civil unrest
	προσγίγνομαι προσγεγνόμεν	I am added on

Exercise PP.6

## The Athenian Charge

*Although Herodotus is no expert in military matters (his accounts of battles leave many questions unanswered), he conveys how unusual the Athenian tactics at Marathon were. He also has a strong sense of Marathon as a watershed, when the Persians lost some of their power to inspire terror.*

Read the first part of the passage and answer the questions below.

οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐν Μαραθῶνι ὑπὸ τοῦ Μιλτιάδου ὧδε ἐτάχθησαν· τὸ μὲν μέσον τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐπ' ἀσπίδων ὀλίγων μόνον ἦν, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀσθενέστατον, τὸ δὲ κέρας ἐκάτερον ἰσχυρὸν ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ σφάγια ἐγίγνετο καλὰ, εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους δρόμῳ ῥμήσαντο· ἦν δὲ  
 5 μεταξὺ στάδια οὐκ ἐλάσσονα ἢ ὅκτω. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι, ὁρῶντες αὐτοὺς δρόμῳ προσίοντας, παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς δεξόμενοι. ἐνόμιζον δὲ μαίνεσθαι τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, καὶ πρὸς ὄλεθρον φέρεσθαι· ἡσθάνοντο γὰρ αὐτοὺς ὀλίγους ὄντας καὶ δρόμῳ προσελθεῖν κελευσθέντας, καίπερ οὐθ' ἱππέας οὔτε τοξότας ἔχοντας. ταῦτα μὲν οἱ βάρβαροι ἐλογίζοντο·

	Μαραθῶν -ῶνος ὁ	Marathon
	Μιλτιάδης -ου ὁ	Miltiades
	ὧδε	in the following way
	τάσσω <i>aor pass</i> ἐτάχθην	I draw up
2	μέσον -ου τό	middle
	ἐπὶ	(+ <i>gen</i> ) ( <i>here</i> ) to a depth of
	κέρας -ατος τό	wing (of an army; <i>lit horn, from its shape</i> )
	ἐκάτερος -α -ον	each (of two)
	σφάγια -ων τά	sacrificial victims ( <i>sacrifices always preceded battle</i> )
4	δρόμος -ου ὁ	run, act of running
	ῥμάομαι ῥμησάμην	I set out
	μεταξὺ	in between
	στάδιον -ου τό	stade ( <i>unit of length, about 180 metres</i> )
	Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians
6	μαίνομαι	I am mad
	ὄλεθρος -ου ὁ	destruction
	τοξότης -ου ὁ	archer
	λογίζομαι	I reckon, I calculate

- (1) Describe how the Athenians were drawn up by Miltiades (lines 1-3). (6)
- (2) What good omen for the battle was there (lines 3-4)? (2)
- (3) How did they set out against the enemy (line 4)? (1)
- (4) How far were the two armies apart (lines 4-5)? (2)
- (5) What did the Persians do when they saw the Athenians approaching (lines 5-6)? (2)
- (6) What did the Persians think about the Athenians (lines 6-7)? (3)
- (7) What observations prompted this view (lines 7-9)? (4)

20 marks

Translate the rest of the passage which follows on the next page.

- 10 Ἀθηναῖοι δέ, ἐπεὶ πάντες προσέμιξαν τοῖς βαρβάροις, ἐμάχοντο ἀξίως λόγου. πρῶτοι μὲν γὰρ Ἑλλήνων πάντων δρόμῳ ἐπὶ πολεμίους ἐχρήσαντο, πρῶτοι δ' οὐκ ἐφοβοῦντο ἐσθῆτά τε Περσικὴν ὀρώντες καὶ τοὺς ἀνδρας ταύτην φοροῦντας. πρότερον δ' ἦν τοῖς Ἑλλήσι καὶ τὸ ὄνομα τῶν Περσῶν φοβερόν.

	προσμίγνυμι προσέμιξα	I engage in close combat (with, + dat)
	δρόμος -ου ὁ	run, act of running
	ἐσθῆς -ῆτος ἡ	clothing, gear
	Περσικός -ῆ -όν	Persian
13	φορέω	I wear
	φοβερός -ά -όν	formidable, terrifying

## Exercise PP.7

### The Athenian Victory

*Miltiades' battle plan is vindicated. The Persians, encouraged by Athenian traitors, sail round the coast of Attica in an unsuccessful attempt to take the city by surprise.*

- μάχης δ' ἐν Μαραθῶνι πολὺν χρόνον ἤδη γιγνομένης, τὸ μὲν μέσον τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐνίκων οἱ βάρβαροι (ἐν μέσῳ γὰρ ἐτάχθησαν οἱ τῶν Περσῶν στρατιῶται οἱ ἄριστοι), καὶ ῥήξαντες ἐδίωκον εἰς τὴν μεσογείαν. τὸ δὲ κέρας ἐκάτερον ἐνίκων οἱ τ' Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς Πλαταιᾶς 5 σύμμαχοι. νικῶντες δέ, τοὺς μὲν ἀναχωρουντας τῶν βαρβάρων οὐκ ἐδίωξαν, τοῖς δὲ ἐν μέσῳ ἐμάχοντο, συναγαγόντες τὰ κέρατα ἀμφοτέρα. οὕτως οὖν ἐνίκησαν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι. εἶποντο δὲ τοῖς Πέρσας φεύγουσι τύπτοντες ἔως, ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν ἀφικόμενοι, πῦρ τ' ἤτουν καὶ ἐπελαμβάνοντο τῶν νεῶν. καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ὁ πολέμαρχος 10 Καλλίμαχος ἀπέθανεν, ἀνὴρ γενόμενος ἀγαθός.

	Μαραθῶν -ῶνος ὁ	Marathon
	μέσον -ου τό	middle
	τάσσω <i>aor pass</i> ἐτάχθην	I draw up
	Πέρσαι -ῶν οἱ	Persians
3	ῥήξαντες ( <i>irreg aor participle</i> )	having broken through
	μεσογεία -ας ἡ	inland region
	κέρας -ατος τό	wing (of an army; <i>lit horn, from its shape</i> )
	ἐκάτερος -α -ον	each (of two)
	Πλαταια -ας ἡ	Plataea ( <i>small town in central Greece; longstanding ally of Athens</i> )
4	ἀμφοτέροι -αι -α	both
	τύπτω	( <i>here</i> ) I strike, I beat
	ἐπιλαμβάνομαι ἐπελαβόμην	I seize hold of (+ <i>gen</i> )
	πολέμαρχος -ου ὁ	polemarch ( <i>high-ranking magistrate in overall command of the Athenian army</i> )
9	Καλλίμαχος -ου ὁ	Callimachus

(continued ...)

- 11 ἐπὶ τὰ μὲν τῶν νεῶν ἐπεκράτησαν τῷ τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, ταῖς δὲ ἄλλαις οἱ βάρβαροι ἀνακρουσάμενοι περιέπλεον Σούνιον, βουλόμενοι πρὸ τῶν Ἀθηναίων εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἀφικέσθαι. τῶν γὰρ ἐν Ἀθήναις προδότηι τινὲς ἔδειξαν αὐτοῖς ἐκ τῶν ὄρων ἀσπίδα λαμπράν, ἵνα τοῦτο
- 15 τὸ σημεῖον ἰδόντες ἀπροσδοκῆτως προσβάλοιεν τῇ πόλει. οἱ μὲντοι Ἀθηναῖοι ταχέως πορευόμενοι ἀφίκοντο πρὸ τῶν βαρβάρων. οὗτοι οὖν, ὥς ἐπύθοντο τοὺς ἀπὸ Μαραθῶνος ἔλθοντας, ἀπέπλεον εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ ἐν Μαραθῶνι μάχῃ ἀπέθανον τῶν βαρβάρων ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ τετρακόσιοι ἄνδρες· Ἀθηναίων δὲ ἑκατὸν ἐνενήκοντα καὶ δύο.

	ἐπικρατέω ἐπεκράτησα	I take possession of (+ gen)
	τρόπος -ου ὁ	way
	ἀνακρούομαι ἀνεκρουσάμην	I back into the sea
	περιπλέω	I sail round
12	Σούνιον -ου τό	Sunium (cape at southern tip of Attica)
	προδότης -ου ὁ	traitor
	ἔδειξα (irreg aor)	I showed
	λαμπρός -ά -όν	bright, shining
	σημεῖον -ου τό	sign, signal
15	ἀπροσδοκῆτως	unexpectedly
	Ἀσία -ας ἡ	Asia
	ἑξακισχίλιοι -αι -α	6000
	τετρακόσιοι -αι -α	400
	ἑκατόν	100
19	ἐνενήκοντα	90

## Exercise PP.8

### The advice of Mardonius to Xerxes

*After the Persian defeat at Marathon, Darius started to plan a new invasion. But a revolt against Persian rule broke out in Egypt, and before this was subdued Darius died (485 BC). His son Xerxes succeeded him and devoted several years to diplomatic and military preparations. He received conflicting advice from other members of the Persian royal family about whether the expedition should go ahead. Here his cousin Mardonius persuades him that it should. Xerxes then tells the Persian nobles that he is going to continue the enterprise begun by his father, and take vengeance on the Greeks.*

- ὁ Ξέρξης πρῶτον μὲν οὐκ ἐβούλετο τῇ τῶν Ἑλλήνων χώρα προσβαλεῖν· ὕστερον δ' ἐπεισεν αὐτὸν ὁ Μαρδόνιος, υἱὸς ὦν τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς ἀδελφῆς, ὃς εἶπε τάδε· "ὦ δέσποτα, δεῖ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους πολλὰ κακῶς ποιήσαντας τοὺς Πέρσας δίκην δοῦναι. ταῖς οὖν Ἀθήναις πρόσβαλε, ἵνα μηδεὶς
- 5 ὕστερον ἐπὶ τὴν σὴν χώραν πορεύηται. τῶν δὲ Ἑλλήνων οὐτ' ἀνδρῶν

	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
	Μαρδόνιος -ου ὁ	Mardonius
	ἀδελφή -ῆς ἡ	sister
	Πέρσαι -ῶν οἱ	Persians
4	δίκην δοῦναι	to pay the penalty
	Ἀθῆναι -ων αἱ	Athens

- 6 πλήθος οὔτε χρημάτων δύνανται δεῖ φοβεῖσθαι· ἀσθενεῖς γὰρ ὄντες, πρὸς ἀλλήλους μάχονται ἀβουλότατα. πρὸς δὲ τοῦτοις ἡ Εὐρώπη, χώρα καλλίστη οὖσα, παντοῖα παρέχει βασιλέως μόνου ἄξια." οὕτως οὖν  
9 ἐπείσθη ὁ Ξέρξης.

	πλήθος -ους τό	number, crowd
	δύναμις -εως ἡ	power
	ἀλλήλους	each other
	ἀβουλότατα	senselessly
7	πρός (+ dat)	in addition to
	Εὐρώπη -ης ἡ	Europe
	παντοῖος -α -ον	of all kinds

Read the rest of the passage and answer the questions below.

- 10 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τοῖς τῶν Περσῶν ἀρίστοις ἔλεξε τάδε· "ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, νέον νόμον οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐν ὑμῖν ποιῆσαι· τῶν μέντοι βασιλέων τῶν πρότερον οὐδεὶς ῥάθυμος ἐγένετο. καὶ ἐγὼ τοῦτον τὸν θρόνον παραλαβὼν πάντα πράσσω ἵνα μὴ ἐλάσσων γέννηται ἢ τῶν Περσῶν ἀρχή. μέλλω οὖν τὸν Ἑλλησποντον ζεύξας στρατιὰν διὰ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
15 ἄξειν, ἵνα τοὺς Ἀθηναίους κολάσω. οὗτοι γὰρ μάλιστα ἠδίκησαν τοὺς τε Πέρσας καὶ τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα. τὸν δὲ Δαρεῖον πρότερον εἶδετε στρατιὰν ἐπὶ τοὺτους τοὺς ἄνδρας παρασκευάζοντα. οὗτος μέντοι ἀπέθανεν· ἐγὼ δὲ ὑπὲρ τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Περσῶν αἰρήσω τε καὶ κατακαύσω τὰς Ἀθήνας."

	ῥάθυμος -ον	lazy, inactive
	θρόνος -ου ὁ	throne
	παραλαμβάνω παρέλαβον	I take over, I succeed to
14	Ἑλλησποντος -ου ὁ	Hellespont ( <i>the Dardanelles, dividing Europe from Asia</i> )
	ζεύξας ( <i>irreg aor participle</i> )	having yoked
	Εὐρώπη -ης ἡ	Europe
	Ἑλλάς -ἄδος ἡ	Greece
	Δαρεῖος -ου ὁ	Darius
18	κατακαίω <i>fut</i> κατακαύσω	I burn down

- (1) What did Xerxes assure the Persian nobles he did not want to do (lines 10-11)? (2)
- (2) How did he characterise previous Persian kings (lines 11-12)? (2)
- (3) What did he say he had done since taking over the throne (lines 12-13)? (3)
- (4) What did he say he intended to do, and by what means (lines 13-15)? (4)
- (5) Why did he want to punish the Athenians (lines 15-16)? (3)
- (6) What did he say about Darius (lines 16-17)? (3)
- (7) What did he say he would do, and on whose behalf (lines 17-19)? (3)

20 marks

## An Ingenious Message

*The exiled Spartan king Demaratus informs his fellow Spartans about the planned expedition of Xerxes. Herodotus speculates about his motive for doing so.*

- ἐπύθοντο οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι πρότωι βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
 στρατεύοντα, ἐπύθοντο δὲ τρόπῳ θαυμασίῳ. ὁ γὰρ Δημάρητος, ὥς γε  
 φαίνεται, οὐκέτι φίλος ἦν τοῖς ἄλλοις Λακεδαιμονίοις· ἔξεστιν οὖν  
 5 εἰκάζειν εἴτε εὐνοίᾳ ταῦτα ἐποίησεν εἴτε καὶ χαίρων. ἐπεὶ μέντοι τῷ  
 Ξέρξῃ ἔδοξεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατεύειν, ὁ Δημάρητος ἐν Σούσοις ὧν  
 καὶ ταῦτα μαθὼν, ἐβούλετο τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἀγγεῖλαι. τάδε οὖν  
 ἐμηχανήσατο· δελτίον διπτυχὸν λαβὼν τὸν κηρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐξέκνησεν.  
 ἐπειτα δ' ἔγραψεν ἐν τῷ τοῦ δελτίου ξύλῳ τὴν βασιλέως βουλήν, ποιήσας  
 10 δὲ ταῦτα αὐθὺς ἐπέτηξε τὸν κηρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ γράμματα, ἵνα οἱ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ  
 φύλακες μηδεμίαν ὑποψίαν τοῦ δελτίου φερομένου ἔχουσιν. ἐπεὶ δ'  
 ἐδέξαντο τὸ δελτίον οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, πρῶτον μὲν οὐχ οἰοί τ' ἦσαν  
 συμβαλέσθαι. τέλος δὲ (ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι) ἡ Γοργῷ, τοῦ μὲν  
 Κλεομένους θυγάτηρ, τοῦ δὲ Λεωνίδου γυνή, ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς τὸν  
 κηρὸν ἐκκνᾶν. ἐνόμισε γὰρ αὐτοὺς γράμματα ἐν τῷ ξύλῳ εὐρήσειν.

	Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ	Greece
	στρατεύω	I make an expedition
	τρόπος -ου ὁ	way
	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	wonderful, marvellous
2	Δημάρητος -ου ὁ	Demaratus (exiled Spartan king, who had gone over to Persia)
	οὐκέτι	no longer
	εἰκάζω	I guess
	εἴτε ... εἴτε	whether ... or
4	εὐνοία -ας ἡ	kindness, goodwill
	χαίρω	I rejoice, I am happy
	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
	Σούσα -ων τά	Susa (important Persian city and royal residence)
	μηχανάομαι ἐμηχανησάμην	I contrive
7	δελτίον -ου τό	tablet
	διπτυχός -ον	folded, double (two writing surfaces protected by raised edges were hinged like a book)
	κηρός -ου ὁ	wax
	ἐκκνᾶω ἐξέκνησα	I scrape (something) off
8	ξύλον -ου τό	wood
	ἐπιτήκω ἐπέτηξα	I melt (something) onto
	γράμματα -ων τά	letters (of the alphabet)
	ὑποψία -ας ἡ	suspicion
	συμβάλλομαι συνεβαλόμην	I understand, I interpret
12	Γοργῷ ἡ	Gorgo
	Κλεομένης -ους ὁ	Cleomenes (Spartan king of the other royal line to Demaratus, and responsible for his exile)
	Λεωνίδας -ου ὁ	Leonidas (half-brother and successor of Cleomenes; hero of Thermopylae - see passages PP.13-17)

15 οὗτοι οὖν πειθόμενοι ἡῦρον καὶ ἀνέγνωσαν. ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις  
ἔλλησιν πάντα ἡγγείλαν.

πειθομαι	I obey
ἀναγιγνώσκω ἀνέγνω	I read

## Exercise PP.10

### Xerxes whips the sea

*Xerxes is presented by Herodotus as the archetypal oriental despot. His excessive pride is summed up by his determination to allow no natural obstacle to obstruct him, and by his expectation that even the elements should obey him. Greek readers, with their wide experience of tragic drama, would sense strongly that he is riding for a fall.*

Read the passage and answer the questions that follow.

ἐπεὶ οὖν ἔδοξεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἰέναι, ὁ Ξέρξης, στρατὸν συλλέξας  
θαυμάσιον ὄσον, αὐτὸς εἰς Σάρδεις κατήγαγεν. τρία δ' ἔτη ἤδη  
διώρυσσεν τὸν ὑπὸ τῷ Ἀθῷ ἰσθμὸν παντοδαπῶν ἀνθρώπων πλῆθος, ἵνα  
μὴ περὶ τὸ ὄρος πλεοῦσαι διαφθείρωνται αἱ νῆες. ἄλλοι δὲ γέφυραν  
5 ἐποίησαν ἐν τῷ Ἑλλησπόντῳ, ὃς τὴν Εὐρώπην ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀσίας ἀπέχει, ὧν  
ἑπτὰ σταδίων τὸ εὖρος. ποιηθεῖσαν δὲ ταύτην χειμῶν μέγας διέφθειρεν. ὥς  
δ' ἐπύθετο ταῦτα ὁ Ξέρξης, λέγεται κελεῦσαι μαστίζειν τε τὴν θάλασσαν  
καὶ βάλλειν εἰς αὐτὴν πέδας. καὶ ἠναγκάσθησαν οἱ μαστίζοντες τάδε  
τὰ βάρβαρα τε καὶ ἀτάσθαλα λέγειν· ὃ πικρὸν ὕδωρ, ὁ δεσπότης ὦδε

	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
	στρατός -οῦ ὁ	army
	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	wonderful, marvellous
	ὄσος -η -ον	(here) in size, as to its size
2	κατάγω κατήγαγον	I bring (something) down (here understand the army)
	Σάρδεις -εων αἱ	Sardis (the old Lydian capital, incorporated into the Persian empire)
	διορύσσω	I dig through
	Ἀθῶς -ω ὁ	Athos (mountain and peninsula in Thrace, to the north of Greece)
3	ἰσθμός -οῦ ὁ	isthmus, narrow neck of land
	παντοδαπός -ή -όν	of all kinds
	πλῆθος -ους τό	great number, multitude
	γέφυρα -ας ἡ	bridge
5	Ἑλλησποντός -ου ὁ	Hellespont (the Dardanelles)
	Εὐρώπη -ης ἡ	Europe
	Ἀσία -ας ἡ	Asia
	ἀπέχω	I separate
	στάδιον -ου τό	stade (unit of length, about 200 metres)
6	εὖρος -ους τό	width (here 'accusative of respect', i.e. in width)
	μαστιζῶ	I whip
	πέδη -ης ἡ	fetter, shackle
	ἀτάσθαλος -ον	presumptuous, reckless
	πικρός -ά -όν	bitter

(continued ...)

- 10 κολάζει, διότι ἡδίκησας αὐτὸν καίπερ οὐδὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἄδικον παθόν.  
καὶ βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης διαβήσεται σε, ἐάν τε σὺ βούλῃ ἐάν τε μή.  
δικαίως οὖν οὐδεὶς ἀνθρώπων θύει σοι ὥς ὄντι θολερῶ καὶ ἄλμυρῶ  
ποταμῷ." οὕτως οὖν ὁ Ξέρξης ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς κολάζειν τὴν θάλασσαν·  
καὶ ἀπέτεμε τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν τὴν γέφυραν ποιησάντων.
- 15 ἔπειτα δ' ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἐαυτοῦ τὸν πορθμὸν αὐθις κολάζειν. οἱ οὖν  
ἀρχιτέκτονες δυοῖν γεφύραις ἔζευξαν, ὧν ἐκάστη ναυσὶ τριακοσίαις  
ἐποιήθη. σχοινίοις δ' ἰσχυροῖς τὰς ναὺς συνέδησαν, καὶ ἐξ ἐκάστης  
ἄγκυρα εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν κατεβλήθη. καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τὰς ναὺς ἐπέθηκαν  
ξύλα, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ξύλα ὕλην· φραγμοὺς δ' ἐποίησαν ἀμφοτέρωθεν, ἵνα μὴ
- 20 οἱ ἵπποι τὴν θάλασσαν ὁρῶντες φοβῶνται.

	πρὸς	(+ gen) at the hands of
	θολερὸς -ά -όν	muddy
	ἄλμυρός -ά -όν	salty
	ἀποτέμνω ἀπέτεμον	I cut off
14	γέφυρα -ας ἡ	bridge
	πορθμός -οῦ ὁ	channel
	ἀρχιτέκτων -ονος ὁ	engineer
	ἔζευξα (irreg aor)	I yoked
	τριακόσιοι -αι -α	three hundred
17	σχοινίον -ου τό	cable
	συνδέω συνέδησα	I bind (something) together
	ἄγκυρα -ας ἡ	anchor
	ἐπέθηκα (irreg aor)	I put on
	ξύλον -ου τό	log, piece of wood
19	ὕλη -ης ἡ	(here) brushwood
	φραγμός -οῦ ὁ	barricade
	ἀμφοτέρωθεν	on both sides

- (1) What did Xerxes do after deciding to attack the Athenians (lines 1-2)? (5)
- (2) What task occupied three years, and why was it done (lines 2-4)? (6)
- (3) What facts are we told about the Hellespont, which Xerxes bridged (lines 5-6)? (3)
- (4) What happened to the bridge (line 6)? (2)
- (5) What actions is Xerxes said to have commanded in response to this (lines 7-8)? (4)
- (6) What description is given of the words the men carrying out Xerxes' order were commanded to utter (lines 8-9)? (2)
- (7) Summarise what the men said on Xerxes' behalf (lines 9-13). (6)
- (8) What did Xerxes do to the men who had built the bridge (line 14)? (1)
- (9) Describe the second solution to bridging the Hellespont (lines 15-18). (6)
- (10) How was the surface of the new bridges made, and why were barricades put along the sides (lines 18-20)? (5)

---

40 marks



## The Sons of Pythius

*This story, like the previous one, contributes importantly to the characterisation of Xerxes. He is not simply wicked; rather, his gestures both of generosity and of vindictiveness are on a grand scale - and it is unpredictable how the despot will behave in any situation. Herodotus intends a lesson about types of government: Greek readers would be thankful that the republican constitutions of their small city-states were usually free from the corrupting effects of absolute power.*

- ἦν δὲ Λυδός τις, Πύθιος ὀνόματι, ὃς πρότερον τὸν Ξέρξην ἐξένισε, καὶ χρήματα πολλὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ παρέσχευ. καὶ νῦν πρὸς βασιλέα ἐλθὼν ἔλεξε τάδε: "ὦ δέσποτα, ἀγαθὰ σε ποιήσας βούλομαι τι αἰτεῖν, σοὶ μὲν μικρόν, ἐμοὶ δὲ μέγα". ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης, οὐκ εἰδὼς τί ὁ Πύθιος λέξει, ἔφη
- 5 ποιήσῃν τοῦτο. ὁ οὖν Πύθιος εἶπεν, "ὦ δέσποτα, εἰσί μοι παῖδες πέντε, καὶ πάντες μετὰ σου ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα πορεύονται. ἓνα οὖν τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἀπαλύσον, ἐμὲ τὸν γέροντα οἰκτεῖρων, ἵνα ἐνθάδε μένη τῷ πατρὶ βοηθήσων. τοὺς δὲ τέσσαρας ἄγε· ἐλπίζω τὸ σὸν ἔργον εὐτυχὲς ἔσεσθαι." ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης μάλιστα ὀργισθεὶς ἀπεκρίνατο, "ὦ κακὲ
- 10 ἄνθρωπε, σὺ ἐτόλμης περὶ τοῦ παιδὸς λέγειν, ἐμοῦ βασιλέως ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατεύοντος καὶ τοὺς ἐμοὺς παῖδας ἄγοντος; δεῖ σε μαθεῖν δοῦλον ὄντα. σὲ μέντοι καὶ τοὺς τέσσαρας σφάζει ἢ πρότερον ξενία. τὸν δὲ πρεσβύτατον, ὃν μάλιστα φιλεῖς, δίκην δοῦναι δεῖ." ἔπειτα δ' ἐκέλευσε
- 15 διατεμόντας δὲ τὰ ἡμίτομα διαθεῖναι τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ δεξιᾷ τῆς ὁδοῦ, τὸ δὲ ἐπ' ἀριστερά. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Ξέρξης πάντα τὸν στρατὸν διεξήγαγεν.

	Λυδός -οῦ ὁ	Lydian
	Πύθιος -ου ὁ	Pythius
	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
	ξενίζω ἐξένισα	I entertain
6	Ἑλλάς -ἄδος ἡ	Greece
	πρεσβύτατος -η -ον	eldest
	απαλύω ἀπέλυσα	I release
	οἰκτεῖρω	I pity
	τολμάω ἐτόλμης	I dare
11	στρατεύω	I make an expedition
	ξενία -ας ἡ	hospitality
	δίκην δοῦναι	to pay the penalty
	μέσος -η -ον	in the middle
	διατέμνω διέτεμον	I cut apart
15	ἡμίτομος -ον	cut in half
	διαθεῖναι	to arrange
	ἐπὶ δεξιᾷ	on the right
	ἐπ' ἀριστερά	on the left
	διεξάγω διεξήγαγον	I lead right through

## Xerxes weeps

Part of the genius of Herodotus is the way in which his portrayal of Xerxes, alongside the uncontrolled temper and arbitrary cruelty, allows glimpses too of a more sympathetic side. In this story Xerxes has a moment of insight into a universal human truth. The story is also rich in dramatic irony: many of the men will, we realise, be dead long before Xerxes imagines. Here again Xerxes resembles the main character of a tragic drama: we can pity him even as we condemn his behaviour. The two sides of Xerxes also echo Herodotus' portrayal of Croesus (which we looked at in Chapter 11): Xerxes dominates the last part of the historian's work as Croesus dominated the first part. But with Croesus (who was himself a victim of Persian aggression) the positive side was much more strongly emphasised.

- ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο ἐν Ἀβύδῳ (αὕτη δὲ ἡ πόλις ἐστὶ τῶν ἐν Ἀσίᾳ ἐσχάτη),  
 μέλλων διαβῆσιν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ὃ Ξέρξης ἐπὶ κολωνοῦ ἐν ἔδρᾳ  
 λιθίνῃ καθίζων πάντα τὸν στρατὸν ἐθεᾶτο. ὥς δὲ ἑώρα τὸν τε  
 Ἑλλήσποντον ταῖς ναυσὶν κρυφθέντα, τὰ τε πεδία ἀνθρώπων πλήρη,  
 5 πρῶτον μὲν ἑαυτὸν ἐμακάρισεν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐδάκρυσεν. ἰδόντος δὲ τοῦ  
 Ἀρταβάνου τοῦ πατρὸς ἀδελφοῦ, ὃς πρότερον συνεβούλευσε τῷ Ξέρξει μὴ  
 στρατεύειν, καὶ τὴν τῶν δακρύων αἰτίαν αἰτοῦντος, ἀπεκρίνατο  
 βασιλεὺς τάδε· "εἰσῆλθέ με κατοικτεῖρην τούτους, λογισάμενον ὥς βραχύς  
 ἐστὶν ὁ πᾶς ἀνθρώπινος βίος· ἐπεὶ τούτων τοσούτων ὄντων οὐδεὶς εἰς  
 10 ἑκατοστὸν ἔτος περιέσται."

	Ἀβυδος -ου ἡ	Abydus
	Ἀσία -ας ἡ	Asia
	ἐσχάτος -η -ον	last, furthest
2	Ἑλλήσποντος -ου ὁ	Hellespont (the Dardanelles, dividing Europe from Asia)
	ἐπὶ (+ gen)	on
	κολωνός -ου ὁ	hill
	ἔδρα -ας ἡ	seat
	λίθινος -η -ον	stone, made of stone
3	θεάομαι	I watch
	πεδῖον -ου τό	plain, flat piece of land
	πλήρης -ες	full
	μακαρίζω ἐμακάρισα	I congratulate, I bless
	Ἀρτάβανος -ου ὁ	Artabanus
6	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
	συμβουλεύω συνεβούλευσα	I advise (+ dat)
	στρατεύω	I make an expedition
	αἰτία -ας ἡ	cause, reason
	κατοικτεῖρω	I pity
8	λογίζομαι ἐλογισάμην	I reason
	βραχύς -εῖα -ύ	brief, short
	ἀνθρώπινος -η -ον	human
	βίος -ου ὁ	life
	ἑκατοστός -ῆ -όν	hundredth
10	περιίμι	I survive

## Spartan behaviour at Thermopylae

*Thermopylae was a narrow pass (between mountains and sea) linking Greece with the north. It gave access to central and southern Greece. As the Persians approach (in the summer of 480 BC), most of the Peloponnesians among the combined Greek forces favour retreating, putting up resistance much further south and defending only the Peloponnese. The Spartan king Leonidas stands firm. The Spartans were famous not only for military prowess but for a cool and apparently unconcerned attitude which constantly disconcerted their enemies. The long hair of Spartan warriors may have been linked to a vow (they would not cut it until victorious).*

Read the first part of the passage and answer the questions below.

- οἱ δὲ ἐν Θερμοπύλαις Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ οἱ Πέρσαι ἀφικνοῦντο, μάλιστα φοβούμενοι ἐβουλευόντο περὶ φυγῆς. τοῖς μὲν γὰρ ἄλλοις Πελοποννησίοις ἐδόκει ἀπελθούσιν τὸν Ἴσθμόν φυλάσσειν, τῷ δὲ Λεωνίδᾳ ἐκεῖ μένειν. ταῦτα δὲ βουλευομένων αὐτῶν, ἐπεμψεν ὁ Ξέρξης ἵππέα τινὰ ὥς
- 5 ἀγγελοῦντα πόσοι εἰσὶν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ποιοῦσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσήλθεν ὁ ἵππεὺς πρὸς τὸ τῶν Πελοποννησίων στρατόπεδον, τοὺς μὲν ἔσω τοῦ τείχους ἰδεῖν οὐκ οἶός τ' ἦν, τοὺς δ' ἔξω έθεᾶτο.

	Θερμοπύλαι -ὦν αἱ	Thermopylae
	Πέρσαι -ὦν οἱ	Persians
	βουλεύομαι ἐβουλεύσαμην	I have a discussion, I deliberate
	φυγή -ῆς ἡ	flight, escape
2	Πελοποννησίοι -ων οἱ	Peloponnesians
	Ἴσθμός -οῦ ὁ	the Isthmus (of Corinth, <i>dividing the Peloponnese from the rest of Greece</i> )
	Λεωνίδας -ου ὁ	Leonidas
	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
6	στρατόπεδον -ου τό	camp
	ἔσω	inside (+ <i>gen</i> )
	ἔξω	outside
	θεάομαι	I watch

- (1) What was the initial reaction of the Greeks at Thermopylae as the Persians were approaching (lines 1-2)? (4)
- (2) What did most of the Peloponnesians favour doing (lines 2-3)? (4)
- (3) What did Leonidas decide to do (line 3)? (2)
- (4) Which is the correct translation of ταῦτα δὲ βουλευομένων αὐτῶν (line 4)? (1)
  - [a] *But when they had decided these things*
  - [b] *And as they themselves wanted these things*
  - [c] *But as they were discussing these things*
- (5) Why did Xerxes send a horseman (line 4-5)? (4)
- (6) What was the horseman find when he rode up to the Peloponnesian camp (lines 5-7)? (5)

20 marks

Translate the rest of the passage which follows on the next page.

- 8 καὶ τοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἑώρα γυμναζομένους, τοὺς δὲ τὰς κόμας  
 κτενίζομένους. πάντα οὖν ταῦτα θεώμενος καὶ θαυμάζων καθ' ἡσυχίαν  
 10 ἀπήλασεν, οὐδενὸς διώκοντος. εἰς δὲ τὸ τῶν Περσῶν στρατόπεδον  
 ἀφικόμενος ἤγγειλε τῷ Ξέρξῃ πάντα ἃ εἶδεν. ἀκούσας μέντοι ὁ Ξέρξης  
 οὐκ ἔγνω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους παρασκευαζομένους ὥς ἰσχυρότατα  
 μαχεσομένους· ἐφαίνοντο γὰρ αὐτῷ γελοῖα ποιεῖν.

γυμνάζομαι	I exercise
κόμαι -ων αἱ	hair
κτενίζομαι	I comb
θεάομαι	I watch
9 καθ' ἡσυχίαν	at leisure
ἀπελάυνω ἀπήλασα	I ride away
στρατόπεδον -ου τό	camp
γελοῖος -α -ον	laughable

#### Exercise PP.14

### Xerxes loses patience

*Xerxes is unnerved by the Spartan resistance and by the heavy losses they inflict on his army. He threatens his officers, but there is no breakthrough.*

- ὁ οὖν Ξέρξης πρὸ τῆς εἰσβολῆς τέσσαρας ἡμέρας ἔμενεν. τῇ δὲ πέμπτῃ  
 ἡμέρᾳ, τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων οὐκ ἀπελθόντων, βασιλεὺς ἤδη μάλιστα  
 ὀργιζόμενος τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἔπεμψεν ἵνα τὴν  
 εἰσβολὴν λάβοι. τῶν δὲ Περσῶν, οἱ ὑπὸ βασιλέως τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους  
 5 ζωγρῆσαι ἐκελεύσθησαν, πλείστοι μὲν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἔπιπτον, τοσοῦτοι δὲ  
 προὔχωρῃσαν ὥστε τὴν μάχην μὴ παύσασθαι. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ τινες  
 καὶ ἀπέθανον, ἀλλ' ἐλάσσονες ἢ οἱ Πέρσαι. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξέρξης,  
 ἐλπίσας τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους (καίπερ ἀνδρείως μαχεσαμένους) ῥᾶον νῦν  
 νικηθήσεσθαι, τοῖς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ὥδε εἶπεν· "ὦ Πέρσαι, ἐὰν μὴ τοὺς  
 10 πολεμίους τοὺς τὴν εἰσβολὴν φυλάσσοντας εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν σήμερον  
 διώξητε, ἐγὼ αὐτὸς ὑμᾶς δεινότατα κολάσω." οἱ μὲν οὖν Πέρσαι, πάντως  
 φοβούμενοι, αὐθις τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις προσέβαλον ὥς τὴν εἰσβολὴν  
 αἰρήσοντες, οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι αὐτοὺς ταχέως ἔτρεψαν.

Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
εἰσβολή -ης ἡ	pass
Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians
ζωγρέω ἐζώγρησα	I take prisoner, I capture alive
6 προχωρέω προὔχωρῃσα	I advance, I go forward
τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ	on the next day
σήμερον	today
πάντως	utterly
τρέπω ἔτρεψα	I rout, I make (someone) turn and run

## The Mountain Path

*The weakness of Thermopylae as a defensive position was the alternative route along the ridge of the mountains above. This was relatively easy for those who could find the way. Here a local man shows it to the Persians.*

- τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ, ὥς ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ἦν βασιλεὺς (οὐ γὰρ ἄμεινον ἔπρασσον οἱ Πέρσαι) ἦλθεν αὐτῷ εἰς λόγους ἀνὴρ τις τῶν ἐπιχωρίων, ὃς ἡγεμὼν γενόμενος τοῖς Πέρσαις ἀτραπὸν ἔδειξε διὰ τοῦ ὄρους εἰς Θερμοπύλας φέρουσαν. ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης εὐθὺς περιχαρὴς γενόμενος πέμπει ταύτη τοὺς
- 5 ἀθανάτους, ὧν ἐστρατηγεῖ ὁ Ὑδάρνης. οἱ δέ, πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα πορευόμενοι, ἅμ' ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ ἄκρον ὄρος, ἐν ᾧ φύλακες ἔμενον ἄνδρες τῆς Φωκίδος χίλιοι. οἳτοι δὲ ψόφον ἀκούοντες τῶν φύλλων τῶν ὑπὸ τοῖς ποσὶν (δρυὼν γὰρ πλήρες ἦν τὸ ὄρος) ἔγνωσαν τε
- 10 ἀνάβαντας τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ εἰς μάχην ὠπλίζοντο. ὥς δὲ πολλοὶς ἐβάλλοντο τοῖς οἰστοῖς, ἐπ' ἄλλο ὄρος ἔφευγον, ὥς ἐντεῦθεν μέχρι θανάτου μαχεσόμενοι, οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι, ἀμελοῦντες αὐτῶν, ταχέως κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς Θερμοπύλας.

	τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ	on the the next day
	ἀπορία -ας ἡ	perplexity
	Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians
	ἐπιχώριοι -ων οἱ	local inhabitants
2	ἡγεμὼν -όνος ὁ	(here) guide
	ἀτραπός -οῦ ἡ	path
	ἔδειξα (irreg aor)	I showed
	Θερμοπύλαι -ων αἱ	Thermopylae
	φέρω	(here) I lead
4	περιχαρής -ές	delighted
	ἀθάνατος -ον	immortal (in pl as proper name The Immortals, crack division of Persian troops)
	στρατηγέω	I am general, I command
	Ὑδάρνης -ους ὁ	Hydarnes
6	ἅμ' ἡμέρᾳ	at daybreak
	ἄκρος -α -ον	top (part of)
	Φωκίς -ίδος ἡ	Phocis (region of central Greece)
	χίλιοι -αι -α	1000
	ψόφος -ου ὁ	noise, sound
7	φύλλον -ου τό	leaf
	ὑπό	(+ dat) under
	δρὺς δρυός ἡ	oak tree
	πλήρης -ες	full
	ὀπλίζομαι	I arm (myself), I put on armour
10	οἰστός -οῦ ὁ	arrow
	ἐντεῦθεν	from there
	μέχρι (+ gen)	until, to the point of
	ἀμελέω (+ gen)	I take no notice of

## The Last Stand

*Realising that the Persians have found the mountain path and so outflanked the Greek defenders of the pass, Leonidas remains with his 300 Spartans to die heroically in an impossible last stand. Although Thermopylae was a defeat for the Greeks, it is always listed with the great victories in the war, both because of the self-sacrificing heroism of the Spartans, and because their resistance delayed the Persians and allowed Greek forces further south to improve their state of preparedness.*

- ὥς δ' ἔμαθον οἱ ἐν Θερμοπύλαις τὴν τῶν Περσῶν περίοδον, ἐβουλευόντο  
 τί χρὴ ποιεῖν. βουλευσάμενοι δὲ οἱ μὲν πλείστοι οἴκαδε ἀπήλθον, οἱ δὲ  
 μετὰ τοῦ Λεωνίδου καὶ τῶν τριακοσίων μένοντες διεκινδύνεον. ἐκεῖνος  
 γὰρ οὐκ ἠθέλεν ἀπιέναι διὰ τὸ μαντεῖον δ' οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐν  
 5 Δελφοῖς ἐδέξαντο, ὥς δεῖ δυοῖν ἐν γενέσθαι· ἡ ὑπὸ Περσῶν αἵρεθῆναι τὴν  
Σπάρτην, ἢ ἀποθανεῖν τὸν βασιλέα.

	Θερμοπύλαι -ων αἱ	Thermopylae
	Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians
	περίοδος -ου ἡ	journey round
	βουλευόμαι ἐβουλευσάμην	I have a discussion, I deliberate
2	οἴκαδε	home, homewards
	Λεωνίδας -ου ὁ	Leonidas
	τριακόσιοι -αι -α	three hundred
	διεκινδυνεύω	I endure danger to the end
	μαντεῖον -ου τό	oracle
5	Δελφοί -ων οἱ	Delphi
	Σπάρτη -ης ἡ	Sparta

Read the rest of the passage on the next page and answer the questions that follow.

- 7 ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης, νομίζων ἤδη ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους καταβῆναι τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, τὸν στρατιὰν αὐθις ἐκέλευσε προσιέναι· προσιόντων δ' αὐτῶν πολὺ πλῆθος ἐπιπτεν. ὀπισθε γὰρ οἱ ἡγεμόνες μάστιξιν αὐτοὺς ἔτυπτον, αἰεὶ εἰς τὸ
- 10 πρόσω ἐποτρύνοντες· καὶ πολλοὶ μὲν δὴ εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν εἰσέπιπτον, πλείονες δ' ἔτι ὑπ' ἀλλήλων καταπατοῦντο. ἦν δὲ λόγος οὐδεὶς τῶν ἀποθανόντων. εἰδότες γὰρ οἱ Ἕλληνες τὸν μέλλοντα ἑαυτοῖς ἔσεσθαι θάνατον ἐκ τῶν τὸ ὄρος περιόντων, ἀπέδειξαν τοῖς πολεμίοις πόσῃν ῥώμῃν εἶχον.

	πλῆθος -ους τό	crowd, multitude
	ὀπισθε	behind
	μάστιξ -ιγος ἡ	whip
	τύπτω	I beat, I lash
9	εἰς τὸ πρόσω	forwards, to the front
	ἐποτρύνω	I urge on
	ἀλλήλους -ων	each other
	καταπατέω	I trample down
	λόγος -ου ὁ	(here) count, reckoning
13	ἀπέδειξα (irreg aor)	I showed
	ῥώμη -ης ἡ	strength

- |     |   |     |
|-----|---|-----|
| (1) | What did Xerxes think had happened by now (line 7)?                               | (3) |
| (2) | What order did he give as a result (lines 7-8)?                                   | (2) |
| (3) | How were the Persian troops urged on by their leaders (lines 9-10)?               | (4) |
| (4) | What two disastrous effects did this have (lines 10-11)?                          | (5) |
| (5) | What did the Greeks know was in store for them, and at whose hands (lines 12-13)? | (3) |
| (6) | What did they do in these circumstances (lines 13-14)?                            | (3) |

---

20 marks

## Leonidas and Dieneces

*This passage includes the two-line epigram written by the poet Simonides for the Spartans who died at Thermopylae, and the 'laconic' remark of Dieneces before the battle. Both became famous. The stone lion commemorating Leonidas paid tribute to the meaning of his name.*

- ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ αὐτός τε πίπτει ὁ Λεωνίδας καὶ μετ' αὐτοῦ  
 Λακεδαιμονίων ἄνδρες ἄριστοι· πίπτουσι δὲ καὶ τῶν Ξέρξου ἀδελφῶν δύο,  
 ὑπὲρ τοῦ νεκροῦ τοῦ Λεωνίδου μαχόμενοι. ὥς δὲ τοὺς μετὰ τοῦ Ὑδάρνου  
 ἀφίκεσθαι ἐπύθοντο, οἱ Ἕλληνες συνελέχθησαν ἐπὶ κολωνόν τινα, ἐν ᾧ  
 5 νῦν ὁ λίθινος λέων ἐστὶν ὑπὲρ τοῦ Λεωνίδου. τοὺτους δὲ μαχαίραις  
 τε καὶ χερσὶ καὶ στόμασι μαχομένους τέλος ἐνίκησαν οἱ πολέμιοι.  
 οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἔθαψαν τοὺς ἀποθανόντας οὗ ἔπεσον· καὶ ἔπος  
 ἐγράφη τόδε·
- ὦ ξεῖν', ἄγγειλον Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε  
 10 κείμεθα τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.
- τῶν δὲ μετὰ τοῦ Λεωνίδου ἀποθανόντων ἄριστος λέγεται γενέσθαι  
 Λακεδαιμόνιός τις Διηνέκης, ὃν πρὸ τῆς μάχης εἰπεῖν φασὶ τόδε·  
 πυθόμενος γὰρ παρὰ Τραχινίου τινὸς ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι τοξεύοντες τὸν  
 ἥλιον τῷ τῶν οἰστών πλήθει κρύπτουσιν, "ἀγαθὰ γε," ἔφη, "ἡμῖν  
 15 πάντα ἀγγέλλεις· κρυπτόντων γὰρ τῶν Περσῶν τὸν ἥλιον, ἐν σκιά  
 ἔσται ἢ πρὸς αὐτοὺς μάχη."

	πόνος -ου ὁ	struggle, toil
	Λεωνίδας -ου ὁ	Leonidas
	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
3	Ὑδάρνης -ου ὁ	Hydarnes
	κολωνός -οῦ ὁ	hill
	λίθινος -η -ον	(made of) stone
	μάχαιρα -ας ἡ	dagger, short sword
	στόμα -ατος τό	mouth
7	οὗ	where
	ἔπος -ους τό	(here) inscription, text
	ἐπιγράψω aor pass ἐπεγράφη	I inscribe
	ξεῖνος	= ξένος (dialect form)
	τῇδε	here
10	κεῖμαι	I lie
	κεῖνος	= ἐκεῖνος (dialect form)
	ῥήμα -ατος τό	word
	πειθόμεαι (+ dat)	I obey
	Διηνέκης -ους ὁ	Dieneces
13	Τραχίνιος -ου ὁ	Trachinian, man of Trachis (region in central Greece)
	τοξεύω	I shoot, I use a bow
	ἥλιος -ου ὁ	sun
	οἰστός -οῦ ὁ	arrow
	πλήθος -ους τό	quantity
15	σκία -άς ἡ	shade, shadow



## Artemisia at Salamis

*The Persians advanced south by land and sea. Athens was evacuated after the Delphic oracle told the people to 'put their trust in wooden walls': the great statesman and military leader Themistocles argued that this referred to the fleet rather than the wooden stockade surrounding the Acropolis. He was vindicated when a major naval victory was won just off Salamis (an island close to Athens) in September of 480 BC. As at Marathon ten years earlier, clever Greek tactics made up for numerical inferiority: Themistocles enticed the Persians to fight in a narrow channel where the Greek ships (heavier, and fewer) might have a better chance, and sheer numbers were of little help to the enemy. Herodotus as usual gives the broad picture but prefers to focus on anecdotes of human interest: this story about the Carian queen Artemisia (an ally of Xerxes) is one of his best, illustrating the Greek admiration for cunning intelligence (in whatever context) which we first saw in the Cyclops story in Chapter 5.*

- περὶ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων οὐκ ἔξεστιν ἀκριβῶς γινῶναι ὡς ἕκαστοι τῶν  
 βαρβάρων ἢ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἡγωνίζοντο· περὶ δὲ τῆς Ἀρτεμισίας τάδε  
 ἐγένετο, ὅφ' ὢν ἐτιμάτο μάλλον ὑπὸ βασιλέως. ἐπεὶ γὰρ εἰς θόρυβον  
 πολλὸν ἀφίκετο τὰ βασιλέως πράγματα, ἢ τῆς Ἀρτεμισίας ναὺς ἐδιώκετο  
 5 νηὶ Ἀττικῇ. καὶ ὡς τῇ Ἀρτεμισίᾳ οὐκ ἔξῃν ἐκφυγεῖν (ἦσαν γὰρ πρὸ  
 αὐτῆς ἄλλαι νῆες φίλῃαι) ἔδοξεν αὐτῇ τάδε ποιῆσαι. διωκομένη γὰρ  
 ἐνέβαλε νηὶ φίλῃα ἀνδρῶν τῶν Καλυνδίων. ὡς δὲ τὴν ναὺν κατέδυσεν,  
 ἢ Ἀρτεμισία δύο ἀγαθὰ ἑαυτὴν ἐποίησεν· ὁ γὰρ τῆς Ἀττικῆς νεὼς  
 10 τριήραρχος, ὡς εἶδεν αὐτὴν ἐμβάλλουσιν νηὶ πολέμῃᾳ, νομίσας τὴν τῆς  
 Ἀρτεμισίας ναὺν Ἑλληνικὴν εἶναι, πρὸς ἄλλας ἀπέτρεψεν. τοῦτο μὲν  
 οὖν ὠφέλησεν αὐτὴν, ὅτι ἐκφυγοῦσα περιεγένετο· ἐκεῖνο δὲ μάλιστα  
 ὠφελίμῳ ἐγένετο, ὅτι ἐκ τῆς Καλυνδικῆς νεὼς οὐδεὶς ἐσώθη ὥστε  
 κατηγορεῖν αὐτῆς. ὁ γὰρ Ξέρξης ἐνόμισε τὴν ναὺν τὴν διαφθαρεῖσαν  
 εἶναι πολέμῃαν, καὶ εἶπεν, "οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες μοι νῦν γυναῖκες εἰσὶν, αἱ δὲ  
 15 γυναῖκες ἄνδρες."

	ἀκριβῶς	exactly, accurately
	ἡγωνίζομαι	I compete
	Ἀρτεμισία -ας ἢ	Artemisia (queen of Carian kingdom including Halicarnassus, on the coast of modern Turkey)
3	θόρυβος -ου ὁ	confusion, disturbance
	πράγματα -ων τά	affairs
	Ἀττικός -ῆ -όν	Attic, Athenian
	φίλιος -α -ον	friendly
	ἐμβάλλω ἐνέβαλον	I ram (+ dat)
7	Καλύνδιοι -ων οἱ	Calyndians (Calynda was a town in Caria)
	καταδύω κατέδυσα	I sink (something)
	τριήραρχος -ου ὁ	captain
	πολέμιος -σ -ον	enemy, of the enemy
	Ἑλληνικός -ῆ -όν	Greek
10	ἀποτρέπω ἀπέτρεψα	I turn aside
	ὠφέλῃω ὠφέλησα	I help, I benefit (someone)
	περιγίγνομαι περιεγένετο	I survive
	ὠφέλιμος -η -ον	helpful, beneficial
	Καλυνδικός -ῆ -όν	Calyndian
13	κατηγορέω	I accuse (+ gen)

## A confused end to the battle

*Just as in the battle itself, the Persians are hampered by their numbers in trying to get away afterwards.*

Read the passage and answer the questions below.

- ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἀπέθανε μὲν ὁ στρατηγὸς Ἀραβίγνης ὁ τοῦ Δαρείου  
 υἱός, τοῦ Ξέρξου ὦν ἀδελφός· ἀπέθανον δ' ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τε καὶ  
 ὀνομαστοὶ τῶν Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων, ὀλίγοι δέ τινες τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων. διότι γὰρ νεῖν οἳ τ' ἦσαν εἰς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα διένεόν τινες ὦν  
 5 αἱ νῆες διεφθείροντο. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων οἱ πολλοὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ  
 διεφθάρησαν, νεῖν οὐχ οἳ τ' ὄντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ αἱ πρῶται νῆες ἔφευγον, τότε  
 αἱ πλείσται διεφθείροντο. οἱ γὰρ ὀπισθε ταχθέντες εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἰέναι  
 ταῖς ναυσὶ πειρώμενοι, ὥς ποιήσοντες καὶ αὐτοὶ βασιλεῖ ἔργον τι ἄξιον  
 λόγου, ταῖς ἄλλαις ναυσὶ φευγούσαις περιέπιπτον. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ὦν αἱ  
 10 νῆες περιέγοντο φεύγοντες ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ Φάληρον.

	Ἀραβίγνης ὁ	Arabignes
	Δαρείος -ου ὁ	Darius
	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
	ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ	brother
3	ὀνομαστός -ή -όν	distinguished
	νέω	I swim
	Σαλαμῖς -ῖνος ἡ	Salamis (island close to Athens)
	διανέω	I reach by swimming
	ὀπισθε	behind
7	τάσσω aor pass ἐτάχθην	I draw up
	εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν	forwards
	περιπίπτω	I fall foul of, I get dashed against (+ dat)
	περιγιγνομαι περιγενόμεν	I survive
	Φάληρον -ου τό	Phalerum (harbour of Athens)

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| (1) Who was Arabignes, and what happened to him (lines 1-2)?               | (4) |
| (2) What is said about the casualties on the two sides (lines 2-4)?        | (5) |
| (3) What were some of the shipwrecked Greeks able to do (lines 4-5)?       | (2) |
| (4) Why were most of the enemy unable to do the same (lines 5-6)?          | (1) |
| (5) How and why did the Persian ships fall foul of each other (lines 7-9)? | (6) |
| (6) Which men managed to reach Phalerum (lines 9-10)?                      | (2) |

---

 20 marks

## Persian and Spartan Banquets

Despite the messy and confused ending to the fighting at Salamis (passage PP.19), the message of the battle was clear. Xerxes at once returned to Persia with the remnant of his fleet, leaving his cousin and subordinate Mardonius with a picked force to stay in Greece over the winter and continue the campaign by land. Mardonius was duly defeated by the Greeks at Plataea in 479 BC under the command of the Spartan Pausanias. This final story takes place just after the Greek victory there. (It refers at the start to Xerxes' departure after the defeat at Salamis the previous autumn.) The contrast between the oriental wealth and luxury represented by the Persians, and the more frugal lifestyle of the Greeks (particularly the austere Spartans) runs all through Herodotus' work. He believes it goes with political differences: servile obedience to a despot, as against participation in a free and open society. Yet Herodotus also stresses that the Persians had themselves started as a poor but disciplined and energetic people, before their career of conquest: the change illustrates his belief about the instability of fortune, which we saw constantly illustrated in the stories in Chapters 10 and 11. And the reverse can happen too: Herodotus perhaps hints that Athens in his own day, emboldened by her victories in the Persian Wars to embark upon her own career of conquest and imperialism, risks falling prey to a quasi-oriental despotism and self-indulgence.

- μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐν Σαλαμῖνι μάχην λέγεται καὶ τάδε γενέσθαι, ὅτι ὁ Ξέρξης φεύγων ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος τῷ Μαρδονίῳ τὴν κατασκευὴν καταλίποι τὴν ἑαυτοῦ· τὸν οὖν Παυσανίαν\* ὁρῶντα τὴν τοῦ Μαρδονίου κατασκευὴν χρυσῷ τε καὶ ἀργύρῳ κοσμηθεῖσαν κελεύσαι\* τοὺς ὀψοποιούς ὥσπερ
- 5 τῷ Μαρδονίῳ δεῖπνον παρασκευάζειν. ὥς δὲ κελευόμενοι οὗτοι ἐποίουν ταῦτα, ἔπειτα τὸν Παυσανίαν ἰδόντα κλίνας τε καὶ τραπέζας χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργύρου, καὶ παρασκευὴν μεγαλοπρεπῆ τοῦ δεῖπνου, θαυμάζοντα πάντα τὰ ἀγαθὰ κελεύσαι ἐπὶ γέλωτι τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ δοῦλους παρασκευάσαι

\* note that, despite starting with a ὅτι clause, the construction (as often) switches to accusative and infinitive for an extended indirect statement (here occupying most of the passage)

	Σαλαμῖς -ῖνος ἡ	Salamis
	Ξέρξης -ου ὁ	Xerxes
	Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ	Greece
	Μαρδόνιος -ου ὁ	Mardonius
2	κατασκευή -ης ἡ	(here) (royal) tent (a large and elaborate tent, along with its furnishings)
	καταλείπω κατέλιπον	I leave behind
	Παυσανίας -ου ὁ	Pausanias (Spartan commander, nephew of Leonidas)
	ἄργυρος -ου ὁ	silver
4	κοσμέω <i>aor pass</i> ἐκοσμήθην	I decorate
	ὀψοποιός -οῦ ὁ	cook
	ὥσπερ	just as
	δεῖπνον -ου τό	dinner
	κλίνη -ης ἡ	couch
6	τράπεζα -ης ἡ	table
	ἄργυρος -ου ὁ	silver
	παρασκευή -ης ἡ	preparation
	μεγαλοπρεπής -ές	magnificent
	ἐπὶ	(+ <i>dat</i> ) (here) for
8	γέλως -ωτος ὁ	laugh, joke

(continued ...)

- δείπνον Λακεδαιμόνιον. ὥς δὲ τῶν δείπνων ποιηθέντων ἦν πολὺ τὸ μέσον,  
 10 τὸν Παυσανίαν γελάσαντα μεταπέμψασθαι τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 στρατηγούς. συλλεχθέντων δὲ τούτων εἶπειν τὸν Παυσανίαν, ἑκατέρου  
 δείπνου τὴν παρασκευὴν ἀποδείξαντα, "ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, τῶνδε ἔνεκα  
 ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς συνέλεξα, βουλόμενος ὑμῖν τὴν τοῦ Πέρσου ἀφροσύνην  
 ἀποφαίνειν, ὅς τοιαύτην δίαιταν ἔχων ἦλθεν ὡς ἀφαιρησόμενος τὰ  
 15 ἡμέτερα οὕτως οἰζυρὰ ὄντα."

	δείπνον -ου τό	dinner
	Λακεδαιμόνιος -α -ον	Spartan
	μέσον -ου τό	<i>literally</i> middle, <i>here</i> distance between, difference
	μεταπέμπομαι μετεπεμψάμην	I send for
11	ἑκάτερος -α -ον	each (of two)
	παρασκευή -ῆς ἡ	preparation
	ἀποδείξας -ασα -αν (-αντ-) ( <i>irreg aor participle</i> )	having pointed out
	ἔνεκα	for the sake of ( <i>follows gen</i> )
13	Πέρσης -ου ὁ	Persian
	ἀφροσύνη -ης ἡ	foolishness
	ἀποφαίνω	I prove, I demonstrate
	δίαιτα -ης ἡ	lifestyle
	οἰζυρός -ά -όν	pitiful, miserable

## (ii): Revision sentences

The 300 sentences which follow aim to cover every aspect of the language requirements for GCSE. They are intended to be done quickly, as revision: orally in class, or to test yourself. There is no need to do the whole of each exercise if you are confident of the material being tested.

The topics covered are:

RS.1	Definite article	RS.16	Numerals and time expressions
RS.2	Agreement of nouns and adjectives	RS.17	Comparative and superlative adjectives
RS.3	Verb tenses	RS.18	Comparative and superlative adverbs
RS.4	Common irregular aorists	RS.19	Indirect statements: (1) with 'that' clause
RS.5	Passives	RS.20	Indirect statements: (2) with infinitive
RS.6	Middles and deponent verbs	RS.21	Indirect statements: (3) with participle
RS.7	Prepositions	RS.22	Direct questions
RS.8	Compound verbs	RS.23	Indirect questions
RS.9	Irregular and impersonal verbs	RS.24	Direct commands
RS.10	Uses of αὐτός	RS.25	Indirect commands
RS.11	Pronouns, possessives, demonstratives	RS.26	Purpose clauses
RS.12	Relative clauses	RS.27	Result clauses
RS.13	Use of participles	RS.28	Conditionals
RS.14	Genitive absolute	RS.29	Verbs with epsilon contraction
RS.15	Adverbs	RS.30	Verbs with alpha contraction

### Exercise RS.1: Definite article

- οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι φυλάσσουσι τοὺς ἀσθενεῖς.
- οἱ τὸ δίκαιον πράσσοντες ὑπὸ τῶν σοφῶν τιμῶνται.
- ἡ ἡμέτερα χώρα ἐλευθέρα ἔσται.
- οἱ τῶν τότε λόγοι θαυμάζονται ὑπὸ τῶν νῦν.
- αἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἀσφαλεῖς ἔσονται.
- τὰ τῆς πόλεως κακῶς πράσσεται.
- οἱ πολῖται οἱ ἀγαθοὶ γινώσκουσι τοὺς νόμους.
- ὁ εὐρύτατος ποταμὸς ἔστι χαλεπώτατος.
- οἱ μὲν φιλοῦσι τὸν πόλεμον, οἱ δὲ τὴν εἰρήνην.
- τοὺς δούλους ἐκάλεσα· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἤκουσαν.

### Exercise RS.2: Agreement of nouns and adjectives

- οἱ ἡγεμόνες οἱ σοφοὶ λόγους ἀληθεῖς λέγουσιν.
- ἔστι πολλὰ ὄρη ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.
- ἡ εἰρήνη ἡδεῖα.
- νομίζω ταύτην τὴν βουλὴν ἄδικον εἶναι.
- ποῖος καὶ πόσος ἐστὶν ὁ ἵππος;
- ἐκεῖνοι οἱ στρατιῶται καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ εἰσιν.
- αὕτη ἡ παῖς εὐτυχὴς ἐστίν.
- βουλὴν ἀρίστην ἐποιησάμεθα.
- ἡ ναὺς ταχίστη ἐστίν.
- ὁ τε γέρων καὶ ὁ θεὸς σοφοὶ ἦσαν.

Exercise RS.3: Verb tenses

- 1 οὐκ ἔχω τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἣν πρότερον ἔγραψα.
- 2 πολὺν χρόνον ἐμαχόμεθα· ἔπειτα δὲ ἐνίκησαμεν.
- 3 οἱ δοῦλοι δι' ὀλίγου λυθήσονται.
- 4 οἱ στρατιῶται πρὸς τὴν νῆσον ἤχθησαν.
- 5 ἄρα τὸ ἀληθὲς τέλος ἦν;
- 6 οἱ πολέμιοι πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐδιώκοντο.
- 7 τὰ περὶ τῆς μάχης νῦν ἀγγέλλεται.
- 8 ὁ φεύγων ὤφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ γέροντος.
- 9 ἡ ὁδὸς χαλεπώτερα ἐγίνετο.
- 10 τὰ ὄπλα εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἤνέχθη.

Exercise RS.4: Common irregular aorists

- 1 οὐδεὶς διὰ τῆς πύλης ἦλθεν.
- 2 οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐλόντες τὴν πόλιν, ἄλλους βαρβάρους προσβαίνοντας εἶδον.
- 3 οἱ στρατιῶται ἠνεγκαν τὰς ναῦς πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν.
- 4 ταῦτα εἰπὼν, ὁ παῖς ἔλαβε τὰ χρήματα.
- 5 τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ τὸ ὄνομα τὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἔγνωμεν.
- 6 "ἀπελθέ, ὦ ἄνθρωπε," ἔφη ὁ βασιλεὺς, "καὶ ἀποθανέ."·
- 7 τοὺς λόγους μαθόντες, οἱ νεανῖαι σοφώτεροι ἐγένοντο.
- 8 ὁ στρατηγός, ἰδὼν τὰς ναῦς, προσήγαγε τοὺς στρατιώτας πρὸς τὸν λιμένα.
- 9 τὴν πόλιν λιπόντες, πολὺν χρόνον ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἐμένομεν.
- 10 οἱ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ λέγοντες πολλὰ ὑπέσχοντο.

Exercise RS.5: Passives

- 1 οἱ λόγοι ὑπὸ τῶν παίδων μανθάνονται.
- 2 οἱ δεσμοὶ ξίφει κόπτονται.
- 3 τὸ τεῖχος τοῖς τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅπλοις φυλάσσεται.
- 4 ἡ ναὺς ἐν τῷ λιμένι ὑπὸ τῶν ναυτῶν λείπεται.
- 5 μετὰ τρεῖς ἡμέρας ἡ πόλις ληφθήσεται.
- 6 οἱ ἵπποι ἐλύθησαν ὑπὸ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος.
- 7 οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι πολὺν χρόνον ἐκολάζοντο.
- 8 οἱ νόμοι ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τιμῶνται.
- 9 ὁ ἄγγελος ταῦτα ἀγγελίας ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπέθανεν.
- 10 οἱ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ὑπὸ τῶν σοφῶς λεγόντων πείθονται.

Exercise RS.6: Middles and deponent verbs

- 1 ὁ τῶν συμμάχων ἄγγελος ἀφίκετο.
- 2 θάπτομαι τοὺς νεκρούς.
- 3 ἡ στρατία διὰ χώρας ἀσφαλοῦς ἐπορεύετο.
- 4 ἡ νόσος φαίνεται δεινότητι εἶναι.
- 5 ὁ γέρων αἰσθάνεται ἀσθενέστερος γιγνόμενος.
- 6 ἡ μάχη δι' ὀλίγου παύσεται.
- 7 βουλόμεθα πάντες ἐνθάδε μένειν.
- 8 ἡ γυνὴ οὐδὲν ἀπεκρίνατο.
- 9 ὁ παῖς ἀνὴρ ἐγένετο.
- 10 οἱ πολῖται τοῖς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγοις πείθονται.

Exercise RS.7: Prepositions

- 1 αἱ νῆες ἀπὸ τοῦ λιμένος πρὸς τὴν νῆσον ἐπλευσαν.
- 2 οἱ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ πόλει νόμοι κάκιστοι ἦσαν.
- 3 ἐδίωξα τοὺς δούλους κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν.
- 4 οἱ ἄδικοι παρὰ τοὺς νόμους καὶ παρὰ τοὺς θεοὺς πράσσουσιν.
- 5 οἱ στρατιῶται περὶ τὰ τῆς πόλεως τεῖχη ἔτρεχον.
- 6 ἀνδρείως ἐμαχέσαντο ὑπὲρ τῆς χώρας.
- 7 ὁ ἄγγελος πολλὰ εἶπε περὶ τῆς μάχης.
- 8 μετὰ δύο ἔτη οἱ πολέμιοι κατὰ γῆν ἐνίκηθησαν.
- 9 ἐν τοῖς δώροις τόδε τὸ ξίφος ἦδρον.
- 10 μετὰ τῶν φίλων πολὺν χρόνον ἐμένομεν.

Exercise RS.8: Compound verbs

- 1 ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἐξέβην.
- 2 ἀναβησόμεθα ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος.
- 3 οἱ πολῖται εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰσῆλθον.
- 4 αἱ γυναῖκες τὸν σίτον πρὸς τὸν ἄγρον προσήνεγκαν.
- 5 βούλομαι ἀποβάλλειν πάντα ταῦτα.
- 6 ὁ ἡγεμὼν τὴν στρατιὰν περὶ τὴν πόλιν περιήγαγεν.
- 7 οἱ φύλακες κατὰ τῶν τεύχων κατέβησαν.
- 8 ὁ βασιλεὺς ἄγγελον πρὸς τὴν πόλιν προσέπεμψεν.
- 9 οἱ πολῖται ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔνεισιν.
- 10 οἱ σύμμαχοι εἰς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώραν εἰσέβαλον.

Exercise RS.9: Irregular and impersonal verbs

- 1 ἔξεστί μοι πράσσειν ὥς βούλομαι.
- 2 ἔδοξε τῷ ἱατρῷ σίτον τῷ γέροντι δοῦναι.
- 3 χρὴ ὑμᾶς βοηθεῖν ἡμῖν.
- 4 τίς εἶσιν διὰ τούτου τοῦ ποταμοῦ;
- 5 οἱ πολῖται οὐδὲν περὶ τῆς συμφορᾶς ᾔδεσαν.
- 6 ἄρα τῇδε τῇ γυναικὶ χρήματα ἔδωκας;
- 7 καλὸν ἐστὶν ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως ἀποθνήσκειν.
- 8 δεῖ σε πάντας τοὺς λόγους μανθάνειν.
- 9 ὁ βασιλεὺς ἄγγελος ἔφη πολλὰ χρήματα ἡμῖν δώσειν.
- 10 ἔξην τοῖς δούλοις τοῖς ἀνδρείως μαχεσαμένοις διὰ τοῦτο λύεσθαι.

Exercise RS.10: Uses of αὐτός

- 1 ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς ἀφίκετο.
- 2 τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐνίκησαμεν.
- 3 οἱ πολέμιοι τιμῶσι τὴν πόλιν καὶ τοὺς νόμους αὐτῆς.
- 4 αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ θεὰ αὐτή.
- 5 αὐτὸς ἔγραψα τὴν ἐπιστολήν.
- 6 ὁ δοῦλος ἔφυγε, καὶ οὐδεὶς εἶδεν αὐτόν.
- 7 ὁ γέρων καὶ ὁ παῖς λέγουσι τὰ αὐτά.
- 8 αἱ γυναῖκες αὐταὶ ἐφύλασσον τὰ τεῖχη.
- 9 αὐτὸς ὁ ἄγγελος τὰ αὐτὰ εἶπεν.
- 10 αὐτὸς ἀπέκτεινας αὐτόν.

Exercise RS.11: Pronouns, possessives and demonstratives

- 1 ἡμεῖς μὲν Ἕλληνες ἐσμεν, ὑμεῖς δὲ βάρβαροι.
- 2 φοβοῦμαι οὐ τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα ἀλλὰ τὸν σόν.
- 3 ὁ στρατιώτης φυλάσσει τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα αὐτοῦ.
- 4 οὗτός ἐστι σὸς δούλος.
- 5 ἐκείνη ἡ οἰκία οὐκ ἔστιν ἐμή.
- 6 ταῦτα ἀκούσας, ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπῆλθεν.
- 7 ἐκεῖνος ὁ γέρων συφώτατός ἐστιν.
- 8 ὁ ἡγεμὼν ἔδωκέ μοι τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἵππον.
- 9 ἡ ἡμετέρα ἐκκλησία ἀεὶ δίκαια πράσσει.
- 10 οὐκ οἶδα τὸ ὄνομα τὸ σόν.

Exercise RS.12: Relative clauses

- 1 εἶδομεν τοὺς δούλους οἱ ἔφυγον.
- 2 αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ ἐπιστολὴ ἣν ἔγραψα.
- 3 ἐφυλάσσομεν τοὺς πολεμίους οἱ ἐλήφθησαν.
- 4 ἐγὼ ἤυρον τὸν στρατιώτην ὃς ἔφευγεν.
- 5 ἐκεῖνός ἐστιν ὁ παῖς ᾧ τὸ ἄθλον ἔδωκα.
- 6 ἔχομεν δούλον οὗ αἱ χεῖρές εἰσι μέγισται.
- 7 ταῦτα ἔλεξα τοῖς πολιταῖς οἱ ἤκουον.
- 8 ὁ ἀνὴρ ὃν ὄρῳ ξένος ἐστίν.
- 9 οὐκ οἶδα τὴν γυναῖκα ἣ ἐνθάδε μένει.
- 10 πειράσσομαι παῦσαι τοὺς στρατιώτας οἱ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν πορεύονται.

Exercise RS.13: Use of participles

- 1 τὸ ναυτικὸν ἰδόντες ἐθαυμάσαμεν.
- 2 ἄρα ὁρᾶτε τοὺς δούλους τοὺς φεύγοντας;
- 3 τὰ δῶρα τὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως πεμφθέντα κάλλιστα ἦν.
- 4 οἱ βάρβαροι, ὀλίγους τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀποκτείναντες, τέλος ἀπῆλθον.
- 5 οἱ νόμοι οἱ σοφώτατα γραφέντες φυλάσσουνσι τοὺς πολίτας.
- 6 δίκαιος ὢν, δίκαια πράσσει.
- 7 εἰς τὸ ὄρος ἀφικόμενοι, ἐκελεύσθημεν ἐν τοῖς δένδροις μένειν.
- 8 τὰ ἔργα τὰ τότε πραχθέντα κάλλιστα ἦν.
- 9 αἱ γυναῖκες, ἀνδρεῖαι οὔσαι, ἐν τῇ πόλει ἔμενον.
- 10 ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ γενόμενα πυθόμενος ἐξέπεμψε τὸν στρατόν.

Exercise RS.14: Genitive absolute

- 1 τῶν λόγων λεχθέντων, ἡ ἐκκλησία ἐπέισθη.
- 2 οἱ Ἕλληνες, τῶν βαρβάρων νικηθέντων, εἰρήνην εἶχον.
- 3 τοῦ ὕδατος δεινοῦ ὄντος, οὐκ ἐθέλομεν ἐνθάδε μένειν.
- 4 χειμῶνος γενομένου, οὐχ ἤυρομεν τὴν ὁδόν.
- 5 τοῦ ποταμοῦ χαλεποῦ ὄντος, ἔδει ἡμᾶς ἐκεῖ μένειν.
- 6 ἀσφαλεῖς νῦν ἐσμεν, τῶν πολεμίων ἀπελθόντων.
- 7 τῆς βοῆς ἀκουσθείσης, οἱ πολῖται ἐφοβοῦντο.
- 8 τοῦ κινδύνου μείζονος γενομένου, βουλὴν περὶ πολέμου ἐποιησάμεθα.
- 9 τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἀφικομένου, πάντες εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν συνελέγοντο.
- 10 τῆς ὁδοῦ κακῆς οὔσης, ταῖς ναυσὶ χρῆσθαι βουλόμεθα.



Exercise RS.15: Adverbs

- 1 ὁ θεὸς οὐ πολλάκις ἀλλὰ σοφῶς ἀποκρίνεται.
- 2 οἱ στρατιῶται, ἀνδρεῖοι ὄντες, ἀνδρείως καὶ μάχονται.
- 3 ὁ δοῦλος αἰεὶ εὖ ἀπεκρίνατο.
- 4 τοὺς βαρβάρους ῥαδίως νικήσωμεν.
- 5 αὕτη ἡ θεὰ μάλιστα φιλεῖται.
- 6 ὁ ἄγγελος ἀσφαλῶς ἀφίκετο.
- 7 ἐκεῖνος ἀξίως ἀπέθανεν.
- 8 οἱ ναῦται εὐθὺς ἐξεπέμφθησαν.
- 9 οὗτοι οἱ παῖδες βραδέως ἐπορεύοντο.
- 10 τὰ ἄριστα ὄπλα πολλάκις ἐκεῖ εὐρίσκεται.

Exercise RS.16: Numerals and time expressions

- 1 τρεῖς μὲν ἡμέρας ἐπορευόμεθα, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ ἀφικόμεθα.
- 2 ἔχομεν μίαν χώραν καὶ ἓνα βασιλέα.
- 3 εἰσὶν ἡμῖν δύο δοῦλοι.
- 4 τῷ δευτέρῳ ἔτει ὁ πόλεμος ἐπαύσατο.
- 5 ὁ δοῦλος ἔφυγε τῆς νυκτός.
- 6 πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐδιώκομεν τοὺς πολεμίους.
- 7 τρία δῶρα αὐτῇ ἔδωκα, ἀλλὰ τὸ τέταρτον ἔτι ἔχω.
- 8 ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐστὶν ἓν ὄρος.
- 9 ἔξ νύκτας ἐμένομεν τοὺς συμμάχους.
- 10 εἰς ἵππος ἐκάστῳ ἵππῳ ἐστίν.

Exercise RS.17: Comparative and superlative adjectives

- 1 οἱ Ἕλληνες πολλῶ σοφώτεροί εἰσιν ἢ οἱ βάρβαροι.
- 2 τὰ τῆς πόλεως τεῖχη ἐστὶν ἀσθενέστατα.
- 3 ὁ λιμὴν μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ἀγορᾶς.
- 4 ἡ θάλασσα χαλεπώτερα ἦν ἢ ὁ ποταμός.
- 5 οὗτός ἐστιν ἄριστος τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
- 6 ὁ δικαιοτάτος ἡγεμὼν ἐπέμφθη.
- 7 ἡ νέα ὁδὸς ἐστὶ βραδυτέρα.
- 8 οἱ ἵπποι θάσσονές εἰσι τῶν ἀνθρώπων.
- 9 ὁ χρόνος ἐστὶν ἰατρός ἀληθέστατος.
- 10 ἦδε ἡ ὁδὸς ἀσφαλεστέρα ἐστὶν ἢ ἐκείνη.

Exercise RS.18: Comparative and superlative adverbs

- 1 ἡ παῖς σοφώτατα ἀπεκρίνατο.
- 2 ὁ γέρων λέγει ῥᾶον ἢ ἀκούει.
- 3 ὁ δοῦλος ὡς τάχιστα ἔφυγεν.
- 4 οὗτος θάσσον πορεύεται ἢ ἐκεῖνος.
- 5 οἱ στρατιῶται ὡς ἀνδρειότατα ἐμαχέσαντο.
- 6 τίς λόγος ἀληθέστατα ἐρρήθη;
- 7 οἱ σύμμαχοι βραδύτερον ἀφίκοντο ἢ ἠλπίσσαμεν.
- 8 τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον αἰσχιστα ἐποιήθη.
- 9 οἱ πολῖται σοφώτερον ἐπραξαν ἢ οἱ στρατηγοί.
- 10 ἡ ναὺς ἄριστα ἐποιήθη.

Exercise RS.19: Indirect statements (1) with 'that' clause

- 1        ὁ ἄγγελος λέγει ὅτι αἱ νῆες εἰς τὸν λιμένα νῦν πλέουσιν.
- 2        ὁ φύλαξ εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ δοῦλος φεύγει.
- 3        αἱ γυναῖκες λέγουσιν ὅτι βοὴν μεγάλην ἤκουσαν.
- 4        οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ εἶπον ὅτι οὐδὲν εἶδον.
- 5        ὁ στρατηγὸς αὐτὸς ἀγγέλλει ὅτι ἡ μάχη παύσεται.
- 6        ὁ ναύτης εἶπεν ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι ἀπέλθοιεν.
- 7        ὁ βασιλεὺς πολλάκις ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ πόλις ληφθήσεται.
- 8        οὗτος ὁ παῖς λέγει ὅτι ἔτι ἔχει τὸν ἵππον.
- 9        πάντες οἱ πολῖται εἶπον ὅτι βούλονται μένειν.
- 10       ἡ τοῦ ναύτου θυγάτηρ εἶπεν ὅτι μάθοι πάντας τοὺς λόγους.

Exercise RS.20: Indirect statements (2) with infinitive

- 1        οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐνόμιζον τὸν ποταμὸν ἔτι χαλεπὸν εἶναι.
- 2        ὁ φύλαξ νῦν φησι τοὺς πολεμίους προσιέναι.
- 3        ἐνομιζόμεν τὸν δοῦλον ἤδη φυγεῖν.
- 4        ὁ ἄγγελός φησι τοὺς φύλακας ἐν τῇ πόλει εἶναι.
- 5        νομίζομεν αὐτοῖς μὲν νικῆσειν, τοὺς δὲ βαρβάρους νικηθήσεσθαι.
- 6        ἡ τοῦ παιδὸς μήτηρ ἔφη εὐρεῖν τὰ χρήματα.
- 7        ὁ παῖς οὐ φησιν αἴτιος εἶναι.
- 8        ὁ ξένος ἔφη ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν δοῦλον.
- 9        ἄρα νομίζεις τὸν ἄνδρα τὸ ἀληθὲς λέγειν;
- 10       ἡ γυνὴ οὐκ ἔφη τὸ δῶρον δέξασθαι.

Exercise RS.21: Indirect statements (3) with participle

- 1        οἶδα τὸν γέροντα σοφὸν ὄντα.
- 2        ἀκούομεν τὸν τῶν βαρβάρων ἄγγελον ἐνθάδε ὄντα.
- 3        ἄρ' οἶσθα τὸν ποταμὸν χαλεπὸν ὄντα;
- 4        ὁ γέρων οἶδεν οὐχ οἶός τ' ὦν τοῦτο ποιεῖν.
- 5        ἡ γυνὴ ἐπύθετο τοὺς δούλους φεύγοντας.
- 6        ὁ βασιλεὺς ἤκουσε τοὺς στρατιώτας εὖ μαχεσαμένους.
- 7        οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν τὸν πόλεμον ἐσόμενον.
- 8        ὁ ξένος εἶδε τοὺς ἄνδρας αἰρεθέντας.
- 9        ὁ παῖς ἔγνω τὰ ὀρη ὑψηλότεα ὄντα.
- 10       οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ εὗρον τὴν ναὺν ἀπελθοῦσαν.

Exercise RS.22: Direct questions

- 1        τίς ἔχει πλεῖστα χρήματα;
- 2        ἄρα ἀληθὲς ἐστὶν ὁ τοῦ ἀγγέλου λόγος;
- 3        ποῖος ἡγεμὼν ἐστὶν ἄριστος;
- 4        διὰ τί οὐκ ἐφύλαξας τὰ τεῖχη;
- 5        πόσοι δοῦλοι ἐν τῇ πόλει εἰσίν;
- 6        πόθεν ἦλθεν ἡδε ἡ παῖς;
- 7        ἄρα φιλεῖς τὸν ἐνθάδε σῖτον;
- 8        πῶς ἐγένετο ἐκείνη ἡ συμφορά;
- 9        ποῖ πορεύεσθε, ὦ στρατιώται;
- 10       πότε παύσεται ὁ πόλεμος;

Exercise RS.23: Indirect questions

- 1 βούλομαι πυθέσθαι τίς ἔγραψε τούτους τοὺς λόγους.
- 2 ὁ βασιλεὺς ἠρώτησε τὸν δούλον πόθεν ἦλθεν.
- 3 χαλεπὸν ἐστὶ γινῶναι ποία ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα.
- 4 οὐκ οἶδα διὰ τί ταῦτα ἐγένετο.
- 5 τὸν πατέρα ἠρώτησα τί ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἔπραξεν.
- 6 ἐπέισαμεν τὸν ἄγγελον εἰπεῖν πότε ὁ χειμὼν γένοιτο.
- 7 οἱ πολῖται πολλάκις ἐρωτῶσιν τίς τῶν λεγόντων ἄριστός ἐστιν.
- 8 ὁ στρατηγὸς ἤρετο τοὺς φύλακας εἰ τοὺς πολεμίους ἴδοιεν.
- 9 οὐδεὶς ἤκουσε πῶς οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ἐξέφυγον.
- 10 ἐρωτήσω τοῦτον πόσους τῶν πολεμίων ἀπέκτεινεν.

Exercise RS.24: Direct commands

- 1 γράφετε πάντα ἃ λέγω.
- 2 φυλάξατε τούσδε τοὺς δούλους, ὃ στρατιῶται.
- 3 φύγετε, ὃ πολῖται, ἐκ τῆς πόλεως.
- 4 λύσον τόνδε τὸν ἵππον, ὃ δούλε.
- 5 αἰεὶ ἀνδρεῖος ἴσθι, ὃ παῖ.
- 6 μὴ βαίνετε εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν.
- 7 μὴ λάβετε ταύτας τὰς ναῦς, ὃ σύμμαχοι.
- 8 μηδέποτε φοβεῖσθε τοὺς βαρβάρους, ὃ Ἕλληνες.
- 9 ἀγάγετε τὰς ληφθεῖσας εἰς τὴν πόλιν.
- 10 λύσατε τούσδε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὃ φίλοι.

Exercise RS.25: Indirect commands

- 1 κελεύομεν τοὺς παῖδας αἰεὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς λέγειν.
- 2 ἐκέλευσα τοὺς πολίτας μὴ φυγεῖν.
- 3 οἱ στρατηγοὶ πείθουσι τὴν ἐκκλησίαν πόλεμον ποιῆσαι.
- 4 οἱ νεανῖαι κελευσθήσονται σιγῇ πορευέσθαι.
- 5 ἐγὼ εἶπον τῷ ναύτῃ μὴ λιπεῖν τὴν ναὺν.
- 6 αἰτήσω τὰς γυναῖκας ἐνθάδε μένειν.
- 7 νῦν κελεύσω τὸν δούλον σίτον παρακευάσαι.
- 8 οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἐκελεύσθησαν φυλάξαι τὸν λιμένα.
- 9 αὖτε ἡ παῖς ἤτησε τοὺς γέροντας ἀκοῦσαι.
- 10 ἐπείσθημεν ἐκβάλλειν πάντα ταῦτα.

Exercise RS.26: Purpose clauses

- 1 πορεύομαι πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἵνα τὸν πατέρα ἴδω.
- 2 ὁ ἄγγελος ἐβόησεν ἵνα πάντες ἀκούσειαν.
- 3 ὁ δούλος ἐπέμφθη ὥς ἀγγελῶν τὰ γενόμενα.
- 4 οἱ πολῖται ἔφυγον ἵνα μὴ ληφθεῖεν.
- 5 αἱ γυναῖκες ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ μένουσιν ὥς τὸν βασιλέα ὀψόμεναι.
- 6 ὁ ἀνὴρ κατέβη ὥς τὴν γυναῖκα εὐρήσων.
- 7 πρὸς τὴν τῶν Ἑλλήνων χώραν πορεύομαι ἵνα τὰς πόλεις καὶ τὰ ὄρη ἴδω.
- 8 ἐνθάδε μένομεν ἵνα τοὺς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγους ἀκούωμεν.
- 9 ταῦτα ἔγραψα ἵνα ῥᾶον μανθάνητε.
- 10 ὁ ἄγγελος ἀφίκετο ἵνα τὰ περὶ τοῦ πολέμου ἀγγείλῃ.

Exercise RS.27: Result clauses

- 1 ὁ δοῦλος οὕτω σοφῶς ἀποκρίνεται ὥστε πάντες θαυμάζουσιν.
- 2 τοσαύτη ἐστὶν ἡ στρατία ὥστε τοὺς πολεμίους φοβεῖσθαι.
- 3 ὁ παῖς οὕτω ταχέως τρέχει ὥστ' αἰεὶ νικᾷ.
- 4 οἱ βάρβαροι ἐνικτήθησαν· ὥστε ὁ πόλεμος ἐπαύσατο.
- 5 οὕτω λέγει ὥστε πάντες τοῖς λόγοις πιστεύουσιν.
- 6 οἱ πολῖται τοιοῦτοὶ εἰσιν ὥστε μὴ ῥαδίως πείθεσθαι.
- 7 τὸ ὄρος τοσοῦτό ἐστιν ὥστε μηδὲνα ἀναβαίνειν.
- 8 οὕτως ἐφοβοῦντο οἱ πολῖται ὥστε εὐθὺς ἔφυγον.
- 9 τοιοῦτός ἐστιν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὥστε ταῦτα πράσσειν.
- 10 οὕτως εὐρύς ἐστιν ὁ ποταμὸς ὥστ' οὐχ οἱοί τ' ἐσμὲν διαβῆναι.

Exercise RS.28: Conditionals

- 1 ἐὰν μὴ ἀκούσητε, οὐ μαθήσεσθε.
- 2 εἰ εὐθὺς προσέβαλον οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, τὴν πόλιν ταχέως ἂν ἔλαβον.
- 3 ἐὰν τὸν χρυσὸν εὖρης, πλουσιώτατος γενήσῃ.
- 4 εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι τότε ἀφίκοντο, οὐδὲνα ἂν ἐνθάδε ἦδρον.
- 5 εἰ μὴ ἐφύγετε, τότε ἂν ἀποθάνετε.
- 6 ἐὰν ἴδῃς τὴν ἡμετέραν πόλιν, θαυμάσεις.
- 7 εἰ ταῦτα εἶπες, καλῶς ἂν εἶπες.
- 8 ἰσχυρὸς γενήσῃ ἐὰν ταῦτα ἐσθίῃς.
- 9 εἰ οἱ λόγοι ἀληθεῖς ἦσαν, ἐπιστεύσαμεν ἂν τῷ ἀγγέλῳ.
- 10 εἰ συ ἐβόήσας, ἐγὼ ἂν ἤκουσα.

Exercise RS.29: Verbs with epsilon contraction

- 1 ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν τοὺς συμμάχους ἀφικνουμένους ὄραν.
- 2 διὰ τί οἱ Ἕλληνες τοὺς βαρβάρους μισοῦσιν;
- 3 οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς τείχεσι προσέβαλον, ἀλλὰ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐποιοῦν.
- 4 ἄρα φοβεῖσθε ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἀδικεῖν, ὦ πολῖται;
- 5 ἐκ τοῦ λιμένου νῦν πλέομεν ὥς ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους μαχοῦμενοι.
- 6 ἐκείνη ἡ παῖς αἰεὶ βοηθεῖ τῷ γέροντι.
- 7 φίλει τὸ ἀληθές, ὦ παῖ.
- 8 οἱ πολεμιοὶ ἐκ τῆς ἡμετέρας χώρας τέλος ἀνεχώρουν.
- 9 τὸν πατέρα πλείονα χρήματα αἰτήσω.
- 10 τί καλεῖτε τὸν νέον ἵππον, ὦ φίλοι;

Exercise RS.30: Verbs with alpha contraction

- 1 τί βοᾷ ὁ ἀνὴρ; ἄρ' ἐρωτᾷ τι περὶ τῆς μάχης;
- 2 φοβούμεθα χρῆσθαι τῷ τοῦ θεοῦ ὀνόματι.
- 3 οἱ ἐκείνης τῆς χώρας ἔνοικοι ἐτίμων τὸν βασιλέα.
- 4 οἱ βάρβαροι πολλάκις νικῶνται.
- 5 οἱ νεανῖαι ἔτι φεύγουσι καίπερ ὀρώμενοι.
- 6 ἡ μήτηρ ἐκέλευσεν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα μηδέποτε ἐρωτᾶν.
- 7 οἱ πολέμιοι οὐδέποτε νικήσουσι καίπερ πολλάκις πειρώμενοι.
- 8 οἱ τὸν χρυσὸν κτησάμενοι ἀπῆλθον γελῶντες.
- 9 χαλεπώτατόν ἐστιν ἡμῖν τὰς ναὺς ὄραν.
- 10 οἱ ταῦτα μανθάνοντες ἐλάσσονές εἰσιν ἢ πρότερον, ἀλλὰ δικαίως τιμῶνται.

# Reference Grammar and Revision Guide

## The definite article

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὁ	ἡ	τό	the
	<i>acc</i>	τόν	τήν	τό	(and see Appendix 1 page 220)
	<i>gen</i>	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	
	<i>dat</i>	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	οἱ	αἱ	τά	
	<i>acc</i>	τούς	τάς	τά	
	<i>gen</i>	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν	
	<i>dat</i>	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς	

## Nouns: First declension

Pattern of endings for singular (all plurals are -αι, -ας, -ων, -αις):

	<i>nom</i>	-η/-α	(adds -ς if masculine)		
	<i>acc</i>	-ην/-αν			
	<i>gen</i>	-ης/-ας	(changes to -ου if masculine)		
	<i>dat</i>	-η/-α			
		<i>feminine:</i>		<i>masculine:</i>	
		honour	country	sea	judge
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμ-ή	χώρ-α	θάλασσ-α	κριτ-ής
	<i>acc</i>	τιμ-ήν	χώρ-αν	θάλασσ-αν	κριτ-ήν
	<i>gen</i>	τιμ-ῆς	χώρ-ας	θαλάσσ-ης	κριτ-οῦ
	<i>dat</i>	τιμ-ῇ	χώρ-α	θαλάσσ-ῃ	κριτ-ῇ
				( <i>voc</i> κριτ-ά)	( <i>voc</i> νεανί-α)
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμ-αί	χώρ-αι	θάλασσ-αι	κριτ-αί
	<i>acc</i>	τιμ-άς	χώρ-ας	θαλάσσ-ας	κριτ-άς
	<i>gen</i>	τιμ-ῶν	χωρ-ῶν	θαλασσ-ῶν	κριτ-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	τιμ-αῖς	χώρ-αις	θαλάσσ-αις	κριτ-αῖς

## Nouns: Second declension

		<i>masculine: *</i>	<i>neuter:</i>
		word	gift
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	λόγ-ος	δῶρ-ον
	<i>acc</i>	λόγ-ον	δῶρ-ον
	<i>gen</i>	λόγ-ου	δῶρ-ου
	<i>dat</i>	λόγ-ῳ ( <i>voc</i> λόγ-ε)	δῶρ-ῳ
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	λόγ-οι	δῶρ-α
	<i>acc</i>	λόγ-ους	δῶρ-α
	<i>gen</i>	λόγ-ων	δῶρ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	λόγ-οις	δῶρ-οις

\* feminine nouns such as νῆσος *island* are identical in declension

## Nouns: Third declension

Pattern of endings:

<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	(wide range of possibilities)	
	<i>acc</i>	stem + α	for masc and fem; same as nom if neuter
	<i>gen</i>	stem + ος	
	<i>dat</i>	stem + ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	stem + ες	for masc and fem; stem + α if neuter
	<i>acc</i>	stem + ας	for masc and fem; stem + α if neuter
	<i>gen</i>	stem + ων	
	<i>dat</i>	stem + σι(ν)*	

\* the nu is added if the next word begins with a vowel, or at the end of a sentence

Examples:

		guard ( <i>stem φυλακ-</i> )	old man ( <i>stem γεροντ-</i> )
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	φύλαξ	γέρων
	<i>acc</i>	φύλακ-α	γέροντ-α
	<i>gen</i>	φύλακ-ος	γέροντ-ος
	<i>dat</i>	φύλακ-ι	γέροντ-ι
			( <i>voc</i> γέρον)
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	φύλακ-ες	γέροντ-ες
	<i>acc</i>	φύλακ-ας	γέροντ-ας
	<i>gen</i>	φύλακ-ων	γερόντ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	φύλαξι(ν)	γέρουσι(ν)
		[ <i>dat pl represents</i> φυλακ-σι(ν)]	[ <i>dat pl represents</i> γεροντ-σι(ν)]
		giant ( <i>stem γιγαντ-</i> )	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	γίγας	
	<i>acc</i>	γίγαντ-α	
	<i>gen</i>	γίγαντ-ος	
	<i>dat</i>	γίγαντ-ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	γίγαντ-ες	
	<i>acc</i>	γίγαντ-ας	
	<i>gen</i>	γίγαντ-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	γίγασι(ν)	[ <i>dat pl represents</i> γιγαντ-σι(ν)]

These three examples are all masculine, but feminine nouns e.g. νύξ, νυκτός (*stem νυκτ-*) *night* decline in the same way.

Neuter example:

		body ( <i>stem σωματ-</i> )	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	σῶμα	
	<i>acc</i>	σῶμα	
	<i>gen</i>	σώματ-ος	
	<i>dat</i>	σώματ-ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	σώματ-α	
	<i>acc</i>	σώματ-α	
	<i>gen</i>	σώματ-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	σώμασι(ν)	[ <i>dat pl represents</i> σωματ-σι(ν)]

### Irregular third declension nouns

		fish ( <i>m</i> )	father ( <i>m</i> )	man ( <i>m</i> )	woman ( <i>f</i> )	Zeus ( <i>m</i> )
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ἰχθύς	πατήρ	άνήρ	γυνή	Ζεὺς
	<i>acc</i>	ἰχθύ-ν	πατέρα	άνδρ-α	γυναῖκ-α	Δί-α
	<i>gen</i>	ἰχθύ-ος	πατρός	άνδρ-ός	γυναικ-ός	Δι-ός
	<i>dat</i>	ἰχθύ-ι	πατρί	άνδρ-ί	γυναικ-ί	Δι-ί
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	ἰχθύ-ες	πατέρες	άνδρ-ες	γυναῖκ-ες	
	<i>acc</i>	ἰχθύ-ας	πατέρας	άνδρ-ας	γυναῖκ-ας	
	<i>gen</i>	ἰχθύ-ων	πατέρων	άνδρ-ών	γυναικ-ών	
	<i>dat</i>	ἰχθύ-σι(ν)	πατράσι(ν)	άνδράσι(ν)	γυναιξί(ν)	

[*voc sg forms*: ἰχθύ, πάτερ, άνερ, γύναι, Ζεῦ]

		king ( <i>m</i> )	city ( <i>f</i> )	ship ( <i>f</i> )	race, family ( <i>n</i> )
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	βασιλεύς	πόλις	ναῦς	γέν-ος
	<i>acc</i>	βασιλέα	πόλιν	ναῦν	γέν-ος
	<i>gen</i>	βασιλέως	πόλεως	νε-ώς	γέν-ους
	<i>dat</i>	βασιλεῖ	πόλει	νη-ί	γέν-ει
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	βασιλῆς (/εῖς)	πόλεις	νη-ες	γέν-η
	<i>acc</i>	βασιλέας	πόλεις	ναῦς	γέν-η
	<i>gen</i>	βασιλέων	πόλεων	νε-ών	γεν-ών
	<i>dat</i>	βασιλεῦσι(ν)	πόλεσι(ν)	ναυσί(ν)	γέν-εσι(ν)

[*voc sg forms*: βασιλεῦ, πόλι, ναῦ]

## Adjectives

### 2-1-2 declensions

		masculine	feminine	neuter	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	σοφ-ός	σοφ-ή	σοφ-όν	wise
	<i>acc</i>	σοφ-όν	σοφ-ήν	σοφ-όν	
	<i>gen</i>	σοφ-οῦ	σοφ-ῆς	σοφ-οῦ	
	<i>dat</i>	σοφ-ῶ	σοφ-ῇ	σοφ-ῶ	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	σοφ-οί	σοφ-αί	σοφ-ά	
	<i>acc</i>	σοφ-ούς	σοφ-άς	σοφ-ά	
	<i>gen</i>	σοφ-ῶν	σοφ-ῶν	σοφ-ῶν	
	<i>dat</i>	σοφ-οῖς	σοφ-αῖς	σοφ-οῖς	

Variant feminine singular if stem ends with a vowel or rho:

<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	φιλι-α	friendly
	<i>acc</i>	φιλι-αν	
	<i>gen</i>	φιλι-ας	
	<i>dat</i>	φιλι-α	

Irregular 2-1-2 (singular starts as if 3-1-3):

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	πολύς	πολλή-ή	πολύ	much, <i>pl</i> many
	<i>acc</i>	πολύν	πολλή-ήν	πολύ	
	<i>gen</i>	πολλ-οῦ	πολλ-ῆς	πολλ-οῦ	
	<i>dat</i>	πολλ-ῶ	πολλ-ῇ	πολλ-ῶ	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	πολλοί	πολλοί-αι	πολλοί-ά	
	<i>acc</i>	πολλοῦς	πολλοῦς-ας	πολλοῦς-ά	
	<i>gen</i>	πολλοῶν	πολλοῶν	πολλοῶν	
	<i>dat</i>	πολλοῖς	πολλοῖς-αις	πολλοῖς	
<hr/>					
		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	μέγας	μεγάλη-η	μέγα	big, great
	<i>acc</i>	μέγαν	μεγάλη-ην	μέγα	
	<i>gen</i>	μεγάλ-ου	μεγάλ-ης	μεγάλ-ου	
	<i>dat</i>	μεγάλ-ω	μεγάλ-ῃ	μεγάλ-ω	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	μεγάλοι	μεγάλοι-αι	μεγάλοι-α	
	<i>acc</i>	μεγάλ-ους	μεγάλ-ας	μεγάλ-α	
	<i>gen</i>	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	
	<i>dat</i>	μεγάλ-οις	μεγάλ-αις	μεγάλ-οις	

### 3-1-3 declensions

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	βραδ-ύς	βραδ-εῖα	βραδ-ύ	slow
	<i>acc</i>	βραδ-ύν	βραδ-εῖαν	βραδ-ύ	
	<i>gen</i>	βραδ-έος	βραδ-εῖας	βραδ-έος	
	<i>dat</i>	βραδ-εῖ	βραδ-εῖα	βραδ-εῖ	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	βραδ-εῖς	βραδ-εῖαι	βραδ-έα	
	<i>acc</i>	βραδ-εῖς	βραδ-εῖας	βραδ-έα	
	<i>gen</i>	βραδ-έων	βραδ-ειῶν	βραδ-έων	
	<i>dat</i>	βραδ-έσι(ν)	βραδ-εῖαις	βραδ-έσι(ν)	

The 3-1-3 adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν = *all* declines like the first (weak) aorist participle: see page 205.

### 3-3 declensions (no separate feminine): (a) with epsilon contraction

		<i>m/f</i>	<i>n</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ἀληθ-ής	ἀληθ-ές	true
	<i>acc</i>	ἀληθ-ῇ	ἀληθ-ές	
	<i>gen</i>	ἀληθ-οῦς	ἀληθ-οῦς	
	<i>dat</i>	ἀληθ-εῖ	ἀληθ-εῖ	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	ἀληθ-εῖς	ἀληθ-ῇ	
	<i>acc</i>	ἀληθ-εῖς	ἀληθ-ῇ	
	<i>gen</i>	ἀληθ-ῶν	ἀληθ-ῶν	
	<i>dat</i>	ἀληθ-έσι(ν)	ἀληθ-έσι(ν)	



3-3 declensions (no separate feminine): (b) irregular comparative

	<i>m/f</i>	<i>n</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	μείζων	μείζον bigger, greater
	<i>acc</i>	μείζον-α	μείζον
	<i>gen</i>	μείζον-ος	μείζον-ος
	<i>dat</i>	μείζον-ι	μείζον-ι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	μείζον-ες	μείζον-α
	<i>acc</i>	μείζον-ας	μείζον-α
	<i>gen</i>	μειζόν-ων	μειζόν-ων
	<i>dat</i>	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)

## Comparison of adjectives

'positive' (=normal adjective)	comparative	superlative
Regular patterns:	-τερος	-τατος
σοφός -ή -όν wise	σοφώτερος -α -ον	σοφώτατος -η -ον
φίλιος -α -ον friendly	φιλιώτερος -α -ον	φιλιώτατος -η -ον
δεινός -ή -όν strange, terrible	δεινότερος -α -ον	δεινότατος -η -ον
βραδύς -εῖα -ύ slow	βραδύτερος -α -ον	βραδύτατος -η -ον
ἀληθής -ές true	ἀληθέστερος -α -ον	ἀληθέστατος -η -ον
Irregulars:	-ων	-ιστος
ἀγαθός -ή -όν good	ἀμείνων -ον	ἄριστος -η -ον
αἰσχρός -ά -όν shameful	αἰσχίων -ον	αἰσχιστος -η -ον
ἐχθρός -ά -όν hostile	ἐχθίων -ον	ἐχθιστος -η -ον
ἡδύς -εῖα -ύ sweet	ἡδίων -ον	ἡδιστος -η -ον
κακός -ή -όν bad	κακίων -ον	κάκιςτος -η -ον
καλός -ή -όν fine	καλλίων -ον	κάλλιστος -η -ον
μέγας μεγάλη μέγα big	μείζων -ον	μέγιστος -η -ον
ὀλίγος -η -ον small (amount of)	ἐλάσσων -ον	ἐλάχιστος -η -ον
ὀλίγοι -αι -α few	ἐλάσσονες -α	ἐλάχιστοι -αι -α
πολύς πολλή πολύ much	πλείων -ον	πλείστος -η -ον
πολλοί -αί -ά many	πλείονες -α	πλείστοι -αι -α
ῥάδιος -α -ον easy	ῥάων -ον	ῥάστος -η -ον
ταχύς -εῖα -ύ swift	θάσσων -ον	τάχιστος -η -ον

Comparatives ending in -τερος decline like φίλιος; comparatives ending in -ων decline like μείζων; all superlatives decline like σοφός.

## Quick revision: Top seven irregular comparatives and superlatives:

ἀγαθός	good	ἀμείνων	better	ἄριστος	best
κακός	bad	κακίων	worse	κάκιςτος	worst
μέγας	big	μείζων	bigger	μέγιστος	biggest
ὀλίγοι	few	ἐλάσσονες	fewer	ἐλάχιστοι	fewest
πολλοί	many	πλείονες	more	πλείστοι	most
ῥάδιος	easy	ῥάων	easier	ῥάστος	easiest
ταχύς	fast	θάσσων	faster	τάχιστος	fastest

## Participles

Summary of grammar detail and meanings (see also pages 49-51):

present	<i>active</i>	παύων -ουσα -ον (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυοντ-) stopping
	<i>middle/passive</i>	παυόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) ceasing, stopping oneself ( <i>middle</i> ); being stopped ( <i>passive</i> )
future	<i>active</i>	παύσων -ουσα -ον (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυσοντ-) about to stop
	<i>middle</i>	παυσόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) about to cease, about to stop oneself
	<i>passive</i>	παυσθησόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) about to be stopped
aorist	<i>first (weak) active</i>	παύσας -ασα -αν (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυσαντ-) having stopped
	<i>first (weak) middle</i>	παυσάμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) having ceased, having stopped oneself
	<i>second (strong) active</i>	λαβών -ούσα, -όν (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem λαβοντ-) having taken
	<i>second (strong) middle</i>	λαβόμενος -η -ον (2-1-2 decl) having taken for oneself
	<i>passive</i>	παυσθείς -εῖσα -έν (3-1-3 decl; m/n gen stem παυσθεντ-) having been stopped

Participle declensions: (1) active (3-1-3 declensions)

present active participle

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
sg	<i>nom</i>	παύ-ων	παύ-ουσα	παύ-ον	stopping
	<i>acc</i>	παύ-οντα	παύ-ουσαν	παύ-ον	
	<i>gen</i>	παύ-οντος	παυ-ούσης	παύ-οντος	
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-οντι	παυ-ούσῃ	παύ-οντι	
pl	<i>nom</i>	παύ-οντες	παύ-ουσ-αι	παύ-οντα	
	<i>acc</i>	παύ-οντας	παυ-ούσ-ας	παύ-οντα	
	<i>gen</i>	παυ-όντων	παυ-ουσ-ῶν	παυ-όντων	
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-ουσι(ν)	παυ-ούσ-αις	παύ-ουσι(ν)	

similarly:

future participle

παύσων	παύσουσα	παύσον	about to stop
stem (for masc and neut): παυσοντ-			

second (strong) aorist participle

λαβών	λαβοῦσα	λαβόν	having taken
stem (for masc and neut): λαβοντ-			

first (weak) aorist participle

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύσ-ας	παύσ-ας-α	παύσ-αν	having stopped
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-αντα	παύσ-ας-αν	παύσ-αν	
	<i>gen</i>	παύσ-αντος	παυσ-άς-ης	παύσ-αντος	
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-αντι	παυσ-άς-η	παύσ-αντι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύσ-αντες	παύσ-ας-αι	παύσ-αντα	
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-αντας	παυσ-άς-ας	παύσ-αντα	
	<i>gen</i>	παυσ-άντων	παυσ-ας-ών	παυσ-άντων	
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-ασι(ν)	παυσ-άς-αις	παύσ-ασι(ν)	

Participle declensions: (2) middle and passive (2-1-2 declension, except aorist passive)

present middle/passive participle

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παυόμεν-ος	παυομένη-η	παυόμεν-ον	ceasing/being stopped
	<i>acc</i>	παυόμεν-ον	παυομένη-ην	παυόμεν-ον	
	<i>gen</i>	παυομέν-ου	παυομένη-ης	παυομέν-ου	
	<i>dat</i>	παυομέν-ω	παυομένη-η	παυομέν-ω	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παυόμεν-οι	παυόμεν-αι	παυόμεν-α	
	<i>acc</i>	παυομέν-ους	παυομένη-ας	παυόμεν-α	
	<i>gen</i>	παυομέν-ων	παυομένων-ων	παυομένων-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	παυομέν-οις	παυομένων-αις	παυομένων-οις	

similarly:

future middle participle	παυσόμενος -η -ον
future passive participle	παυσθησόμενος -η -ον
second (strong) aorist middle participle	λαβόμενος -η -ον
and (substituting alpha for omicron throughout)	
first (weak) aorist middle participle	παυσάμενος -η -ον

aorist passive participle: (3-1-3 declensions, like active participles; basic aorist passive stem παυσθ-; masculine/neuter genitive stem of participle παυσθέντ-)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παυσθείς	παυσθειῖς-α	παυσθέν	having been stopped
	<i>acc</i>	παυσθέντ-α	παυσθειῖς-αν	παυσθέν	
	<i>gen</i>	παυσθέντ-ος	παυσθειῖς-ης	παυσθέντ-ος	
	<i>dat</i>	παυσθέντ-ι	παυσθειῖς-η	παυσθέντ-ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παυσθέντ-ες	παυσθειῖς-αι	παυσθέντ-α	
	<i>acc</i>	παυσθέντ-ας	παυσθειῖς-ας	παυσθέντ-α	
	<i>gen</i>	παυσθέντ-ων	παυσθειῖς-ών	παυσθέντ-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	παυσθειῖσι(ν)	παυσθειῖς-αις	παυσθειῖσι(ν)	

## Pronouns

First and second person:

	I	you ( <i>sg</i> )	<i>possessive adjectives:</i>	
<i>nom</i>	ἐγώ	σύ	ἐμός -ή -όν	my. mine
<i>acc</i>	ἐμέ, με	σέ	σός σή σόν	your (of you <i>sg</i> )
<i>gen</i>	ἐμοῦ, μου	σοῦ	ἡμετέρος -α -ον	our
<i>dat</i>	ἐμοί, μοι	σοί	ὑμέτερος -α -ον	your (of you <i>pl</i> )
	we	you ( <i>pl</i> )		
<i>nom</i>	ἡμεῖς	ὕμεῖς		
<i>acc</i>	ἡμᾶς	ὕμᾶς		
<i>gen</i>	ἡμῶν	ὕμῶν		
<i>dat</i>	ἡμῖν	ὕμῖν		

αὐτός

Three meanings: (1) self; (2) (*with definite article*) the same; (3) (*not nom*) him, her, it, *pl* them  
(and see Appendix 2 page 221)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	αὐτ-ός	αὐτ-ή	αὐτ-ό
	<i>acc</i>	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-ήν	αὐτ-ό
	<i>gen</i>	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτ-ῆς	αὐτ-οῦ
	<i>dat</i>	αὐτ-ῷ	αὐτ-ῇ	αὐτ-ῷ
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	αὐτ-οί	αὐτ-αί	αὐτ-ά
	<i>acc</i>	αὐτ-οὺς	αὐτ-άς	αὐτ-ά
	<i>gen</i>	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	αὐτ-οῖς	αὐτ-αῖς	αὐτ-οῖς

Reflexive pronouns (first and second persons):

		myself, <i>pl</i> ourselves		yourself, <i>pl</i> yourselves	
		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>acc</i>	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
	<i>gen</i>	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμουτῆς	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
	<i>dat</i>	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
<i>pl</i>	<i>acc</i>	ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ὕμᾶς αὐτοὺς	ὕμᾶς αὐτάς
	<i>gen</i>	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὕμῶν αὐτῶν	ὕμῶν αὐτῶν
	<i>dat</i>	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	ὕμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὕμῖν αὐταῖς

Reflexive pronouns (third person):

		himself, herself, itself, <i>pl</i> themselves		
		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>acc</i>	ἐαυτόν	ἐαυτήν	ἐαυτό
	<i>gen</i>	ἐαυτοῦ	ἐαυτῆς	ἐαυτοῦ
	<i>dat</i>	ἐαυτῷ	ἐαυτῇ	ἐαυτῷ
<i>pl</i>	<i>acc</i>	ἐαυτούς	ἐαυτάς	ἐαυτά
	<i>gen</i>	ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν
	<i>dat</i>	ἐαυτοῖς	ἐαυταῖς	ἐαυτοῖς

### τίς/τις

Two meanings:

(1) In a question, and with an acute accent on the first or only syllable: *who? what? which?*

		<i>masculine/feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τίς	τί
	<i>acc</i>	τίν-α	τί
	<i>gen</i>	τίν-ος	τίν-ος
	<i>dat</i>	τίν-ι	τίν-ι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τίν-ες	τίν-α
	<i>acc</i>	τίν-α	τίν-α
	<i>gen</i>	τίν-ων	τίν-ων
	<i>dat</i>	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν) [dat pl represents τιν-σι(ν)]

(2) As an indefinite adjective/pronoun, with no accent or with an accent on the second syllable, and never as first word in a sentence or clause: *a (certain), some (one/thing)*

		<i>masculine/feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τις	τι
	<i>acc</i>	τιν-ά	τι
	<i>gen</i>	τιν-ός	τιν-ός
	<i>dat</i>	τιν-ί	τιν-ί
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιν-ές	τιν-ά
	<i>acc</i>	τιν-ά	τιν-ά
	<i>gen</i>	τιν-ῶν	τιν-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	τισί(ν)	τισί(ν) [dat pl represents τιν-σι(ν)]

---

### Relative pronoun

		who, which	
		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὅς	ἥ
	<i>acc</i>	ὃν	ἥν
	<i>gen</i>	οὗ	ἥς
	<i>dat</i>	ὃί	ἥί
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	οἳ	αἱ
	<i>acc</i>	οὓς	αἵ
	<i>gen</i>	ῶν	ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	οἷς	αἰς

---

## Demonstrative pronouns

Two different words for *this*:

(1)		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	this, <i>pl</i> these
	<i>acc</i>	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο	
	<i>gen</i>	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	
	<i>dat</i>	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα	
	<i>acc</i>	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα	
	<i>gen</i>	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων	
	<i>dat</i>	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις	
(2)		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὁδε	ἡδε	τόδε	this (this here, the following)
	<i>acc</i>	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	
		<i>etc.: simply the article with -δε attached</i>			

*That* (compare ἐκεῖ: literally *the one over there*)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο	that, <i>pl</i> those
	<i>acc</i>	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο	
		<i>etc.: declines like αὐτός (or like σοφός with -ο neuter)</i>			

## Numerals

1	εἷς μία ξν	first	πρῶτος -η -ον
2	δύο δυοῖν	second	δεύτερος -α -ον
3	τρεις τρία	third	τρίτος -η -ον
4	τεσσαρες -α	fourth	τέταρτος -η -ον
5	πέντε	fifth	πέμπτος -η -ον
6	ἕξ		
7	ἐπτά		
8	ὀκτώ		
9	ἐννέα		
10	δέκα		

Only numbers 1-4 decline, as follows:

	one (3-1-3 declensions)			two (dual forms)
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>all genders</i>
<i>nom</i>	εἷς	μία	ξν	δύο
<i>acc</i>	ξνα	μῖαν	ξν	δύο
<i>gen</i>	ένός	μιᾶς	ένός	δυοῖν
<i>dat</i>	ένί	μιᾷ	ένί	δυοῖν

• οὐδείς οὐδεμία οὐδέν (stem οὐδεν-) *no-one/nothing/no* ~ [lit *not even one*] declines like εἷς μία ξν

	three (3-3 declensions)		four (3-3 declensions)	
	<i>m/f</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>m/f</i>	<i>n</i>
<i>nom</i>	τρεις	τρία	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρα
<i>acc</i>	τρεις	τρία	τέσσαρας	τέσσαρα
<i>gen</i>	τριῶν	τριῶν	τεσσάρων	τεσσάρων
<i>dat</i>	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τέσσαρσι(ν)	τέσσαρσι(ν)

## Prepositions

(showing GCSE requirements only: see page 125 for slightly fuller detail)

<i>preposition</i>	<i>+ acc</i>	<i>+ gen</i>	<i>+ dat</i>
ἀνά	up		
ἀνευ		without	
ἀπό		from, away from	
διά	on account of, because of	through	
εἰς	into, onto, to		
ἐκ, ἐξ		out of	
ἐν			in, among
ἐπί	against, onto, on, at		
κατά	according to; by, down, along	down (from)	
μετά	after	with	
παρά	contrary to	from (a person)	
περί	round, around	about, concerning	
πλήν		except	
πρό		before, in front of	
πρός	towards, to, against		
ὑπέρ	beyond, to beyond	above, on behalf of	
ὑπό		by (a person)	

Prepositional set phrases:

κατὰ γῆν	by land
δι' ὀλίγου	soon

## Verbs (1): ending in -ω

Indicative tenses

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
			<i>middle/passive</i>
present	I stop		I cease/I am stopped
<i>sg</i> 1	παύ-ω		παύ-ομαι
2	παύ-εις		παύ-ῃ <i>or</i> -ει
3	παύ-ει		παύ-εται
<i>pl</i> 1	παύ-ομεν		παυ-όμεθα
2	παύ-ετε		παύ-εσθε
3	παύ-ουσι(ν)		παύ-ονται
future	I shall stop	I shall cease	I shall be stopped
<i>sg</i> 1	παύσ-ω	παύσ-ομαι	παυσθήσ-ομαι
2	παύσ-εις	παύσ-ῃ ( <i>or</i> -ει)	παυσθήσ-ῃ ( <i>or</i> -ει)
3	παύσ-ει	παύσ-εται	παυσθήσ-εται
<i>pl</i> 1	παύσ-ομεν	παυσ-όμεθα	παυσθησ-όμεθα
2	παύσ-ετε	παύσ-εσθε	παυσθήσ-εσθε
3	παύσ-ουσι(ν)	παύσ-ονται	παυσθήσ-ονται

		<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
				<i>middle/passive</i>
imperfect		I was stopping		I was ceasing/I was being stopped
<i>sg</i>	1	ἔ-παυ-ον		ἐ-παυ-όμην
	2	ἔ-παυ-ες		ἐ-παύ-ου
	3	ἔ-παυ-ε(ν)		ἐ-παύ-ετο
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐ-παύομεν		ἐ-παυ-όμεθα
	2	ἐ-παύετε		ἐ-παύ-εσθε
	3	ἔ-παυον		ἐ-παύ-οντο
1st (weak) aorist		I stopped	I ceased	I was stopped
<i>sg</i>	1	ἔ-παυσ-α	ἐ-παυσ-άμην	ἐ-παύσ-θην
	2	ἔ-παυσ-ας	ἐ-παύσ-ω	ἐ-παύσ-θης
	3	ἔ-παυσ-ε(ν)	ἐ-παύσ-ατο	ἐ-παύσ-θη
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐ-παύσ-αμεν	ἐ-παυσ-άμεθα	ἐ-παύσ-θημεν
	2	ἐ-παύσ-ατε	ἐ-παύσ-ασθε	ἐ-παύσ-θητε
	3	ἔ-παυσ-αν	ἐ-παύσ-αντο	ἐ-παύσ-θησαν
2nd (strong) aorist		I took	I took for myself	I was taken
<i>sg</i>	1	ἔ-λαβ-ον	ἐ-λαβ-όμην	ἐ-λήφ-θην
	2	ἔ-λαβ-ες	ἐ-λάβ-ου	ἐ-λήφ-θης
	3	ἔ-λαβ-ε(ν)	ἐ-λάβ-ετο	ἐ-λήφ-θη
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐ-λάβ-ομεν	ἐ-λαβ-όμεθα	ἐ-λήφ-θημεν
	2	ἐ-λάβ-ετε	ἐ-λάβ-εσθε	ἐ-λήφ-θητε
	3	ἔ-λάβ-ον	ἐ-λάβ-οντο	ἐ-λήφ-θησαν

---

### Imperatives

	<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>
present		
	stop! ( <i>generally</i> )	cease! ( <i>generally</i> )
<i>sg</i>	παύε	παύου
<i>pl</i>	παύετε	παύεσθε
first (weak) aorist		
	stop! ( <i>one occasion</i> )	cease! ( <i>one occasion</i> )
<i>sg</i>	παῦσον	παῦσαι
<i>pl</i>	παύσατε	παύσασθε
second (strong) aorist		
	take! ( <i>one occasion</i> )	take for yourself! ( <i>one occasion</i> )
<i>sg</i>	λάβέ	λαβοῦ
<i>pl</i>	λάβετε	λάβεσθε

---



Infinitives					
		<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>	
			<i>middle/passive</i>		
present		παύειν to stop	παύεσθαι to cease	παύεσθαι to be stopped	
future		παύσειν to be about to stop	παύσεσθαι to be about to cease	παυσθήσεσθαι to be about to be stopped	
first (weak) aorist		παύσαι to stop ( <i>once</i> )/ to have stopped	παύσασθαι to cease ( <i>once</i> )/ to have ceased	παυσθῆναι to be stopped ( <i>once</i> )/ to have been stopped	
second (strong) aorist		λαβεῖν to take ( <i>once</i> )/ to have taken	λαβέσθαι to take for oneself ( <i>once</i> )/ to have taken for oneself	ληφθῆναι to be taken ( <i>once</i> )/ to have been taken	
Relation of indicative/imperative/infinitive/participle:					
		<i>indicative</i> (1 sg)	<i>imperative</i> (sg)	<i>infinitive</i>	<i>participle</i> (m nom sg)
present	<i>active</i> <i>middle</i> <i>passive</i>	παύω παύομαι (all same as middle)	παύε παύου	παύειν παύεσθαι	παύων παυόμενος
future	<i>active</i> <i>middle</i> <i>passive</i>	παύσω παύσομαι παυσθήσομαι	- - -	παύσειν παύσεσθαι παυσθήσεσθαι	παύσων παυσόμενος παυσθησόμενος
imperfect	<i>active</i> <i>middle</i> <i>passive</i>	ἔπαυον ἔπαυόμην (same as middle)	- -	- -	- -
1st (weak) aor	<i>active</i> <i>middle</i> <i>passive</i>	ἔπαυσα ἔπαυσάμην ἔπαύσθην	παύσον παύσαι (παύσθητι)	παύσαι παύσασθαι παυσθῆναι	παύσας παυσάμενος παυσθείς
2nd (strong) aor	<i>active</i> <i>middle</i> <i>passive</i>	ἔλαβον ἔλαβόμην ἐλήφθην	λαβέ λαβοῦ (λήφθητι)	λαβεῖν λαβέσθαι ληφθῆναι	λαβών λαβόμενος ληφθείς

## Subjunctive forms

		<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
present				<i>middle/passive</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	παύ-ω		παύ-ωμαι
	2	παύ-ης		παύ-ῃ
	3	παύ-ῃ		παύ-ῃται
<i>pl</i>	1	παύ-ωμεν		παυ-ώμεθα
	2	παύ-ητε		παύ-ησθε
	3	παύ-ωσι(ν)		παύ-ωνται
1st (weak) aorist				
<i>sg</i>	1	παύσ-ω	παύσ-ωμαι	παυσ-θῶ
	2	παύσ-ης	παύσ-ῃ	παυσ-θῆς
	3	παύσ-ῃ	παύσ-ῃται	παυσ-θῇ
<i>pl</i>	1	παύσ-ωμεν	παυσ-ώμεθα	παυσ-θώμεν
	2	παύσ-ητε	παύσ-ησθε	παυσ-θήτε
	3	παύσ-ωσι(ν)	παύσ-ωνται	παυσ-θῶσι(ν)
2nd (strong) aorist				
<i>sg</i>	1	λάβ-ω	λάβ-ωμαι	ληφ-θῶ
	2	λάβ-ης	λάβ-ῃ	ληφ-θῆς
	3	λάβ-ῃ	λάβ-ῃται	ληφ-θῇ
<i>pl</i>	1	λάβ-ωμεν	λαβ-ώμεθα	ληφ-θώμεν
	2	λάβ-ητε	λάβ-ησθε	ληφ-θήτε
	3	λάβ-ωσι(ν)	λάβ-ωνται	ληφ-θῶσι(ν)

## Optative forms

present		<i>active</i>		<i>middle/passive</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	παύ-οιμι		παυ-οίμην
	2	παύ-οις		παύ-οιο
	3	παύ-οι		παύ-οιτο
<i>pl</i>	1	παύ-οιμεν		παυ-οίμεθα
	2	παύ-οιτε		παύ-οισθε
	3	παύ-οιεν		παύ-οιντο
future		<i>active</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>passive</i>
<i>sg</i>	1	παύσ-οιμι	παυσ-οίμην	παυσθησ-οίμην
		etc	etc	etc
1st (weak) aorist				
<i>sg</i>	1	παύσ-αιμι	παυσ-αίμην	παυσ-θείην
	2	παύσ-ειας/-αις	παύσ-αιο	παυσ-θείης
	3	παύσ-ειε(ν)/-αι	παύσ-αιτο	παυσ-θείη
<i>pl</i>	1	παύσ-αιμεν	παυσ-αίμεθα	παυσ-θεῖμεν
	2	παύσ-αιτε	παύσ-αισθε	παυσ-θεῖτε
	3	παύσ-ειαν/-αιεν	παύσ-αιντο	παυσ-θεῖεν
2nd (strong) aorist				
<i>sg</i>	1	<i>active</i> λάβ-οιμι	<i>middle</i> λαβ-οίμην	<i>passive</i> ληφ-θείην
		etc	etc	etc

## Verbs (2): contracted (ending in -αω, -εω)

(a) With alpha contraction

Rules of contraction:

α followed by an *e* sound (ε or η) becomes long α

α followed by an *o* sound (ο or ω) becomes ω

ι becomes subscript, and υ disappears

		I honour			
present		<i>active</i>		<i>middle/passive</i>	
sg	1	τιμ-ῶ		τιμ-ῶμαι	
	2	τιμ-ῆς		τιμ-ῆ	
	3	τιμ-ῇ		τιμ-ᾶται	
pl	1	τιμ-ῶμεν		τιμ-ώμεθα	
	2	τιμ-ᾶτε		τιμ-ᾶσθε	
	3	τιμ-ῶσι(ν)		τιμ-ῶνται	
<i>participle</i>		τιμῶν -ῶσα -ῶν		τιμώμενος -η -ον	
		(stem τιμωντ-)			
<i>infinitive</i>		τιμᾶν		τιμᾶσθαι	
<i>imperative</i>		sg τίμα pl τιμᾶτε		sg τιμῶ pl τιμᾶσθε	
imperfect					
sg	1	ἐ-τίμ-ων		ἐ-τιμ-ώμην	
	2	ἐ-τίμ-ας		ἐ-τιμ-ῶ	
	3	ἐ-τίμ-α		ἐ-τιμ-ᾶτο	
pl	1	ἐ-τιμ-ῶμεν		ἐ-τιμ-ώμεθα	
	2	ἐ-τιμ-ᾶτε		ἐ-τιμ-ᾶσθε	
	3	ἐ-τίμ-ων		ἐ-τιμ-ῶντο	
present subjunctive					
		<i>active</i>		<i>middle/passive</i>	
sg	1	τιμ-ῶ		τιμ-ῶμαι	
	2	τιμ-ῆς		τιμ-ῆ	
	3	etc: as indicative	etc: as indicative	τιμ-ῶη	τιμ-ῶτο
pl	1			τιμ-ῶμεν	τιμ-ῶμεθα
	2			τιμ-ῶτε	τιμ-ῶσθε
	3			τιμ-ῶεν	τιμ-ῶντο
present optative					
		<i>active</i>		<i>middle/passive</i>	
sg	1	τιμ-ῶ		τιμ-ῶην	τιμ-ῶμην
	2	τιμ-ῆς		τιμ-ῶης	τιμ-ῶο
	3	etc: as indicative	etc: as indicative	τιμ-ῶη	τιμ-ῶτο
pl	1			τιμ-ῶμεν	τιμ-ῶμεθα
	2			τιμ-ῶτε	τιμ-ῶσθε
	3			τιμ-ῶεν	τιμ-ῶντο
Other tenses					
		<i>active</i>		<i>middle</i>	
				<i>passive</i>	
				<i>middle/passive</i>	
future		τιμήσω		τιμήσομαι	τιμηθήσομαι
1st (weak) aor		ἐτίμησα		ἐτιμήσαμην	ἐτιμήθην

(b) With epsilon contraction

Rules of contraction:

ε followed by ε becomes ει

ε followed by ο becomes ου

ε followed by a long vowel or diphthong disappears

		I like, I love			
present		active		middle/passive	
sg	1	φιλ-ῶ		φιλ-οῦμαι	
	2	φιλ-εῖς		φιλ-ῇ or εἰ	
	3	φιλ-εῖ		φιλ-εῖται	
pl	1	φιλ-οῦμεν		φιλ-οὔμεθα	
	2	φιλ-εῖτε		φιλ-εῖσθε	
	3	φιλ-οῦσι(ν)		φιλ-οὔνται	
participle		φιλῶν -οῦσα -οῦν (stem φιλουντ-)		φιλούμενος -η -ον	
infinitive		φιλεῖν		φιλεῖσθαι	
imperative		sg φίλει pl φιλεῖτε		sg φιλοῦ pl φιλεῖσθε	
imperfect					
sg	1	ἐ-φίλ-ουν		ἐ-φιλ-ούμην	
	2	ἐ-φίλ-εις		ἐ-φιλ-οῦ	
	3	ἐ-φίλ-ει		ἐ-φιλ-εῖτο	
pl	1	ἐ-φίλ-οῦμεν		ἐ-φιλ-οὔμεθα	
	2	ἐ-φίλ-εῖτε		ἐ-φιλ-εῖσθε	
	3	ἐ-φίλ-ουν		ἐ-φιλ-οὔντο	
		present subjunctive		present optative	
		active	middle/passive	active	middle/passive
sg	1	φιλ-ῶ	φιλ-ῶμαι	φιλ-οίην	φιλ-οίμην
	2	φιλ-ῇς	φιλ-ῇ	φιλ-οίης	φιλ-οῖο
	3	φιλ-ῇ	φιλ-ῇται	φιλ-οίη	φιλ-οῖτο
pl	1	φιλ-ῶμεν	φιλ-ῶμεθα	φιλ-οῖμεν	φιλ-οῖμεθα
	2	φιλ-ῇτε	φιλ-ῇσθε	φιλ-οῖτε	φιλ-οῖσθε
	3	φιλ-ῶσι(ν)	φιλ-ῶνται	φιλ-οῖεν	φιλ-οῖντο
Other tenses					
		active	middle	passive	
			middle/passive		
future		φιλήσω	φιλήσομαι	φιληθήσομαι	
1st (weak) aor		ἐφίλησα	ἐφιλησάμην	ἐφιλήθην	

## Verbs (3): irregular

The verb *to be* - εἰμί = I am:

present		<i>indicative</i>	<i>subjunctive</i>	<i>optative</i>	
sg	1	εἰμί	ᾶ	εἶην	
	2	εἶ	ῆς	εἶης	
	3	ἐστί(ν)	ῆ	εἶη	
pl	1	ἐσμέν	ᾶμεν	εἶμεν	
	2	ἐστέ	ῆτε	εἶτε	
	3	εἰσί(ν)	ᾶσι(ν)	εἶεν	
participle		ὄν οὐσα ὄν ( <i>stem</i> ὄντ-)			
infinitive		εἶναι			
imperative		sg ἴσθι pl ἔσθε			
		imperfect	future		
sg	1	ῆ ( <i>or</i> ῆν)	ἔσομαι		
	2	ῆσθα	ἔσῃ ( <i>or</i> ἔσει)		
	3	ῆν	ἔσται		
pl	1	ῆμεν	ἔσόμεθα	<i>future participle</i>	ἔσόμενος -η -ον
	2	ῆτε	ἔσεσθε	<i>future infinitive</i>	ἔσεσθαι
	3	ῆσαν	ἔσονται	<i>future optative</i>	ἔσοίμην <i>etc</i>

εἰμι = I shall go (*used as future of* ἔρχομαι)

		<i>indicative</i>	<i>subjunctive</i>	<i>optative</i>	
<i>sg</i>	1	εἰμι	ῖω	ῖοιμι ( <i>or</i> ῖοίην)	
	2	εἶ	ῖης	ῖοις	
	3	εἴσι(ν)	ῖη	ῖοι	
<i>pl</i>	1	ῖμεν	ῖωμεν	ῖοιμεν	
	2	ῖτε	ῖητε	ῖοιτε	
	3	ῖασι(ν)	ῖωσι(ν)	ῖοιεν	
<i>participle</i>		ῖών ῖούσα ῖόν ( <i>stem</i> ῖοντ-)			
<i>infinitive</i>		ῖέναι			

Note that in parts other than the indicative the meaning is present rather than future.

(δίδωμι) *I give* (only future and aorist needed for GCSE)

		<i>future</i>	<i>aorist</i>	
		I shall give	I gave	
<i>sg</i>	1	δώσω	ἔδωκα	
	2	δώσεις	ἔδωκας	
	3	<i>etc: regular future</i>	ἔδωκε(ν)	
<i>pl</i>	1		ἔδομεν	
	2		ἔδοτε	
	3		ἔδοσαν	
		<i>future infinitive</i> δώσειν	<i>aorist infinitive</i> δοῦναι	

οἶδα = I know

present *indicative*

sg 1 οἶδα  
2 οἶσθα  
3 οἶδε(ν)

pl 1 ἴσμεν  
2 ἴστε  
3 ἴσασι(ν)

*infinitive* εἰδέναι

*participle* (3-1-3, stem εἰδοτ-)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
sg	nom	εἰδώς	εἰδυῖα	εἰδός
	acc	εἰδότα	εἰδυῖαν	εἰδός
	gen	εἰδότος	εἰδυίας	εἰδότος
	dat	εἰδότι	εἰδυίᾳ	εἰδότι
pl	nom	εἰδότες	εἰδυῖαι	εἰδότα
	acc	εἰδότας	εἰδυίας	εἰδότα
	gen	εἰδόντων	εἰδυῶν	εἰδόντων
	dat	εἰδόσι(ν)	εἰδυίαις	εἰδόσι(ν)

Note carefully the distinction between ἰδόντες *having seen* (aorist participle of ὁράω) and εἰδότες *knowing* (participle of οἶδα); from the same root, and originally a 'true perfect' meaning *having come to see* (both quoted in the masculine nominative plural).

φημί = I say

		<i>indicative</i>	<i>subjunctive</i>	<i>optative</i>
sg	1	φημί	φῶ	φαίην
	2	φῆς	φῆς	φαίης
	3	φησί(ν)	φῆ	φαίη
pl	1	φάμεν	φῶμεν	φαίμεν
	2	φάτε	φῆτε	φαίτε (or φαίητε)
	3	φάσι(ν)	φῶσι(ν)	φαίεν

*participle* φάσκων -ουσα -ον (stem φασκοντ)

*infinitive* φάναι

*imperative* sg φάθι pl φάτε

*imperfect* (used as simple past tense)

sg	1	ἔφην
	2	ἔφησθα
	3	ἔφη
pl	1	ἔφαμεν
	2	ἔφατε
	3	ἔφασαν

## Verbs (4): 30 important irregular aorists

<i>present</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist stem</i>
ἄγω	I lead	ἤγαγον	ἄγαγ-
αἱρέω	I take	εἶλον	έλ-
αἰσθάνομαι	I perceive	ἤσθόμην	αἰσθ-
ἀποθνήσκω	I die	ἀπέθανον	ἀποθαν-
ἀφικνέομαι	I arrive	ἀφικόμην	ἄφικ-
βαίνω	I go	ἔβην	(participle βάς, inf βῆναι)
βαλλω	I throw	ἔβαλον	βαλ-
γίγνομαι	I become, I happen	ἐγενόμην	γεν-
γινώσκω	I get to know	ἔγνων	(participle γνούς, inf γνῶναι)
ἔρχομαι	I come, I go	ἦλθον	έλθ-
ἐρωτάω	I ask (a question)	ἠρώτησα or ἠρόμην	ἐρωτησ- ἐρ-
ἐσθίω	I eat	ἔφαγον	φαγ-
εὕρισκω	I find	ἤυρον	εύρ-
ἔχω	I have, I hold	ἔσχον	σχ-
λαμβάνω	I take	ἔλαβον	λαβ-
λέγω	I say, I speak	εἶπον	εἰπ-
λείπω	I leave	ἔλιπον	λιπ-
μανθάνω	I learn	ἔμαθον	μαθ-
μάχομαι	I fight	ἐμαχέσαμην	μαχεσ-
ὁράω	I see	εἶδον	ἰδ-
πάσχω	I suffer	ἔπαθον	παθ-
πίπτω	I fall	ἔπεσον	πεσ-
πλέω	I sail	ἔπλευσα	πλευσ-
πράσσω	I do, I fare	ἔπραξα	πραξ-
πυνθάνομαι	I enquire; I find out	ἐπυθόμην	πυθ-
σώζω	I save	ἔσωσα	σωσ-
τρέχω	I run	ἔδραμον	δραμ-
ὑπισχνέομαι	I promise	ὑπεσχόμην	ὑποσχ-
φέρω	I carry, I bear	ἤνεγκα or -ον	ἐνεγκ-
φεύγω	I run away, I flee	ἔφυγον	φυγ-

---

### Quick revision: Top ten irregular aorists:

εἶλον	I took	(αἱρέω)
ἀπέθανον	I died, I was killed	(ἀποθνήσκω)
ἐγενόμην	I became	(γίγνομαι)
ἦλθον	I came, I went	(ἔρχομαι)
ἤυρον	I found	(εὕρισκω)
ἔσχον	I had	(ἔχω)
ἔλαβον	I took, I captured	(λαμβάνω)
εἶπον	I said	(λέγω)
εἶδον	I saw	(ὁράω)
ἤνεγκα	I carried	(φέρω)

---

## Verbs (5): reference list of tenses

- Where a particular form (usually the aorist passive) is not shown, it either does not exist or is uncommon and not needed for GCSE.
- Contracted verbs are as usual listed in the present tense in uncontracted form for clarity, but future tenses with epsilon contraction are shown in the contracted form in which they would be met in a passage (with the vowels that have been contracted indicated in brackets): see pages 72-3 and 81-2.

<i>present</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>future</i>	<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist passive</i>
ἀγγέλλω	I announce	ἀγγελῶ (εω)	ἡγγειλα	ἡγγέλθην
ἄγω	I lead	ἄξω	ἡγαγον	ἡχθην
ἀδικέω	I act unjustly (to)	ἀδικήσω	ἡδίκησα	ἡδίκηθην
αἰρέω	I take	αἰρήσω	εἶλον	ἡρέθην
αἰσθάνομαι	I perceive	αἰσθήσομαι	ἡσθόμην	-
αἰτέω	I ask for	αἰτήσω	ἡτησα	ἡτήθην
ἀκούω	I hear	ἀκούσομαι	ἡκουσα	ἡκούσθην
ἀναγκάζω	I force	ἀναγκάσω	ἡνάγκασα	-
ἀναχωρέω	I retreat	ἀναχωρήσω	ἀνεχώρησα	-
ἀποθνήσκω	I die, I am killed	ἀποθανοῦμαι (εο)	ἀπέθανον	-
ἀποκρίνομαι	I answer	ἀποκρινοῦμαι (εο)	ἀπεκρινάμην	-
ἀποκτείνω	I kill	ἀποκτενῶ (εω)	ἀπέκτεινα	-
ἄρχω	I rule ( <i>mid</i> I begin)	ἄρξω	ἡρξα	ἡρχθην
ἀφικνέομαι	I arrive	ἀφίξομαι	ἀφικόμην	-
βαίνω	I go	βήσομαι	ἔβην	-
βάλλω	I throw, I pelt	βαλῶ (εω)	ἔβαλον	ἐβλήθην
βλάπτω	I harm	βλάψω	ἔβλαψα	ἐβλάβην
βοάω	I shout	βοήσω	ἐβόησα	ἐβοήθην
βοηθέω	I (come to) help	βοηθήσω	ἐβοήθησα	-
βούλομαι	I wish, I want	βουλήσομαι	ἐβουλήθην ( <i>pass form, active sense</i> )	-
γελάω	I laugh (at)	γελάσομαι	ἐγέλασα	-
γίγνομαι	I become, I happen	γενήσομαι	ἐγενόμην	-
γινώσκω	I get to know	γνώσομαι	ἔγνων	ἐγνώσθην
γράφω	I write	γράψω	ἔγραψα	ἐγράφη
δακρύω	I cry	δακρύσω	ἐδάκρυσα	-
δεῖ	it is necessary	δεήσει	ἐδέησε(ν)	-
δέχομαι	I receive	δέξομαι	ἐδεξάμην	-
διαφθείρω	I destroy	διαφθερῶ (εω)	διέφθειρα	διεφθάρην
(δίδωμι)	I give	δώσω	ἔδωκα	-
διώκω	I chase	διώξομαι	ἐδίωξα	ἐδιώχθην
δοκεῖ (μοι)	I decide ( <i>lit</i> it seems good)	δόξει	ἔδοξε	-
ἐθέλω	I am willing	ἐθελήσω	ἡθέλησα	-
εἰμί	I am	ἔσομαι	( <i>imperf ἦ or ἦν</i> )	-
εἰσβάλλω	I invade	εἰσβαλῶ (εω)	εἰσέβαλον	-
ἐλπίζω	I hope	ἐλπιδῶ (εω)	ἡλπισα	-
ἔξεστι(ν)	it is possible	ἔξεσται	ἔξῃν	-
ἐπομαι	I follow	ἐψομαι	ἐσπόμην	-
ἐρχομαι	I go, I come	εἶμι	ἦλθον	-
ἐρωτάω	I ask (a question)	ἐρωτήσω	ἠρόμην ( <i>or ἠρώτησα</i> )	-



ἐσθίω	I eat	ἔδομαι	ἔφαγον	-
εὕρισκω	I find	εὕρησω	ἠύρον	ἠύρεθην
ἔχω	I have	σχήσω	ἔσχον	-
θάπτω	I bury	θάψω	ἔθαψα	-
θαυμάζω	I am amazed (at)	θαυμάσομαι	ἐθαύμασα	ἐθαυμάσθην
θύω	I sacrifice	θύσω	ἔθυσα	ἐτύθην
καθεύδω	I sleep	καθευδήσω	(imperf ἐκάθευδον or καθηύδον) -	
καθίζω	I sit	καθιῶ (εω)	ἐκάθισα	-
καίω	I burn	καύσω	ἔκαυσα	ἐκαύθην
καλέω	I call	καλῶ (εω)	ἐκάλεσα	ἐκλήθην
κελεύω	I order	κελεύσω	ἐκέλευσα	ἐκελεύσθην
κλέπτω	I steal	κλέψω	ἔκλεψα	-
κολάζω	I punish	κολάσω	ἐκόλασα	ἐκολάσθην
κόπτω	I cut, I knock	κόψω	ἔκοψα	-
κρύπτω	I hide	κρύψω	ἔκρυψα	ἐκρύφθην
κτάομαι	I obtain	κτήσομαι	ἐκτησάμην	-
κωλύω	I hinder, I prevent	κωλύσω	ἐκώλυσα	ἐκωλύθην
λαμβάνω	I take	λήψομαι	ἔλαβον	ἐλήφθην
λέγω	I say, I speak	ἐρῶ (εω) (or λέξω)	εἶπον (or ἔλεξα)	ἐρρήθην (or ἐλέχθην)
λείπω	I leave	λείψω	ἔλιπον	ἐλείφθην
λύω	I release	λύσω	ἔλυσα	ἐλύθην
μανθάνω	I learn	μαθήσομαι	ἔμαθον	-
μάχομαι	I fight	μαχοῦμαι (εο)	ἐμαχασάμην	-
μέλλω	I am about to	μελλήσω	ἐμέλλησα	-
μένω	I stay	μενῶ (εω)	ἔμεινα	-
μισέω	I hate	μισήσω	ἐμίσησα	ἐμισήθην
νικάω	I conquer, I win	νικήσω	ἐνίκησα	ἐνίκηθην
νομίζω	I think, I consider	νομιῶ (εω)	ἐνόμισα	-
ὁράω	I see	ὄψομαι	εἶδον	ὤφθην
ὀργίζομαι	I get angry	ὀργιῶμαι (εο)	ὠργίσθην (pass form, active sense)	
παρασκευάζω	I prepare	παρασκευάσω	παρεσκεύασα	παρεσκευάσθην
παρέχω	I provide, I produce	παρέξω	παρέσχον	-
πάσχω	I suffer	πείσομαι	ἔπαθον	-
παύω	I stop (mid I cease)	παύσω	ἔπαυσα	ἐπαύσθην
πείθω	I persuade	πείσω	ἔπεισα	ἐπείσθην
πειράομαι	I try	πειράσομαι	ἐπειράθην (pass form, active sense)	
πέμπω	I send	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	ἐπέμφθην
πίπτω	I fall	πεσοῦμαι (εο)	ἔπεσον	-
πιστεύω	I believe, I trust	πιστεύσω	ἐπίστευσα	-
πλέω	I sail	πλεύσομαι	ἔπλευσα	-
ποιέω	I make, I do	ποιήσω	ἐποίησα	ἐποιήθην
πορεύομαι	I march	πορεύσομαι	ἐπορεύθην (pass form, active sense)	
πράσσω	I do, I fare	πράξω	ἔπραξα	ἐπράχθην
προσβάλλω	I attack	προσβαλῶ (εω)	προσέβαλον	-
πυνθάνομαι	I enquire, I find out	πεύσομαι	ἐπυνθόμην	-
συλλέγω	I collect	συλλέξω	συνέλεξα	-
σώζω	I save	σώσω	ἔσωσα	ἐσώθην
τιμάω	I honour	τιμήσω	ἐτίμησα	ἐτιμήθην

τρέχω	I run	δραμοῦμαι (εο)	ἔδραμον	-
ὑπισχνέομαι	I promise	ὑποσχήσομαι	ὑπεσχόμην	-
φαίνομαι	I appear	φανοῦμαι (εο)	ἐφάνθην ( <i>pass form, active sense</i> )	-
φέρω	I carry	οἶσω	ἤνεγκα	ἤνεχθην
φεύγω	I run away, I flee	φεύξομαι	ἔφυγον	-
φημί	I say	φήσω	( <i>imperf ἔφην</i> )	-
φιλέω	I love, I like	φιλήσω	ἐφίλησα	ἐφιλήθην
φοβέομαι	I fear	φοβήσομαι	ἐφοβήθην ( <i>pass form, active sense</i> )	-
φονεύω	I murder, I kill	φονεύσω	ἐφόνευσα	ἐφονεύθην
φυλάσσω	I guard	φυλάξω	ἐφύλαξα	ἐφυλάχθην
χράομαι	I use	χρήσομαι	ἐχρησάμην	-
χρή	it is necessary	-	( <i>imperf [ἐ]χρήν</i> )	-

## Appendix 1: Uses of the definite article

### 1 With a noun:

Like English *the* (for *a*, Greek puts nothing or uses *τις*), but also used in some places where English would omit it: for general classes (οἱ δοῦλοι *slaves* [as a class]) and abstractions (ὁ χρόνος *time*) and with proper names (ὁ Ζεὺς *Zeus*); also see 10 and 11 below. The article helpfully indicates the number/gender/case of a noun: e.g. τὸν βασιλέα tells you *the king* is masculine accusative singular, even if you are unsure how βασιλεύς declines.

### 2 With an adjective, to make a noun:

οἱ ἐλεύθεροι *the free, free men*; τὸ ἀληθές (*the*) *truth*.

### 3 With adverbs:

οἱ ἐκεῖ *men/people there*; αἱ νῦν *women now, women of today*.

### 4 With a preposition phrase:

οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ *the men on the island*; τὰ ἐν τῇ πόλει (*the*) *affairs in the city*.

### 5 With a participle, often instead of relative clause:

οἱ διώκοντες *those pursuing, the pursuers*; αἱ ἀκούσασαι *the women who heard*.

### 6 Sandwiched (to tell you *which one*):

ἡ τοῦ ἱατροῦ οἰκία *the of-the-doctor house* i.e. *the doctor's house* (note how the genitive sandwich is marked by two forms of the article next to each other); ὁ σοφὸς γέρων *the wise old man*.

### 7 Repeated, with same effect as sandwich (either of these uses is called 'bound' position, because the description is fastened to the noun, specifying which one):

ἡ οἰκία ἡ τοῦ ἱατροῦ literally *the house the (one) of the doctor*, i.e. *the doctor's house*; ὁ γέρων ὁ σοφός *the old man the wise (one)*, i.e. *the wise old man*; ὁ δοῦλος ὁ φεύγων *the fleeing slave*.

### 8 With μέν ... δε (important, and can be hard to spot):

οἱ μὲν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔμεινον, οἱ δὲ ἔφυγον *some of the soldiers stayed, others fled*  
Distinguish this from the use simply of μέν .. δέ to express a contrast (literally *on the one hand ... on the other*, but better to put nothing in the first bit and *but* at the start of the second): ἀνδρείως μὲν ἐμαχέσατο, μωρῶς δὲ εἶπεν *he fought bravely but spoke stupidly*.

### 9 With δέ, starting new sentence (or clause after colon), marking change of subject:

ἐκάλεσα τὸν δοῦλον· ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἤκουσεν *I called the slave; but he did not hear*.

### 10 Redundant (i.e. English would not have *the*) and sandwiched with possessive adjectives:

οἱ ἡμέτεροι στρατιῶται *our soldiers*.

### 11 Redundant and not sandwiched with demonstratives:

οὗτος ὁ ξένος *this stranger*; ἐκεῖναι αἱ νῆες *those ships*.

## Appendix 2: Uses of αὐτός

### (1) *self*

- can be used with a noun (with the article but not sandwiched)  
ὁ δοῦλος αὐτός *the slave himself* (usually same order as equivalent English)
- or on its own as a pronoun, not necessarily third person  
αὐτοὶ ἀφικόμεθα *we ourselves arrived*
- this must be the meaning if part of αὐτός comes first word in a sentence or clause, or is on its own as a pronoun in the nominative

### (2) *the same*

- comes immediately after the definite article
- can be used with a noun (sandwiched with the article)  
ὁ αὐτὸς δοῦλος *the same slave* (same order as equivalent English)
- or on its own as a pronoun  
τὰ αὐτὰ ἀδθις εἶπον *they said the same things again*
- the easiest of the three meanings to spot, but the least common

### (3) *him/her/it/them*

- on its own as a pronoun, never nominative, always third person  
εἶδομεν αὐτούς *we saw them*
- never first word in sentence or clause
- this meaning is the most common of the three

---

## Appendix 3: Words identifying constructions

**ὅτι** (*that*) introduces an indirect statement after a verb of *saying*:

ὁ ἄγγελος εἶπεν ὅτι οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ἔφυγον.

*The messenger said that the prisoners had fled.*

Verbs of thinking (and φημί) take an infinitive; verbs of perceiving take a participle.

**ὥς** (i) Introducing a clause *when/as/because* (similar to use of ἐπεί):

ὥς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων στρατιὰν εἶδομεν, πάντες ἐφοβήθημεν.

*When we saw the enemy's army, we were all scared.*

(ii) With past or present participle also *when/as/because*:

αἱ γυναῖκες ἀπήλθον ὥς τοὺς ἀνδρας ἰδοῦσαι.

*The women went away because they had seen the men.*

(iii) With future participle expresses purpose:

πολλοὶ ἀφίκοντο ὥς τὸν βασιλέα ὀψόμενοι.

*Many people arrived (in order) to see the king.*

**ἵνα** (*in order to*) with subjunctive or (more often, after past tense main verb) optative in a purpose clause:

πολλοὶ ἀφίκοντο ἵνα τὸν βασιλέα ἴδοιεν.

*Many people arrived (in order) to see the king.*

**ὥστε** (= [with the result] that) in a result clause:

ὁ παῖς οὕτω ταχέως ἔδραμεν ὥστε ὑπὸ πάντων ἐθαυμάζετο.

*The boy ran so fast that he was admired by everyone.*

**ἐάν** (= if) in a future open condition, with subjunctive then future (*if X happens, Y will happen*):

ἐάν ὁ πατήρ εὑρῇ τὴν ἐπιστολήν, εὐθὺς πέμψει μοι.

*If my father finds the letter, he will immediately send it to me.*

**εἰ** (= if) ... **ἂν** in a past closed condition, with two aorists (*if X had happened, Y would have happened*):

εἰ ὁ πατήρ ἦύρε τὴν ἐπιστολήν, εὐθὺς ἂν ἔπεμψε μοι.

*If my father had found the letter, he would have immediately sent it to me.*

## Appendix 4: Words easily confused

αἰτέω	I ask for, I beg	ἡμέτερος	our
αἵτιος	responsible, to blame for (+ <i>gen</i> )	ὕμετερος	your (of you <i>pl</i> )
ἀληθής	true	ἴθι	go! ( <i>sg</i> )
ἀσθενής	weak	ἴσθι	be! ( <i>sg</i> )
ἀσφαλής	safe	καλέω	I call
ἀνδρεῖος	brave	κελεύω	I order
άνήρ -δρός	man	ναύς	ship
ἀποθνήσκω	I die, I am killed	ναύτης	sailor
ἀποκτείνω	I kill	ναυτικόν	fleet
γίγνομαι	I become	νησος	island
γιγνώσκω	I get to know	νόμος	law, custom
εἰ	if	νόσος	disease
εἰ	you ( <i>sg</i> ) are	οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ)	not
εἰμί	I am	οὖν	therefore
εἴμι	I shall go ( <i>fut of ἔρχομαι</i> )	ποῖος;	what sort of?
εἰς	into (+ <i>acc</i> )	πόσος;	how big? ( <i>pl</i> : how many?)
εἷς	one ( <i>m nom sg</i> )	πολέμιοι	enemy
εἰσί(ν)	they are	πόλεμος	war
εἴσι(ν)	he/she/it will go	πόλις	city
ἐν	in (+ <i>dat</i> )	πολίτης	citizen
ὓν	one ( <i>n nom sg</i> )	πολύς	much
ἐξ	out of (+ <i>gen</i> )	πολλοί	many
ἕξ	six	ποῦ;	where (at)?
ἐπεὶ	when, since	ποῖ;	where to?
ἔπειτα	then, next	πόθεν;	where from?
εὐθύς	immediately	πότε;	when?
εὐρύς	broad	πῶς;	how?
ἤθελον	I was willing ( <i>imperf of ἐθέλω</i> )	στρατηγός	general
ἦλθον	I came ( <i>aor of ἔρχομαι</i> )	στρατιώτης	soldier
ἡμεῖς	we	στρατιά	army
ὕμεῖς	you ( <i>pl</i> )	ταχύς	fast
		τείχος	wall
		τοιοῦτος	of such a sort
		τοσοῦτος	so big ( <i>pl</i> : so many)

# Vocabulary

## English to Greek

*Verbs are usually given with present and aorist.*

*Nouns are given with nominative and genitive, and article to show gender.*

*Adjectives are given with masculine, feminine, and neuter (if there are only two endings, there is no separate feminine: the feminine is the same as the masculine).*

*\* = comes second word in sentence or clause.*

able, I am	οἶός τ' εἰμί
about	περί (+ gen)
about to, I am	μέλλω (+ fut inf)
according to	κατά (+ acc)
account of, on	διὰ (+ acc)
act unjustly (to), I	ἀδικέω ἡδίκησα
admire, I	θαυμάζω ἐθαύμασα
afraid (of), I am	φοβέομαι ἐφοβήθην
after ( <i>prep</i> )	μετά (+ acc)
after ( <i>introducing a clause</i> )	( <i>use aor participle</i> )
after a short time, soon	δι' ὀλίγου
again	αὖθις
against	ἐπί (+ acc)
agora	ἀγορά -ᾱς ἡ
all	πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-)
ally	σύμμαχος -ου ὁ
alone	μόνος -η -ον
already	ἤδη
also	καί
although	καίπερ (+ participle)
always	ἀεὶ
am, I	εἰμί
amazed (at), I am	θαυμάζω ἐθαύμασα
among	ἐν (+ dat)
and	καί, δέ*
angry, I get	ὀργίζομαι ὀργίσθην (with, + dat)
announce, I	ἀγγέλλω ἡγγείλα
another	ἄλλος -η -ο
answer, I	ἀποκρίνομαι ἀπεκρινάμην
appear, I	φαίνομαι ἐφάνην
approach, I	προσέρχομαι προσήλθον, προσβαίνω προσέβην
arms, armour	ὄπλα -ων τά
army	στρατιά -ᾱς ἡ
arrive, I	ἀφικνέομαι ἀφικόμην
as	ὥς
as quickly as possible	ὥς τάχιστα
ask (a question), I	ἐρωτάω ἠρώτησα or ἠρόμην
ask for, I	αἰτέω ἤτησα
assemble (people/things), I	συλλέγω συνέλεξα
assembly	ἐκκλησία -ας ἡ
at first	πρῶτον
at least	γε*
Athenians	Ἀθηναῖοι -ων οἱ

attack, I	προσβάλλω προσέβαλον (+ <i>dat</i> )
bad	κακός -ή -όν
barbarians	βάρβαροι -ων οἱ
battle	μάχη -ης ἡ
be, to	εἶναι
beautiful	καλός -ή -όν
because	διότι, ὥς ( <i>or use participle</i> )
because of	διὰ (+ <i>acc</i> )
become, I	γίνομαι ἐγενόμην
before ( <i>adv</i> previously)	πρότερον
before ( <i>prep</i> in front of/prior to)	πρό (+ <i>gen</i> )
begin, I	ἄρχομαι ἡρξάμην (+ <i>gen</i> )
beginning	ἀρχή -ῆς ἡ
behalf of, on	ὑπέρ (+ <i>gen</i> )
believe (in), I	πιστεύω ἐπίστευσα (+ <i>dat</i> )
best	ἄριστος -η -ον
better	ἀμείνων -ον (ἀμεινον-)
big	μέγας μεγάλη μέγα (μεγαλ-)
bigger	μείζων -ον (μειζον-)
biggest, very big	μέγιστος -η -ον
body	σῶμα -ατος τό
body, dead	νεκρός -οῦ ὁ
both ... and	τε* ... καί, καί ... καί
boy	παῖς παιδός ὁ
brave	ἀνδρεῖος -α -ον
broad	εὐρύς -εῖα -ύ
burn, I	καίω ἔκαυσα
bury, I	θάπτω ἔθαψα
but	ἀλλά, δέ*
by (a person <i>as agent</i> )	ὑπό (+ <i>gen</i> )
by land	κατὰ γῆν
call, I	καλέω ἐκάλεσα
can, I	οἶός τ' εἰμί
capture, I	λαμβάνω ἔλαβον
carry, I	φέρω ἤνεγκα
cavalry	ἵππεις -έων οἱ
cavalryman	ἵππεύς -έως ὁ
cease, I	παύομαι ἐπαυσάμην
certain, a	τις τι (τιν-)
chase, I	διώκω ἐδίωξα
child	παῖς παιδός ὁ/ἡ
citizen	πολίτης -ου ὁ
city, city-state	πόλις -εως ἡ
collect (something), I	συλλέγω συνέλεξα
come, I	ἔρχομαι ἦλθον
compel, I	ἀναγκάζω ἠνάγκασα
concerning	περί (+ <i>gen</i> )
conquer, I	νικάω ἐνίκησα
consider (think to be so), I	νομίζω ἐνόμισα,
contrary to	παρά (+ <i>acc</i> )
corpse	νεκρός -οῦ ὁ
council	βουλή -ῆς ἡ

country, land	χώρα -ας ή
cry, I	δακρύω ἐδάκρυσα
custom	νόμος -ου ό
danger	κίνδυνος -ου ό
dangerous	χαλεπός -ή -όν
daughter	θυγάτηρ -τρος ή
day	ήμέρα -ας ή
dead body	νεκρός -ού ό
death	θάνατος -ου ό
decide, I	(= it seems good to me) δοκεῖ ἔδοξε (+ <i>dat.</i> , <i>e.g.</i> μοι)
deed	ἔργον -ου τό
despite (being)	καίπερ (+ <i>participle</i> )
destroy, I	διαφθείρω διέφθαιρα
die, I	ἀποθνήσκω ἀπέθανον
difficult	χαλεπός -ή -όν
disaster	συμφορά -άς ή
disease	νόσος -ου ή
do, I	πράσσω ἐπραξα, ποιέω ἐποίησα
do wrong (to), I	ἀδικέω ἡδίκησα
doctor	ἰατρός -ού ό
door	θύρα -ας ή
down	κατά (+ <i>acc</i> )
down from	κατά (+ <i>gen</i> )
each	ἕκαστος -η -ον
easier	ῥάων -ον (ῥαον-)
easiest	ῥάστος -η -ον
easy	ῥάδιος -α -ον
eat, I	ἐσθίω ἔφαγον
eight	ὀκτώ
either ... or	ἢ ... ἢ
empire	ἀρχή -ης ή
enemy (in war)	πολέμιοι -ων οἱ
escape, I	ἐκφεύγω ἐξέφυγον
especially	μάλιστα
even	καί
evening	ἐσπέρα -ας ή
every	πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-), (= each) ἕκαστος -η -ον
except	πλήν (+ <i>gen</i> )
experience, I	πάσχω ἔπαθον
fair (with justice)	δίκαιος -α -ον
faithful	πιστός -ή -όν
fall, I	πίπτω ἔπεσον
fall into, I	εἰσπίπτω εἰσέπεσον
fare, I	πράσσω ἐπραξα ( <i>foll adv</i> )
father	πατήρ -τρός ό
fear	φόβος -ου ό
fear, I	φοβέομαι ἐφοβήθην
few	ὀλίγοι -αι -α
fewer	ἐλάσσονες -α
fewest	ἐλάχιστοι -αι -α
field	ἀγρός -ού ό

fifth	πέμπτος -η -ον
fight, I	μάχομαι έμαχέσασμην
finally	τέλος
find, I	εύρίσκω ήύρον
find out, I	γινώσκω έγνων, ( <i>implying</i> by enquiry) πυνθάνομαι έπυθόμην
fine	καλός -ή -όν
fire	πύρ πυρός τό
first ( <i>adj</i> )	πρώτος -η -ον
first ( <i>adv</i> ), at first	πρώτον
five	πέντε
flee, I	φεύγω έφυγον
fleet	ναυτικόν -οῦ τό
follow, I	έπομαι έσπόμην (+ <i>dat</i> )
food	σίτος -ου ό
foolish	μώρος -α -ον
foot	πούς ποδός ό
for ( <i>giving explanation</i> )	γάρ*
force	βία -ας ή
force, I	άναγκάζω ήνάγκασα
foreigner	ξένος -ου ό
forest	ύλη -ης ή
fortunate	εύτυχής -ές
four	τέσσαρες τέσσαρα
fourth	τέταρτος -η -ον
free	έλεύθερος -α -ον
friend	φίλος -ου ό
from	άπό (+ <i>gen</i> )
from where?	πόθεν;
front of, in	πρό (+ <i>gen</i> )
gate	πύλη -ης ή
general	στρατηγός -οῦ ό
get, I	κτάομαι έκτησάμην
get angry, I	όργίζομαι ώργίσθην ( <i>with</i> , + <i>dat</i> )
get to know, I	γινώσκω έγνων
gift	δώνον -ου τό
girl	παῖς παιδός ή
give, I	(δίδωμι) <i>fut</i> δώσω <i>aor</i> έδωκα
go, I	έρχομαι ήλθον, βαίνω έβην
go, I shall	είμι
go away, I	άποβαίνω άπέβην
go out, I	έκβαίνω έξέβην
go to(wards), I	προσβαίνω προσέβην
god	θεός -οῦ ό
goddess	θεά -άς ή
going to, I am	μέλλω (+ <i>fut inf</i> )
gold	χρυσός -οῦ ό
good	άγαθός -ή -όν
Greek, Greek man	Έλλην -ηνος ό
guard	φύλαξ -ακος ό
guard, I	φυλάσσω έφύλαξα
guest	ξένος -ου ό
guide	ήγεμών -όνος ό



hand	χείρ χειρός ή
happen, I	γίνομαι ἐγενόμην
harbour	λιμήν -ένος ό
harm, I	βλάπτω ἐβλαψα
hate, I	μισέω ἐμίσησα
have, I	ἔχω ἔσχον
head	κεφαλή -ής ή
hear, I	ἀκούω ἤκουσα (+ <i>acc of thing, gen of person</i> )
help, I	( <i>often implying come/run to help</i> ) βοηθέω ἐβοήθησα (+ <i>dat</i> )
her ( <i>acc pronoun</i> )	αὐτήν
here	ἐνθάδε
herself ( <i>reflexive</i> )	ἐαυτήν
hide (something), I	κρύπτω ἔκρυψα
high	ὕψηλός -ή -όν
him	αὐτόν
himself ( <i>reflexive</i> )	ἐαυτόν
hinder, I	κωλύω ἐκώλυσα
hit (pelt), I	βάλλω ἐβαλον
holy	ἱερός -ά -όν
honour	τιμή -ής ή
honour, i	τιμάω ἐτίμησα
hope, I	ἐλπίζω ἤλπισα (+ <i>fut inf</i> )
horse	ἵππος -ου ό
horseman	ἵππεύς -έως ό
host	ξένος -ου ό
hostile (as personal enemy)	ἐχθρός -ά -όν
house	οἰκία -ας ή
how?	πῶς;
how big?	πόσος; -η; -ον;
how many?	πόσοι; -αι; -α;
however	μέντοι*
human being	ἄνθρωπος -ου ό/ή
husband	ἄνῆρ -δρός ό
I	ἐγώ
if	εἰ (+ <i>indicative</i> ), ( <i>in future open condition</i> ) ἔαν (+ <i>subjunctive</i> )
illness	νόσος -ου ή
immediately	εὐθύς
in	ἐν (+ <i>dat</i> )
in front of	πρό (+ <i>gen</i> )
in order to	ἵνα (+ <i>subjunctive or optative</i> ), ὥς (+ <i>future participle</i> )
in this way	οὕτω(ς)
indeed	δή
inhabitant	ἔνοικος -ου ό
intend, I	μέλλω (+ <i>fut inf</i> )
into	εἰς (+ <i>acc</i> )
invade, I	εἰσβάλλω εἰσέβαλον (+ <i>eis</i> + <i>acc</i> )
island	νῆσος -ου ή
it is necessary (for X to ...)	δεῖ <i>imperf</i> ἔδει (+ <i>acc</i> + <i>inf</i> ), ( <i>implying moral obligation</i> ) χρή <i>imperf</i> (ἐ)χρήν (+ <i>acc</i> + <i>inf</i> )
it is possible	ἔξεστι(ν) <i>imperf</i> ἔξῃν (+ <i>dat</i> )
journey	ὁδός -οῦ ή
just (with justice)	δίκαιος -α -ον

kill, I	ἀποκτείνω ἀπέκτεινα; (= murder) φονεύω ἐφόνευσα
killed, I am	ἀποθνήσκω ἀπέθανον
king	βασιλεύς -έως ὁ
know, I	οἶδα
know, I get to	γινώσκω ἔγνω
land (country)	χώρα -ας ἡ
land (earth)	γῆ γῆς ἡ
land, by	κατὰ γῆν
language	γλῶσσα -ης ἡ
later	ὕστερον
laugh, I	γελάω ἐγέλασα
law	νόμος -ου ὁ
lead, I	ἄγω ἡγαγον
lead out, I	ἐξάγω ἐξήγαγον
lead to(towards), I	προσάγω προσήγαγον
leader	ἡγεμών -όνος ὁ
learn, I	μανθάνω ἔμαθον
learn by enquiry, I	πυνθάνομαι ἐπυθόμην
least ( <i>adj</i> )	ἐλάχιστος -η -ον
least, at	γε*
leave, I	λείπω ἔλιπον
less	ἐλάσσων -ον (ἐλασσον-)
letter	ἐπιστολή -ης ἡ
like, I	φιλέω ἐφίλησα
listen (to), I	ἀκούω ἤκουσα (+ <i>acc of thing, gen of person</i> )
little of, a	ὀλίγος -η -ον
love, I	φιλέω ἐφίλησα
luck	τύχη -ης ἡ
lucky	εὐτυχής -ές
make, I	ποιέω ἐποίησα
man, human being	ἄνθρωπος -ου ὁ
man, male	ἄνθρωπος -δρός ὁ
manage, I	πράσσω ἔπραξα
many	πολλοί -αί -ά
march, I	πορεύομαι ἐπορεύθην
marketplace	ἀγορά -ας ἡ
master	δεσπότης -ου ὁ
messenger	ἄγγελος -ου ὁ
mine	ἐμός -ή -όν
money	χρήματα -ων τά
more (of) ( <i>sg</i> )	πλείων -ον (πλειον-)
more ( <i>pl</i> )	πλείονες -α
more ( <i>adv</i> )	μᾶλλον
most (of) ( <i>sg</i> )	πλείστος -η -ον
most ( <i>pl</i> )	πλείστοι -αι -α
mother	μήτηρ -τρος ἡ
mountain	ὄρος -ους τό
much	πολύς πολλή πολύ (πολλ-)
murder, I	φονεύω ἐφόνευσα
my	ἐμός -ή -όν
myself ( <i>reflexive</i> )	ἐμαυτόν -ήν

name	ὄνομα -ατος τό
necessary (for X to ...), it is	δεῖ imperf ἔδει (+ acc), (implying moral obligation) χρή imperf (ἐ)χρήν (+ acc)
neither ... nor	οὔτε ... οὔτε, μήτε ... μήτε
never	οὐδέποτε, μηδέποτε
new	νέος -α -ον
next	ἔπειτα
night	νύξ νυκτός ἡ
nine	ἐννέα
no ... , not any	οὐδεὶς οὐδεμία οὐδέν (οὐδεν-), μηδεὶς μηδεμία μηδέν (μηδεν-)
no-one	οὐδεὶς (οὐδεν-) οὐδεμία, μηδεὶς (μηδεν-) μηδεμία
not	οὐ (οὐκ before smooth breathing, οὐχ before rough breathing), (in contexts other than statements of fact) μή
not only ... but also	οὐ μόνον ... ἀλλὰ καί
nothing	οὐδέν, μηδέν
notice, I	αἰσθάνομαι ἡσθόμην
now (at this time)	νῦν
now (already, by now)	ἤδη
obtain, I	κτάομαι ἐκτησάμην
often	πολλάκις
old man	γέρων -οντος ὁ
on account of	διὰ (+ acc)
on behalf of	ὑπέρ (+ gen)
on the one hand ... on the other	μὲν* ... δέ*
one	εἷς μία ἓν (ἐν-)
only (adj)	μόνος -η -ον
only (adv)	μόνον
or	ἢ
order, I	κελεύω ἐκέλευσα
other	ἄλλος -η -ο
our	ἡμέτερος -α -ον
ourselves (reflexive)	ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς -άς
out of	ἐκ (ἐξ before vowel) (+ gen)
peace	εἰρήνη -ης ἡ
perceive, I	αἰσθάνομαι ἡσθόμην
person	ἄνθρωπος -ου ὁ/ἡ
persuade, I	πείθω ἔπεισα
plan	βουλή -ῆς ἡ
pleasant	ἡδύς -εῖα -ύ
possible, as quickly as	ὥς τάχιστα
possible, it is	ἔξεστι(ν) imperf ἔξῃν (+ dat)
power	ἄρχη -ῆς ἡ
prepare, I	παρασκευάζω παρεσκεύασα
prevent, I	κωλύω ἐκώλυσα (from, + gen or inf)
previously	πρότερον
prisoner (of war)	αἰχμάλωτος -ου ὁ
produce, I	παρέχω παρέσχον
promise, I	ὑπισχνέομαι ὑπεσχόμην (+ fut inf)
provide, I	παρέχω παρέσχον
punish, I	κολάζω ἐκόλασα
pursue, I	διώκω ἐδίωξα

quick	ταχύς -εἶα -ύ
quicker	θάσσων -ον (θασσον-)
quickest	τάχιστος -η -ον
quickly	ταχέως
quickly as possible, as	ὡς τάχιστα
rather	μᾶλλον
realise, I	γιγνώσκω ἔγνων
receive, I	δέχομαι ἐδεξάμην
recent	νέος -α -ον
release, I	λύω ἔλυσα
remain, I	μένω ἔμεινα
reply, I	ἀποκρίνομαι ἀπεκρινάμην
report, I	ἀγγέλλω ἡγγείλα
responsible	αἷτιος -α -ον
result, as a	ὥστε
retreat, I	ἀναχωρέω ἀνεχώρησα
rich	πλούσιος -α -ον
river	ποταμός -οῦ ὁ
road	ὁδός -οῦ ἡ
rule	ἀρχή -ῆς ἡ
rule, I	ἄρχω ἤρξα (+ gen)
run, I	τρέχω ἔδραμον
run away, I	φεύγω ἔφυγον
run out, I	ἐκτρέχω ἐξέδραμον
run to help, I	βοηθέω ἐβοήθησα (+ dat)
run to(wards), I	προστρέχω προσέδραμον
sacred	ἱερός -ά -όν
sacrifice, I	θύω ἔθυσα
safe	ἀσφαλής -ές
said, he/she ( <i>usu interrupting direct quotation</i> )	ἔφη
sail, I	πλέω ἔπλευσα
sailor	ναύτης -ου ὁ
same, the	ὁ αὐτός, ἡ αὐτή, τὸ αὐτό
save, I	σώζω ἔσωσα
saw, I	εἶδον
say, I	λέγω εἶπον, φημί <i>imperf</i> ἔφην
sea	θάλασσα -ης ἡ
second	δεύτερος -α -ον
secretly	λάθρᾳ
see, I	ὁράω ὄψομαι
seems good to (someone), it	δοκεῖ ἔδοξε (+ dat)
self	αὐτός -ή -ό
send, I	πέμπω ἔπεμψα
send away, I	ἀποπέμπω ἀπέπεμψα
send to(wards), I	προσπέμπω προσέπεμψα
seven	ἐπτά
shameful	αἰσχρός -ά -όν
ship	ναὺς νεώς ἡ
short time, after a	δι' ὀλίγου
shout	βοή -ῆς ἡ
shout, I	βοάω ἐβόησα

silence	σιγή -ῆς ἡ
silence, in	σιγῇ
since (as, because)	ἐπεὶ ( <i>or use participle</i> )
sit, I	καθίζω ἐκάθισα
six	ἕξ
slave	δοῦλος -ου ὁ
sleep	ὕπνος -ου ὁ
sleep, I	καθεύδω <i>imperf</i> ἐκάθευδον <i>or</i> καθηύδον
slow	βραδύς -εῖα -ύ
small	μικρός -ά -όν
small amount of	ὀλίγος -η -ον
so (in this way, to this extent)	οὕτω(ς)
so big, so great	τοσοῦτος -αύτη -οὔτο
so many	τοσοῦτοι -αὐται -αὐτα
soldier	στρατιώτης -ου ὁ
someone	τις τινός
something	τι τινός
son	υἱός -οῦ ὁ
soon, after a short time	δι' ὀλίγου
sort, of such a	τοιούτος -αύτη -οὔτο
sort of, what?	ποῖος; -α; -ον;
Spartans	Λακεδαιμόνιοι -ων οἱ
speak, I	λέγω εἶπον
stay, I	μένω ἔμεινα
steal, I	κλέπτω ἔκλεψα
still, even now	ἔτι
stop (something), I	παύω ἔπαυσα
stop (myself), I	παύομαι ἐπαυσάμην
storm	χειμών -ῶνος ὁ
story	λόγος -ου ὁ
strange	δεινός -ή -όν
stranger	ξένος -ου ὁ
strength	βία -ας ἡ
strong	ἰσχυρός -ά -όν
stupid	μῶρος -α -ον
such, of such a kind	τοιούτος -αύτη -οὔτο
suffer, I	πάσχω ἔπαθον
sweet	ἡδύς -εῖα -ύ
sword	ξίφος -ους τό
take, I	αἰρέω εἶλον, λαμβάνω ἔλαβον
task	ἔργον -ου τό
tell, I (say, speak)	λέγω εἶπον
tell, I (order)	κελεύω ἐκέλευσα
ten	δέκα
terrible	δεινός -ή -όν
than	ἢ
that ( <i>pronoun</i> that one there)	ἐκεῖνος -η -ο
that ( <i>conjunction</i> the fact that)	ὅτι
that ( <i>conjunction</i> with the result that)	ὥστε
the	ὁ ἡ τό
them ( <i>acc pronoun</i> )	αὐτούς -άς
themselves ( <i>reflexive</i> )	ἑαυτούς -άς

then (next)	ἔπειτα
then (at that time)	τότε
there	ἐκεῖ
therefore	οὖν*
these	οὗτοι αὐταὶ ταῦτα, ( <i>implying</i> here present <i>or</i> the following)
	οἶδε αἶδε τάδε
think, I	νομίζω ἐνόμισα
third	τρίτος -η -ον
this	οὗτος αὕτη τοῦτο, ( <i>implying</i> here present <i>or</i> the following)
	ὁδε ἦδε τόδε
this way, in	οὕτω(ς)
those	ἐκεῖνοι -αι -α
three	τρεις τρία
through	διὰ (+ <i>gen</i> ) (+ <i>acc</i> = on account of)
throw, I	βάλλω ἔβαλον
throw away, I	ἀποβάλλω ἀπέβαλον
throw in, I	ἐμβάλλω ἐνέβαλον
throw out, I	ἐκβάλλω ἐξέβαλον
time	χρόνος -ου ὁ
to (towards)	πρός (+ <i>acc</i> )
tongue	γλῶσσα -ης ἡ
towards	πρός (+ <i>acc</i> )
travel, I	πορεύομαι ἐπορεύθην
tree	δένδρον -ου τό
true	ἀληθής -ές
trust, I	πιστεύω ἐπίστευσα (+ <i>dat</i> )
try, I	πειράομαι ἐπειρασάμην
two	δύο
ugly	αἰσχρός -ά -όν
unjust	ἀδικος -ον
unjustly (to), I act	ἀδικέω ἡδίκησα (+ <i>acc</i> )
unlucky	δυστυχής -ές
untie	λύω ἔλυσα
up	ἀνά (+ <i>acc</i> )
use, I	χράομαι ἐχρησάμην (+ <i>dat</i> )
very bad	κάκιστος -η -ον
very fine, very beautiful	κάλλιστος -η -ον
very good	ἀριστος -η -ον
very great	μέγιστος -η -ον
very many	πλείστοι -αι -α
very much ( <i>adv</i> )	μάλιστα
victory	νίκη -ης ἡ
violence	βία -ας ἡ
voice	φωνή -ης ἡ
wait, I	μένω ἔμεινα
wall	τεῖχος -ους τό
want, I	βούλομαι <i>imperf</i> ἐβουλόμην
war	πόλεμος -ου ὁ
water	ὔδωρ -ατος τό
way	ὁδός -οῦ ἡ
way, in this	οὕτω(ς)

we	ἡμεῖς
weak	ἀσθενής -ές
wealthy	πλούσιος -α -ον
weapons	ὄπλα -ων τά
weep, I	δακρύω ἐδάκρυσα
well	εὖ
went, I	ἦλθον
what?	τί; τίνος;
what sort of?	ποῖος; -α; -ον;
when?	πότε;
when (since)	ἐπεὶ (or use participle)
where (at)?	ποῦ;
where from?	πόθεν;
where to?	ποῖ;
which?	τίς; τί; (τίν-;)
which (relative)	ὃς ἢ ὅ
while	ἕως (or use pres participle)
who?	τίς; (τιν-;)
who, which (relative)	ὃς ἢ ὅ (or use participle)
why?	διὰ τί;
wide	εὐρύς -εῖα -ύ
wife	γυνή γυναικός ἡ
willing, I am	ἐθέλω ἠθέλησα
win (conquer), I	νικάω ἐνίκησα
wind	ἄνεμος -ου ὁ
winter	χειμών -ωνος ὁ
wise	σοφός -ή -όν
wish, I	βούλομαι imperf ἐβουλόμην, ἐθέλω ἠθέλησα
with	μετά (+ gen)
with the result that	ὥστε
withdraw, I	ἀναχωρέω ἀνεχώρησα
without	ἄνευ (+ gen)
woman	γυνή γυναικός ἡ
wood (forest)	ῥύλη -ης ἡ
word	λόγος -ου ὁ
work	ἔργον -ου τό
worse	κακίων -ον (κακιον-)
worst	κάκιστος -η -ον
worthy (of)	ἄξιος -α -ον (+ gen)
write, I	γράφω ἔγραψα
wrong, I do	ἀδικέω ἠδίκησα
year	ἔτος -ους τό
you (sg)	σύ
you (pl)	ὑμεῖς
young	νέος -α -ον
young man	νεανίας -ου ὁ
your (of you sg)	σός σή σόν
your (of you pl)	ὑμέτερος -α -ον
yourself (reflexive)	σεαυτὸν -ήν
yourselves (reflexive)	ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς -άς
Zeus	Ζεὺς Διὸς ὁ

## Greek to English

Verbs are usually given with present and aorist. Compound verbs whose meaning can easily be deduced are not usually included.

Nouns are given with nominative, genitive, and article to show gender.

Adjectives are given with masculine, feminine, and neuter. \* = comes second word in sentence or clause.

		chapter:
ἀγαγ-	(aor stem of ἄγω)	
ἀγαθός -ή -όν	good; brave	(3)
ἀγγέλλω ἡγγειλα	I report, I announce	(6)
ἄγγελος -ου ὁ	messenger	(1)
ἀγορά -ᾱς ἡ	agora, marketplace, public square	(2)
ἀγρός -οῦ ὁ	field; <i>pl</i> countryside	(5)
ἄγω ἡγαγον	I lead	(1)
ἄγων -ῶνος ὁ	contest	(5)
ἀδικέω ἡδίκησα	I do wrong to (someone), I act unjustly	(9)
ἄδικος -ον	unjust, criminal	(9)
ἀεὶ	always	(3)
Ἀθηναῖος -α -ον	Athenian, of/from Athens	(3)
Ἀθηναῖοι -ων οἱ	Athenians	
ἀθλον -ου τό	prize, reward	(2)
αἰρέω εἶλον	I take	(9)
αἰσθάνομαι ἡσθόμην	I perceive, I notice	(8)
αἰσχρός -ά -όν	disgraceful, shameful; ugly	(10)
αἰτέω ἡτησα	I ask for, I beg	(9)
αἷτιος -α -ον	responsible (for), to blame (for) (+ <i>gen</i> )	(10)
αἰχμάλωτος -ου ὁ	prisoner, prisoner of war	(7)
ἀκούω ἡκουσα	I hear, I listen (to) (+ <i>acc of thing/gen of person</i> )	(1)
ἄληθής -ές	true	(9)
ἀλλά	but	(2)
ἄλλος -η -ο	other, another	(5)
ἀμείνων -ον (ἀμεινον-)	better ( <i>comparative of ἀγαθός</i> )	(10)
ἄν	( <i>makes indefinite/potential e.g. with aorist in past closed condition would have</i> )	(10)
ἀνά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) up	(10)
ἀναγκάζω ἡνάγκασα	I force, I compel	(7)
ἀναχωρέω ἀνεχώρησα	I retreat, I withdraw	(9)
ἀνδρείος -α -ον	brave	(3)
ἄνεμος -ου ὁ	wind	(5)
ἄνευ	without (+ <i>gen</i> )	(10)
ἄνθρωπος ἄνδρός ὁ	man, male, husband	(7)
ἄνθρωπος -ου ὁ (/ῆ)	man, human being, person; ( <i>as f</i> ) woman	(2)
ἄξιος -α -ον	worthy, deserving (of + <i>gen</i> )	(7)
ἄξω	( <i>fut of ἄγω</i> )	
ἄπειμι	I am away	(5)
ἀπό	from, away from (+ <i>gen</i> )	(3)
ἀποβάλλω ἀπέβαλον	I throw away	(4)
ἀποθνήσκω ἀπέθανον	I die, I am killed	(3)
ἀποκρίνομαι ἀπεκρινάμην	I answer, I reply	(8)
ἀποκτείνω ἀπέκτεινα	I kill	(2)



ἄρα	(introduces an open question e.g. Is it?)	(3)
ἄριστος -η -ον	best, very good ( <i>superlative of ἀγαθός</i> )	(8)
ἀρχή -ῆς ἡ	rule, empire; beginning	(8)
ἄρχω ἡρξά	I rule (+ <i>gen</i> )	(8)
ἀρχομαι ἡρξάμην	I begin (+ <i>gen</i> )	(8)
ἄρχων -οντος ὁ	ruler, official, magistrate	(5)
ἀσθενής -ές	weak	(9)
ἀσπίς -ίδος ἡ	shield	(9)
ἀσφαλής -ές	safe	(9)
αὐθις	again	(6)
αὐτός -ή -ό	self; ( <i>immediately after definite article</i> ) the same; ( <i>not nom</i> ) him, her, it	(6)
ἀφικνέομαι ἀφικόμην	I arrive	(9)
βαίνω ἔβην	I go	(1)
βαλ-	( <i>aor stem of βάλλω</i> )	
βάλλω ἔβαλον	I throw; I pelt, I fire at	(4)
βάρβαροι -ων οἱ	foreigners, non-Greeks, barbarians	(7)
βασιλεὺς -έως ὁ	king	(9)
βία -ας ἡ	force, strength, violence	(8)
βιβλος -ου ἡ	book	(4)
βίος -ου ὁ	life, livelihood	(2)
βλάπτω ἔβλαψα	I harm, I damage	(5)
βοάω ἐβόησα	I shout	(10)
βοή -ῆς ἡ	shout	(1)
βοηθέω ἐβοήθησα	I help, I run to help (+ <i>dat</i> )	(9)
βουλή -ῆς ἡ	plan; council	(1)
βούλομαι <i>imperf</i> ἐβουλόμην	I wish, I want	(8)
βραδύς -εῖα -ύ	slow	(9)
γάρ*	for	(3)
γε*	at least, at any rate, even	(8)
γελάω ἐγέλασα	I laugh	(10)
γεν-	( <i>aor stem of γίγνομαι</i> )	
γενήσομαι	( <i>fut of γίγνομαι</i> )	
γένος -ους τό	type, family, race, descent, birth	(9)
γέρων -οντος ὁ	old man	(5)
γῆ γῆς ἡ	earth, land	(1)
γίγας -αντος ὁ	giant	(5)
γίγνομαι ἐγενόμην	I become, I happen	(8)
γιγνώσκω ἔγνων	I get to know, I realise	(3)
γλῶσσα -ης ἡ	tongue, language	(8)
γνώσομαι	( <i>fut of γινώσκω</i> )	
γράφω ἔγραψα	I write, I draw	(1)
γυνή γυναικός ἡ	woman, wife	(7)
δακρύω ἐδάκρυσα	I cry, I weep	(7)
δέ*	and; but	(3)
δεῖ <i>imperf</i> ἔδει	it is necessary (for X to ..., + <i>acc + inf</i> )	(9)

δεινός -ή -όν	strange, terrible, formidably clever	(3)
δείπνον -ου τό	dinner	(4)
δέκα	ten	(2)
δέκατος -η -ον	tenth	(6)
δένδρον -ου τό	tree	(2)
δεξ-	( <i>aor stem of δέχομαι</i> )	
δεξιός -ά -όν	right (hand side); clever, skilful	(6)
δεσμός -ου ό	chain, binding, fetter	(7)
δεσμοτήριον -ου τό	prison	(2)
δεσπότης -ου ό	master	(7)
δεύτερος -α -ον	second	(6)
δέχομαι έδεξάμην	I receive	(8)
δή	indeed, certainly, surely	(7)
δήμος -ου ό	people, community	(2)
διά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) on account of, because of	(5)
	(+ <i>gen</i> ) through	(5)
δι' όλίγου	after a short time, soon	(10)
διὰ τί;	why?	(5)
διαφθείρω διέφθαιρα	I destroy, I corrupt	(7)
διδάσκαλος -ου ό	teacher	(1)
διδάσκω έδίδαξα	I teach	(1)
(δίδωμι) <i>fut</i> δώσω έδωκα	I give	(10)
δίκαιος -α -ον	just, fair, upright, moral	(7)
δικαιοσύνη -ης ή	justice	(1)
Διός	( <i>irreg gen of Ζεύς</i> )	
διότι	because	(3)
διώκω έδίωξα	I chase, I pursue	(1)
δοκεί έδοξε	(+ <i>dat</i> ) it seems good to X, X decides (to, + <i>inf</i> )	(9)
δούλος -ου ό	slave	(1)
δραμ-	( <i>aor stem of τρέχω</i> )	
δραμοῦμαι	( <i>fut of τρέχω</i> )	
δύο	two	(4)
δυστυχής -ές	unfortunate, unlucky	(9)
δώρον -ου τό	gift	(2)
δώσω	( <i>fut of δίδωμι</i> )	
εαν	if (+ <i>subjunctive</i> , in <i>fut open condition</i> )	(10)
εαυτόν -ήν -ό	himself, herself, itself	(8)
εαυτούς -άς -ά	themselves	(8)
εβαλον	( <i>aor of βάλλω</i> )	
εβδομος -η -ον	seventh	(6)
εβην	( <i>aor of βαίνω</i> )	
εβλήθην	( <i>aor passive of βάλλω</i> )	
εγγύς	near (+ <i>gen</i> )	(5)
εγενόμην	( <i>aor of γίγνομαι</i> )	
εγνω	( <i>aor of γινώσκω</i> )	
εγνώσθην	( <i>aor passive of γινώσκω</i> )	
εγώ έμοῦ/μου	I, me	(5)
εδομαι	( <i>fut of έσθίω</i> )	

ἔδραμον	( <i>aor of τρέχω</i> )	
ἐθέλω ἡθέλησα	I wish, I am willing	(3)
εἰ	if	(7)
εἶδον	I saw ( <i>aor of ὁράω</i> )	(5)
εἰδώς	( <i>participle of οἶδα</i> )	
εἶλον	( <i>aor of αἰρέω</i> )	
εἰμί <i>imperf</i> ἦ (or ἦν)	I am	(2)
εἶμι	I shall go	(8)
εἶναι	( <i>inf of εἶμι = to be</i> )	(6)
εἶπον	I said ( <i>used as aor of λέγω</i> )	(4)
εἰρήνη -ης ἡ	peace	(1)
εἰς (or ἐς)	into, onto, to (+ <i>acc</i> )	(1)
εἷς μία ἓν (ἐν-)	one	(6)
εἰσβάλλω εἰσέβαλον	I invade (+ <i>εἰς + acc</i> )	(10)
εἰσπίπτω εἰσέπεσον	I fall into	(4)
ἐκ (ἐξ <i>before vowel</i> )	out of (+ <i>gen</i> )	(3)
ἕκαστος -η -ον	each	(5)
ἐκβαίνω ἐξέβην	I go out	(4)
ἐκεῖ	there	(3)
ἐκεῖνος -η -ο	that, <i>pl</i> those	(7)
ἐκκλησία -ας ἡ	assembly, meeting	(2)
ἕκτος -η -ον	sixth	(6)
ἐκτρέχω ἐξέδραμον	I run out	(4)
ἐκφεύγω ἐξέφυγον	I escape	(10)
ἐλ-	( <i>aor stem of αἰρέω</i> )	
ἐλαβον	( <i>aor of λαμβάνω</i> )	
ἐλασ-	( <i>aor stem of ἐλαύνω</i> )	
ἐλάσσων -ον (ἐλασσον-)	less, smaller (amount of), weaker, inferior, <i>pl</i> fewer ( <i>comparative of ὀλίγος</i> )	(10)
ἐλαύνω ἤλασα	I drive	(3)
ἐλάχιστος -η -ον	least, smallest, <i>pl</i> fewest ( <i>superlative of ὀλίγος</i> )	(10)
ἐλεύθερος -α -ον	free	(3)
ἐλήφθην	( <i>aor passive of λαμβάνω</i> )	
ἐλθ-	( <i>aor stem of ἔρχομαι</i> )	
ἔλιπον	( <i>aor of λείπω</i> )	
Ἕλληνα -ηνος ὁ	Greek, Greek man	(10)
ἐλπίζω ἤλπισα	I hope (+ <i>fut inf</i> )	(8)
ἑμαυθον	( <i>aor of μανθάνω</i> )	
ἑμαυτόν -ήν	myself	(8)
ἐμβάλλω ἐνέβαλον	I throw in, I thrust in	(5)
ἑμεινα	( <i>aor of μένω</i> )	
ἐμός -ή -όν	my	(5)
ἐν	in, on, among (+ <i>dat</i> )	(3)
ἐν	one ( <i>n</i> )	(6)
ἐνατος -η -ον	ninth	(6)
ἐνεγκ-	( <i>aor stem of φέρω</i> )	
ἐνθάδε	here	(3)
ἐννέα	nine	(6)
ἐνοικος -ου ὁ	inhabitant	(7)

ἕξ	six	(6)
ἐξάγω ἐξήγαγον	I lead out	(4)
ἔξεστι(ν) <i>imperf</i> ἐξήν	it is possible (for X to ... , + <i>dat</i> + <i>inf</i> )	(9)
ἐπαθον	( <i>aor of</i> πάσχω)	
ἐπεί	when, since	(4)
ἔπειτα	then, next	(4)
ἔπεσον	( <i>aor of</i> πίπτω)	
ἐπί	(+ <i>acc</i> ) against, to, onto, at	(10)
ἐπιον	( <i>aor of</i> πίνω)	
ἐπιστολή -ῆς ἡ	letter	(1)
ἐπλευσα	( <i>aor of</i> πλέω)	
ἔπομαι ἐσπόμεν	I follow (+ <i>dat</i> )	(8)
ἐπτά	seven	(6)
ἐπυθόμην	( <i>aor of</i> πυνθάνομαι)	
ἔργον -ου τό	work, task, deed, action	(2)
ἐρῶ	( <i>fut of</i> λέγω)	
ἔρχομαι ἦλθον	I come, I go	(8)
ἐρωτάω ἠρόμην <i>or</i> ἠρώτησα	I ask (a question)	(10)
ἐσθίω ἔφαγον	I eat	(4)
ἐσπέρα -ας ἡ	evening	(2)
ἐσπόμεν	( <i>aor of</i> ἔπομαι)	
ἔσχον	( <i>aor of</i> ἔχω)	
ἔσωσα	( <i>aor of</i> σῶζω)	
ἔταξα	( <i>aor of</i> τάσσω)	
ἐτάφην	( <i>aor passive of</i> θάπτω)	
ἔτι	still	(5)
ἐτοιμος -η -ον	ready	(5)
ἔτος -ους τό	year	(9)
εὖ	well	(7)
εὐθύς	immediately	(6)
εὕρ-	( <i>aor stem of</i> εὕρίσκω)	
εὕρήσω	( <i>fut of</i> εὕρίσκω)	
εὕρίσκω ἠύρον	I find	(2)
εὐρύς -εῖα -ύ	broad, wide	(9)
εὐτυχής -ές	fortunate, lucky	(9)
ἔφαγον	( <i>aor of</i> ἐσθίω)	
ἔφη	he/she said ( <i>often interrupting direct quotation; imperf of</i> φημί)	(7)
ἔφυγον	( <i>aor of</i> φεύγω)	
ἐχθρός -οῦ ὁ	(personal) enemy	(6)
ἐχθρός -ά -όν	hostile	(3)
ἔχω ἔσχον	I have	(1)
ἕως	while, until	(8)
Ζεὺς Διὸς ὁ	Zeus	(6)
ζῷον -ου τό	animal, creature	(4)
ἢ	or; than	(7)
ἢ ... ἢ	either ... or	(8)

ἡγαγον	( <i>aor of ἄγω</i> )	
ἡγγειλα	( <i>aor of ἀγγέλλω</i> )	
ἡγεμών -όνος ὁ	leader, guide	(8)
ἤδη	now, by now, already	(8)
ἡδύς -εῖα -ύ	sweet, pleasant	(9)
ἡδέως	( <i>adv</i> ) sweetly, gladly	(9)
ἡθέλησα	( <i>aor of ἐθέλω</i> )	
ἡλάθην	( <i>aor passive of ἐλαύνω</i> )	
ἦλασα	( <i>aor of ἐλαύνω</i> )	
ἦλθον	( <i>aor of ἔρχομαι</i> )	(6)
ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς -άς	ourselves	(8)
ἡμεῖς -ὦν	we	(6)
ἡμέρα -ας ἡ	day	(2)
ἡμέτερος -α -ον	our	(6)
ἡνεγκα <i>or</i> ἡνεγκον	( <i>aor of φέρω</i> )	
ἡνέχθην	( <i>aor passive of φέρω</i> )	
ἡρέθην	( <i>aor passive of αἰρέω</i> )	
ἡρόμην	( <i>aor of ἐρωτάω</i> )	
ἡύρέθην	( <i>aor passive of εὐρίσκω</i> )	
ἡύρον	( <i>aor of εὐρίσκω</i> )	
ἡχθην	( <i>aor passive of ἄγω</i> )	
θάλασσα -ης ἡ	sea	(4)
θάνατος -ου ὁ	death	(2)
θάπτω ἔθαψα	I bury	(6)
θάσσων -ον (θασσον-)	quicker, swifter ( <i>comparative of ταχύς</i> )	(10)
θαυμάζω ἐθαύμασα	I am amazed (at), I admire	(3)
θεά -ᾱς ἡ	goddess	(2)
θεός -οῦ ὁ	god	(1)
θήσω	( <i>fut of τίθημι</i> )	
θυγάτηρ -τρος ἡ	daughter	(7)
θύρα -ας ἡ	door	(2)
θύω ἔθυσα	I sacrifice	(8)
ἰατρός -οῦ ὁ	doctor	(7)
ἰδ-	( <i>aor stem of ὁράω</i> )	
ἰέναι	( <i>inf of εἶμι, = to go</i> )	
ἱερόν -οῦ τό	temple	(2)
ἱερός -ά -όν	holy, sacred	(7)
ἵνα	in order to, so that (+ <i>subj/opt</i> )	(10)
ἵππεύς -έως ὁ	horseman, <i>pl</i> cavalry	(9)
ἵππος -ου ὁ	horse	(1)
ἰσχυρός -ά -όν	strong	(7)
ἰχθύς -ύος ὁ	fish	(9)
καθεύδω <i>imperf</i> ἐκάθευδον <i>or</i> καθηύδον	I sleep	(10)
καθίζω ἐκάθισα	I sit	(7)
καί	and; also, even	(2)

καίπερ	although, despite (+ <i>participle</i> )	(6)
καίω ἔκαυσα	I burn, I set on fire	(7)
κάκιστος -η -ον	worst, very bad ( <i>superlative of κακός</i> )	(8)
κακίων -ον (κακιον-)	worse ( <i>comparative of κακός</i> )	(10)
κακός -ή -όν	bad, wicked	(3)
καλέω ἐκάλεσα	I call	(9)
κάλλιστος -η -ον	very fine, very beautiful	(5)
καλός -ή -όν	fine, beautiful, handsome	(3)
κατά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) down, throughout, according to	(10)
	(+ <i>gen</i> ) down (from)	(10)
κατὰ γῆν	by land	(10)
κελεύω ἐκέλευσα	I order	(3)
κεφαλή -ῆς ἡ	head	(7)
κίνδυνος -ου ὁ	danger	(2)
κλέπτω ἐκλεψα	I steal	(5)
κολάζω ἐκόλασα	I punish	(7)
κόπτω ἔκοψα	I cut, I cut down; I knock	(8)
κόρη -ης ἡ	girl	(4)
κριτής -οῦ ὁ	judge	(4)
κρύπτω ἔκρυψα	I hide (something)	(7)
κτάομαι ἐκτησάμην	I obtain, I get, I acquire	(10)
κύκλος -ου ὁ	circle	(5)
κωλύω ἐκώλυσα	I prevent, I hinder (someone from doing)	
	(+ <i>acc</i> + <i>inf</i> )	(5)
κώμη -ης ἡ	village	(1)
λαβ-	( <i>aor stem of λαμβάνω</i> )	
λάθρα	secretly, in secret	(8)
Λακεδαιμόνιοι -ων οἱ	Spartans	(7)
λαμβάνω ἔλαβον	I take, I capture	(2)
λαμβάνομαι ἐλαβόμην	I take for myself, I grasp hold of (+ <i>gen</i> )	(8)
λέγω ἔλεξα <i>or</i> εἶπον	I say, I speak, I tell	(1)
λείπω ἔλιπον	I leave	(2)
λέων -οντος ὁ	lion	(5)
ληφθ-	( <i>aor passive stem of λαμβάνω</i> )	
λήψομαι	( <i>fut of λαμβάνω</i> )	
λίθος -ου ὁ	stone	(5)
λιμήν -ένος ὁ	harbour	(5)
λιπ-	( <i>aor stem of λείπω</i> )	
λόγος -ου ὁ	word, reason; story	(1)
λύω ἔλυσα	I release, I unfasten	(2)
μαθ-	( <i>aor stem of μανθάνω</i> )	
μακρός -ά -όν	long	(4)
μάλιστα	especially, very much ( <i>superlative of μάλα</i> )	(10)
μᾶλλον	more ( <i>adv</i> ), rather ( <i>comparative of μάλα</i> )	(7)
μανθάνω ἔμαθον	I learn	(2)
μάχη -ης ἡ	battle	(6)
μάχομαι ἐμαχεσάμην	I fight	(8)

μέγας μεγάλη μέγα (μεγαλ-)	great, big	(9)
μέγιστος -η -ον	very great ( <i>superlative of μέγας</i> )	(4)
μείζων -ον (μειζον-)	greater, bigger ( <i>comparative of μέγας</i> )	(10)
μειν-	( <i>aor stem of μένω</i> )	
μέλλω	I intend, I am going to (+ <i>fut inf</i> ); I hesitate	(8)
μέν* ... δέ*	on the one hand ... on the other	(3)
μέντοι*	however	(3)
μένω ξμεινα	I stay, I remain; I wait for	(2)
μετά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) after	(4)
	(+ <i>gen</i> ) with	(5)
μή	not ( <i>in contexts other than statements of fact</i> )	(9)
μηδείς μηδεμία μηδέν (μηδεν-)	no-one, nothing, no (not any)	(9)
μηδέποτε	never	(9)
μήτε ... μήτε	neither ... nor	(9)
μήτηρ -τρός ή	mother	(7)
μία	one ( <i>f</i> )	(6)
μικρός -ά -όν	small	(3)
μισέω έμίσησα	I hate	(9)
μισθός -ού ό	payment, wages	(6)
μόνος -η -ον	only, alone	(5)
μόνον	only ( <i>adv</i> )	(5)
ού μόνον ... αλλά και	not only ... but also	(8)
μουσα -ης ή	Muse ( <i>goddess of poetic inspiration</i> )	(4)
μύθος -ου ό	story, myth, fable	(4)
μώρος -α -ον	stupid, foolish	(5)
ναυμαχία -ας ή	sea-battle	(2)
ναύς νεώς ή	ship	(9)
ναύτης -ου ό	sailor	(4)
ναυτικόν -ού τό	fleet	(2)
νεανίας -ου ό	young man	(4)
νεκρός -ού ό	corpse, dead body	(6)
νέος -α -ον	new, young, recent	(3)
νήσος -ου ή	island	(4)
νικάω ενίκησα	I conquer, I win	(10)
νίκη -ης ή	victory	(1)
νομίζω ενόμισα	I think, I consider, I believe	(10)
νόμος -ου ό	law; custom	(2)
νόσος -ου ή	disease, illness	(4)
νύν	now	(3)
νύξ νυκτός ή	night	(5)
ξένος -ου ό	stranger, foreigner; host, guest	(1)
ξίφος -ους τό	sword	(9)
ό ή τό	the	(1)
ογδοός -η -ον	eighth	(6)
όδε ήδε τόδε	this, <i>pl</i> these ( <i>implying</i> here present, near me),	

	the following	(7)
ὁδός -οῦ ἡ	road, path, way; journey	(4)
οἶδα	I know	(10)
οἰκία -ας ἡ	house	(2)
οἶνος -ου ὁ	wine	(5)
οἶός τ' εἰμί	I am able (to, + <i>inf</i> )	(5)
οἶσω	( <i>fut of φέρω</i> )	
ὀκτώ	eight	(6)
ὀλίγος -η -ον	small (amount of)	(6)
ὀλίγοι -αι -α	few	(5)
ὄνομα -ατος τό	name	(5)
ὄπλα -ων τά	arms, weapons, gear, tackle	(2)
ὄρώω εἶδον	I see	(10)
ὀργή -ῆς ἡ	anger	(6)
ὀργίζομαι ὠργίσθην	I get angry, I am angry (with, + <i>dat</i> )	(8)
ὄρνις -ιθος ὁ/ἡ	bird	(5)
ὄρος -ους τό	mountain	(9)
ὅς ἢ ὁ	who, which ( <i>relative</i> )	(7)
ὅτι	that, the fact that; because	(8)
οὐ (οὐκ <i>before smooth breathing</i> , οὐχ <i>before rough</i> )	not	(1)
οὐ μόνον ... ἀλλὰ καί	not only ... but also	(8)
οὐδεὶς οὐδεμία οὐδέν (οὐδεν-)	no-one, nothing, no ( <i>i.e.</i> not any)	(6)
οὐδέποτε	never	(8)
οὐκέτι	no longer	(6)
οὖν*	therefore	(3)
οὐρανός -οῦ ὁ	sky, heaven	(6)
οὔτε ... οὔτε	neither ... nor	(8)
οὗτος αὕτη τοῦτο	this, <i>pl</i> these; the preceding	(7)
οὕτω(ς)	in this way, so	(7)
ὀφθ-	( <i>aor passive stem of ὀράω</i> )	
ὀφθαλμός -οῦ ὁ	eye	(3)
ὀψομαι	( <i>fut of ὀράω</i> )	
παθ-	( <i>aor stem of πάσχω</i> )	
παιδεύω ἐπαίδευσα	I train, I educate	(6)
παῖς παιδός ὁ/ἡ	boy, son; girl, daughter; child	(5)
πάλαι	long ago, formerly, in the past	(6)
παρά	(+ <i>acc</i> ) contrary to	(10)
	(+ <i>gen</i> ) from (a person)	(10)
παρασκευάζω παρεσκεύασα	I prepare	(6)
πάρειμι <i>imperf</i> παρήν	I am here, I am present	(5)
παρέχω παρέσχον	I provide, I produce	(3)
πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-)	all, every	(6)
πάσχω ἔπαθον	I suffer, I experience	(4)
πατήρ -τρός ὁ	father	(7)
παύω ἔπαυσα	I stop	(1)
παύομαι ἐπαυσάμην	I cease, I stop myself (from doing something)	



	<i>(often + participle)</i>	(8)
πείθω ἔπεισα	I persuade	(3)
πειθομαι ἐπιθόμην	I obey (+ <i>dat</i> )	(8)
πειράομαι ἐπειρασάμην	I try	(10)
πείσομαι [1]	<i>(fut of πάσχω)</i>	
πείσομαι [2]	<i>(fut of πείθομαι)</i>	
πέμπτος -η -ον	fifth	(6)
πέμπω ἔπεμψα	I send	(2)
πέντε	five	(2)
περί	(+ <i>acc</i> ) around	(10)
	(+ <i>gen</i> ) about, concerning	(6)
πες-	<i>(aor stem of πίπτω)</i>	
πεύσομαι	<i>(fut of πυνθάνομαι)</i>	
πίνω ἔπιον	I drink	(5)
πίπτω ἔπεσον	I fall	(4)
πιστεύω ἐπίστευσα	I trust, I believe (+ <i>dat</i> )	(3)
πιστός -ή -όν	faithful, reliable	(7)
πλείονες -α	more ( <i>pl</i> ) ( <i>comparative of πολλοί</i> )	(10)
πλείστος -η -ον	very much (of), very great ( <i>superlative of</i> <i>πολύς</i> )	(10)
πλείστοι -αι -α	most, very many ( <i>superlative of πολλοί</i> )	(10)
πλείων -ον (πλειον-)	more (of) ( <i>sg</i> ) ( <i>comparative of πολύς</i> )	(10)
πλευσ-	<i>(aor stem of πλέω)</i>	
πλέω ἔπλευσα	I sail	(9)
πλήν	except (+ <i>gen</i> )	(10)
πλοῖον -ου τό	boat	(2)
πλούσιος -α -ον	rich, wealthy	(7)
πόθεν;	where from?	(5)
ποῖ;	where to?	(10)
ποιέω ἐποίησα	I make, I do; I treat (+ <i>adv + acc</i> )	(9)
ποιητής -οῦ ὁ	poet	(4)
ποιός; -α; -ον;	what sort of?	(10)
πολέμιοι -ων οἱ	enemy (in war)	(6)
πόλεμος -ου ὁ	war	(2)
πόλις -εως ἡ	city, city-state	(9)
πολίτης -ου ὁ	citizen	(4)
πολλάκις	often	(3)
πολύς πολλή πολύ (πολλ-)	much	(9)
πολλοί -αί -ά	many	(5)
πορεύομαι ἐπορεύθην	I march, I travel	(8)
πόσος; -η; -ον;	how great?	(10)
πόσοι; -αι; -α;	how many?	(10)
ποταμός -οῦ ὁ	river	(1)
πότε;	when?	(3)
ποῦ;	where?	(3)
πούς ποδός ὁ	foot	(5)
πράσσω ἔπραξα	I do, I fare (well/badly etc); I manage	(7)
πρό	in front of, before (+ <i>gen</i> )	(10)
πρός	(+ <i>acc</i> ) towards, to, against	(1)

προσάγω προσήγαγον	I lead to(wards)	(4)
προσβαίνω προσέβην	I go to(wards)	(4)
προσβάλλω προσέβαλον	I attack (+ <i>dat</i> )	(8)
προσπέμπω προσέπεμψα	I send to(wards)	(4)
προστρέχω προσέδραμον	I run to(wards)	(4)
πρότερον	previously, before	(3)
πρώτον	first ( <i>adv</i> ), at first	(4)
πρώτος -η -ον	first	(6)
πυθ-	( <i>aor stem of</i> πυνθάνομαι)	
πύλη -ης ή	gate	(1)
πυνθάνομαι ἐπυθόμην	I enquire; I learn by enquiry, I find out	(8)
πῦρ πυρός τό	fire	(5)
πῶς;	how?	(3)
ῥάδιος -α -ον	easy	(10)
ῥᾶστος -η -ον	easiest, very easy ( <i>superlative of</i> ῥάδιος)	(10)
ῥᾶων -ον (ῥαον-)	easier ( <i>comparative of</i> ῥάδιος)	(10)
σεαυτόν -ήν	yourself	(8)
σιγή -ης ή	silence	(7)
σιγή	in silence, silently	
σίτος -ου ό	food, corn	(7)
σός σή σόν	your (of you <i>sg</i> )	(5)
σοφία -ας ή	wisdom	(2)
σοφός -ή -όν	wise, clever	(3)
στρατεύω ἐστράτευσα	I march, I go on an expedition, I campaign	(6)
στρατηγός -ου ό	general, commander	(1)
στρατιά -ᾶς ή	army	(8)
στρατιώτης -ου ό	soldier	(4)
στρατόπεδον -ου τό	(army) camp	(2)
στρατός -ου ό	army	(1)
σύ σοῦ	you ( <i>sg</i> )	(5)
συλλέγω συνέλεξα	I collect, I assemble	(6)
σύμμαχος -ου ό	ally	(1)
συμφορά -ᾶς ή	event; misfortune, disaster	(8)
σφᾶς <i>gen</i> σφῶν	them	(8)
σφᾶς αὐτούς -ᾶς	themselves	(8)
σχ-	( <i>aor stem of</i> ἔχω)	
σῶζω ἔσωσα	I save	(7)
σῶμα -ατος τό	body	(5)
τάσσω ἔταξα	I draw up, I arrange	(2)
ταφ-	( <i>aor passive stem of</i> θάπτω)	
τάχιστος -η -ον	quickest, swiftest, very quick, very swift ( <i>superlative of</i> ταχύς)	(10)
ταχύς -εῖα -ύ	quick, swift	(9)
τε* ... καί	both ... and	(2)
τεῖχος -ους τό	wall	(9)
τέλος ( <i>adv</i> )	in the end, finally	(6)

τέσσαρες τέσσαρα	four	(6)
τέταρτος -η -ον	fourth	(6)
τιμάω έτίμησα	I honour, I respect	(10)
τιμή -ής ή	honour, respect	(1)
τίς; τί; (τίν-)	who? which? what?	(5)
τις τι (τιν-)	a, a certain, some(one/thing)	(5)
τοιούτος τοιαύτη τοιούτο	such, of such a kind	(7)
τόξον -ου τό	bow	(2)
τόπος -ου ό	place	(6)
τοσούτος τοσαύτη		
τοσούτο	so great	(7)
τοσοῦτοι -αῦται -αὐτά	so many	(7)
τότε	then, at that time	(8)
τρεις τρία	three	(6)
τρέχω έδραμον	I run	(1)
τρίτος -η -ον	third	(6)
τύχη -ης ή	luck	(8)
υδωρ -ατος τό	water	(6)
υίός -ου ό	son	(7)
ύλη -ης ή	wood, forest	(7)
ύμεις -ών	you (pl)	(6)
ύμάς αὐτούς -άς	yourselves	(8)
ύμέτερος -α -ον	your (of you pl)	(6)
ύπέρ	(+ gen) on behalf of	(10)
ύπισχνέομαι ύπεσχόμην	I promise	(9)
ύπνος -ου ό	sleep	(5)
ύπό	(+ gen) by (a person)	(7)
	(+ dat) under	(6)
ύστερον	later	(8)
ύψηλός -ή -όν	high	(7)
φαγ-	(aor stem of έσθίω)	
φαίνω έφηνα	I show, I make clear	(3)
φαίνομαι imperf έφαινόμην	I appear	(8)
φέρω ήνεγκα or ήνεγκον	I carry, I bring	(1)
φέρομαι ήνεγκάμην	I win (prizes etc)	(8)
φεύγω έφυγον	I run away	(2)
φημί imperf έφην	I say	(10)
φιλέω έφίλησα	I like, I love	(9)
φίλιος -α -ον	friendly	(3)
φίλος -ου ό	friend	(2)
φοβέομαι έφοβήθην	I fear	(9)
φόβος -ου ό	fear	(2)
φονεύω έφόνευσα	I murder, I kill	(9)
φυγ-	(aor stem of φεύγω)	
φύλαξ -ακος ό	guard	(5)
φυλάσσω έφύλαξα	I guard	(1)
φωνή -ης ή	voice	(1)

χαλεπός -ή -όν	difficult; dangerous	(3)
χειμών -ωνος ό	winter; storm, bad weather	(8)
χείρ χειρός ή	hand	(7)
χράομαι έχρησάμην	I use (+ <i>dat</i> )	(10)
χρή imperf (έ)χρήν	it is necessary	(9)
χρήματα -ων τά	money	(6)
χρήσιμος -η -ον	useful	(4)
χρόνος -ου ό	time	(2)
χρυσός -ου ό	gold	(7)
χώρα -ας ή	country	(2)
ώ	O ... ( <i>addressing someone; usu omit in English</i> )	(3)
ώρα -ας ή	hour	(2)
ώς	when, as, because	(4)
	(+ <i>present or past participle</i> ) as, since,	
	because, on the grounds that	(6)
	(+ <i>fut participle</i> ) in order to	(6)
ώς τάχιστα	as quickly as possible; as soon as	(10)
ώστε	(with the result) that, so that	(7)
ώφθην	( <i>aor passive of όράω</i> )	

(480 words Greek-English)